SECOND LATIN BOOK

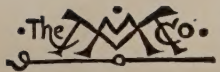
ULLMAN AND HENRY

[illegible] levels on each [illegible] 1.75
Outline of campaigns $\nabla\Delta =$
Outline of officers
Answers to questions.

DOROTHY F.
HOOKER

S.R. 318

SECOND LATIN BOOK



THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
NEW YORK · BOSTON · CHICAGO
DALLAS · ATLANTA · SAN FRANCISCO

MACMILLAN & CO., LIMITED
LONDON · BOMBAY · CALCUTTA
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.
TORONTO

FIG. 1. THE VESTAL VIRGIN TUCCIA

Accused of breaking her vows she proved her innocence by carrying water in a sieve from the Tiber to the temple of Vesta (see page 9).

SECOND LATIN BOOK

BY

B. L. ULLMAN, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

NORMAN E. HENRY, M.A.

PEABODY HIGH SCHOOL, PITTSBURGH

Modern life owes its highest ideals, directly or indirectly, to the inspiration of Greece; it owes its whole structure and existence to the creation of Rome.

—J. W. MACKAIL.

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1926

All rights reserved

COPYRIGHT, 1925,
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped. Published February, 1925.
Reprinted June, 1925.
Reprinted August, 1925.
Reprinted June, 1926.

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
BY THE CORNWALL PRESS

TO THE TEACHER

This book is a result of the conviction that the study of Caesar should not be begun at the opening of the second year. The report of the Classical Investigation[1] shows that most teachers are of the same opinion. Even when teacher and textbook have sacrificed all else in the first year in order to prepare for Caesar, many pupils have continued to flounder helplessly and hopelessly; in fact, owing to changing conditions in our schools, their plight is worse than ever. Time was when pupils might be thrown into Caesar's deep waters and told to swim, but such a plan now usually results in drowning.

In general, it is probably best to postpone the reading of Caesar to the beginning of the fourth semester in the schools where Latin is begun in the ninth grade, and it is recommended to most teachers that they make up the course of study in the second year with this in mind. The material in this book is arranged for such a course. But the book has purposely been made sufficiently flexible to allow teachers much freedom. There is enough simple connected reading in Parts I, II, and III (approximately equivalent to more than three books of Caesar) to keep a class occupied until the middle of the fourth semester. On the other hand, there are enough selections from Caesar in Part IV (the equivalent of over three books) to begin their use in the

[1] "The Classical Investigation [conducted by the American Classical League], Part I, General Report: A Summary of Results with Recommendations for the Organization of the Course in Secondary Latin, and for Improvement in Methods of Teaching," Princeton University Press, Princeton, N. J., 1924.

middle of the third semester. Where Latin is begun in the seventh grade, enough material will be found in beginning books, such as the authors' *Elementary Latin,* and in the *Second Latin Book* for a three-year course. This abundance of material solves the problem of additional assignments for the superior pupil, a perplexing problem which is now engaging the attention of many educators.

In preparing this book the authors used the same scientific approach as in their *Elementary Latin:* Content and method were determined by the most important aims of Latin study, by the desire to interest the pupil in the study of Latin and the Roman civilization, by experience in teaching, by the principle that nothing should be introduced that was not immediately used, and by attention to the laws of learning.

The following are the main divisions of the book:

Part I. — A rapid review of the simpler phases of first-year Latin (as covered *e.g.* by Lessons 1–73 of *Elementary Latin*) is given in the ten lessons of Part I. These lessons are built around a continued story of Roman family life. The aim of the story is to present important phases of the Roman civilization in a form that will appeal to boys and girls. Every installment gives repeated drill on the form and syntax material with which the lesson deals. In addition there are Vocabulary and Form Drills, English-Latin Exercises, based on the text, and Word Study Reviews.

Part II. — A slower review of the subjunctive mood and of other material usually taken up at the end of the first year (as covered *e.g.* by Lessons 74–100 of *Elementary Latin*) is given in the ten lessons of Part II. The type of material is similar to that in Part I. Teachers may, of course, omit Part I or Part II if they feel that their classes do not need the review, but it will generally be profitable to spend at least two to four weeks on this material. Some teachers

may wish to read the connected stories rapidly and to omit the earlier review of grammar.

Part III. — Part III contains an abundance of simple, graded reading.[1] The portions taken from Livy, Eutropius, Aulus Gellius, Pliny's *Letters*, etc. were selected for their intrinsic interest and important bearing on Roman life and thought. The careful simplification and grading of this material make it possible for the pupil to arrive gradually at the point where he can read Caesar without difficulty. As Part III offers much more material than can be read in a semester, it is suggested that as a minimum the selections numbered from I to XXII be read and that these be supplemented by rapid reading of such selections as 1, 2, 5, 7, 8, 10, 15–19, 21, 23, 25, and 32. The quotations from various authors, such as Virgil, Horace, etc., are best read in class with a good deal of help from the teacher, rather than assigned for outside preparation. It will be noted that some of them are translated in full. The purpose of including such quotations is to give the pupil a faint glimpse, at least, of the masterpieces of Latin literature.

Part IV. — Selections from the seven books of Caesar's *Gallic War* are given in Part IV. Books I and II have been simplified and carefully graded from the standpoint of vocabulary, syntax, and sentence structure. Long, involved passages in indirect discourse have been omitted or put in the direct form. Summaries in English have been substituted for all omitted portions throughout the seven books. In this way the continuity of the narrative has been preserved. Book II is given entire. In making these selections, which amount to more than sixty Teubner pages (three books), the authors have endeavored to present those portions of the *Gallic War* which are most interesting and most important historically. Passages which afford a his-

[1] There are no isolated Latin-English sentences in the book.

torical background or which possess a human appeal have been selected, rather than those which deal exclusively, or largely, with technical descriptions of battles or with dry military details.

The *editio maior* of Caesar by Klotz (Leipzig, Teubner, 1921), which embodies the latest researches on the text of the *Gallic War*, has been used as a general basis for the text, though the authors have not hesitated to deviate from it in the interest of simplicity.

Other features of the book which may be mentioned are the following:

1. **Vocabulary.** — In spite of the extent of the selections for reading given in this book, the vocabulary is smaller than that of the seven books of Caesar's *Gallic War*. The words in the Vocabulary Drills of Parts I–IV were selected for their value for English derivation and for their importance in Latin. In all cases they are words which are found in the passages which they follow. In Part IV they come at intervals of several chapters in the order of their appearance in the text. Following them are common idioms.

2. **Questions on Comprehension.** — In order to encourage pupils to look for the meaning of what they read, questions on content are introduced. In Parts II and III these are in easy Latin and are so phrased as to permit of simple answers in Latin. In Part IV they are in English and are called "Review Questions"; they cover a number of chapters at a time.

3. **Word Study.** — The word-study material in Parts I–III reviews and carries forward a feature of *Elementary Latin* which many have considered very valuable.

4. **Plays.** — Two simple Latin plays similar to those which have proved so popular in *Elementary Latin* are included.

5. **Grammar.** — Only those forms and constructions that are frequently used in the book are taken up for intensive

study in Parts I–III. New constructions are studied in their context. It is, of course, possible for teachers to assign them for previous study if they so desire. The Summaries of Inflections and Syntax cover all the forms and constructions found in the book.

6. Collateral Reading in English. — In Part III definite assignments of reading in English books are suggested. In most cases only one of the suggested readings will be desirable for each topic. A list of these books and others is given on pages 370–371.

7. English Sentences. — Sentences for translation into Latin are found in all four parts. They are based directly on the text. It is not expected that all of them will be assigned, especially in Parts I and II, since teachers differ in their views as to the amount of such work needed. The exercises may, if desired, be taken up once a week by way of review.

8. Course of Study Requirements. — The course of study suggested for the second year in the report of the Classical Investigation is fully met in this book. The same is true of state and city courses of study and of the requirements for entrance to practically all colleges.

9. Illustrations. — The illustrations have been selected to carry out the central idea of the book — to give some idea of the meaning of the Roman civilization. Thanks are due to Mr. George Kleine for permission to use scenes from the moving pictures "Julius Caesar," "Antony and Cleopatra," and "Spartacus"; to the Film Booking Offices of America for the scenes from the Enrico Guazzoni production of "Messalina"; to First National Pictures for those from "The Eternal City"; and to the Metro-Goldwyn Corporation for those from "Ben Hur." Thanks are also due to Professor D. M. Robinson of Johns Hopkins University for the pictures of his excavations at Pisidian Antioch and to Professor Charles

H. Weller of the University of Iowa for permission to use several of his pictures of Athens.

The authors wish to express their deep indebtedness to Miss Loura B. Woodruff of the Oak Park, Ill., High School and to Mr. Charles R. Fisher of the Allegheny High School, Pittsburgh, for reading the proofs and for their many valuable suggestions, and to Miss Lillian B. Lawler of the University of Iowa, who wrote the stories in Parts I and II and the two Latin plays and who assisted in many other ways.

B. L. U.
N. E. H.

CONTENTS

PAGE

TRANSLATION HELPS AND HINTS xv

VOCABULARY NOTEBOOK xviii

PART I. A ROMAN FAMILY 1

PART II. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS 33

A LATIN PLAY: *Bulla* 70

TRANSLATION HELPS AND HINTS 75

INTRODUCTION TO PART III 77

PART III

I. THE EARLY KINGS OF ROME 79

1. From Slave Boy to King 81

II. THE LAST OF THE KINGS AND THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE REPUBLIC 82

2. The Horatii and the Curiatii 85

III. HOW SCAEVOLA GOT HIS NAME 87

3. The Regulation of War 89

IV. THE SECESSION OF THE PLEBS 91

4. Proverbs of Publilius Syrus 94

V. THE FABIAN FAMILY GOES TO WAR 95

5. A Statesman Who Could Not Be Bought . 97

VI. THE LAWS OF THE TWELVE TABLES 99

6. Quotations from Horace 101

VII. CAMILLUS AND THE SCHOOL-TEACHER 102

7. Two Fables 105

VIII. THE GAULS CAPTURE ROME 106

8. A Horse Fit for a King 109

PAGE

IX. The Defeat of the Gauls 110
9. Good Citizenship 113

X. The Romans and the Latins 114
10. How T. Manlius Torquatus Earned His Surname 116

XI. The Samnites and Pyrrhus 118
11. A Lesson in Voting 121

XII. The Punic Wars 122
12. Quotations from Seneca 125

XIII. The Macedonian Conquest 126
13. Cato and the Women 128

XIV. A Patriot Speaks 130
14. Quotations from Cicero 132

XV. Wars in the South, East, West, and North . 134
15. Damon and Pythias 137

XVI. Pompey, Cicero, and Caesar 139
16. The "Hanging Tree" 141

XVII. Civil War 143
17. A Medieval Version of the Story of Caesar . 145

XVIII. Pax Romana 147
18. The Reward of Loyalty 149

XIX. From Tiberius to Nero 150
19. Androclus and the Lion 153

XX. From Vespasian to Aurelius 155
20. Quotations from Virgil 158

XXI. The Eruption of Mt. Vesuvius. Part I . . 160
21. A Costly Joke 163

XXII. The Eruption of Mt. Vesuvius. Part II . . 164
22. A Model Wife 167
23. A Fish Story 168
24. Two Love Letters 169
25. A Ghost Story 170
26. A Happy Marriage 171
27. A Lax Letter Writer 171
28. Advice to a Provincial Governor . . . 171

PAGE

29. Snobbishness 172
30. Wanted, a Teacher 172
31. The Secret of Success 173
32. The Good Die Young 174
33. A Devoted Wife 176
34. A Busy Holiday 177
35. Pliny and Tacitus 178
36. A Humane Master 178
37. You Were a Boy Once 180
38. How to Keep Young 181
39. The Two Lovers 181
40. Quotations from Plautus and Terence . . 182
41. Quotations from Juvenal 182
42. Miscellaneous Quotations 183
43. Orpheus and Eurydice 184
44. Miscellaneous Quotations 186
45. "Poor Little Sparrow" 187
46. Proverbs of Publilius Syrus 188
47. Roman Wit 189
48. A Bit of Medieval Fiction 190
49. Petrarch and Cicero 191
50. The Spirit of Forgiveness 192

A Latin Play: *Sabinae* 194

Introduction to Part IV 201

Part IV. Caesar's Gallic War

Book I (Simplified) 221
Book II (Simplified) 251
Book III 281
Book IV 290
Book V 306
Book VI 328
Book VII 340

Written Exercises (Caesar) 359

Chronological Table 367

List of Books for Supplementary Reading and Reference 370

Summary of Inflections 372

PAGE

Summary of Syntax 399
Summary of Prefixes and Suffixes 417
Latin-English Vocabulary 421
English-Latin Vocabulary 489
Index 504

MAPS

PAGE

Italia . . . . . *facing* 1
Imperium Romanum . . . . . *following* 138
Gallia . . . . . *following* 220

TRANSLATION HELPS AND HINTS

I. Reading in the Latin Word Order

How do you think that the Romans spoke and understood their own language? Do you suppose that every time his father spoke to him Publius began "to look first for the subject, then for the verb"? Do you not have an idea that he *took in the words in the natural order* in which they fell from his father's lips? Of course he did — how else could he have got the sense of what his father was saying? Now we must do the same thing in reading a Latin sentence — we must take in the words in the exact order in which they fell from the pen of the Roman who wrote the sentence two thousand years ago.

Suppose that you are trying to get the meaning of the following Latin sentence which you have never seen before:

Caesar, hīs rēbus impulsus, equitātum omnem prīmā nocte ad castra hostium mittit.

Attack the words *as they stand:*

Caesar: Nominative singular — for this reason it is probably the subject, especially since it stands first.

hīs rēbus: These words seem to go together (demonstrative and noun) and are either dative or ablative plural, depending upon some other word.

impulsus: This word, which is nominative singular masculine, looks like "impulse" which comes from the Latin verb meaning "impel." It must agree with **Caesar,** for it has the same gender, number, and case. The punctuation shows that **hīs rēbus** depends upon it; the latter is therefore the ablative of means. The sentence so far reads: "Caesar, impelled by these things (facts)."

equitātum omnem: These words are clearly accusative singular and must be the direct object of some verb or else the subject accusa-

tive — we can not tell which until we go on. By the way, **equitātum** evidently comes from **equus**, "horse," or is related to it.

prīmā nocte: The quantity of the **a** in **prīmā** shows that it is ablative singular in agreement with **nocte.** The latter suggests "nocturnal" but is a noun. It therefore in all probability means "on the first night" — or could it possibly mean "at the first (part of) the night" in the way that **summus mōns** means "the top of the mountain"?

ad castra hostium: The sense seems clear as it stands: "to the camp of the enemy," for **ad** always takes the accusative and **castra** must be its object; **hostium** is genitive plural and therefore shows possession, depending upon **castra.**

mittit: At last the sense of the whole passage is clear! **Mittit** is the verb and it agrees with the first word, **Caesar,** for it is third singular active. Now it is evident that **omnem equitātum** is the direct object of **mittit.** All the words seem now to fall into line and make sense just as they stand, if we merely bring the key word or verb forward from its place at the end and put it where it naturally belongs in the English sentence.

We notice now, as we go over the words with the meaning of the whole sentence more or less clearly in mind, that the first meaning of a word is not always the best, and that the general sense of the passage (*i.e.* the "context"). helps one decide the exact meaning to be given to each word. The complete sentence reads as follows:

Caesar, urged by these considerations, sends all the cavalry to the enemy's camp at evening.

If you will adopt this practice from the beginning, taking into account all the possibilities of form, meaning, and construction, after a time you will be able to grasp the thought rapidly and *naturally*, without so much conscious effort, *i.e.* your reading will become more or less automatic.

To the Teacher. — One way to teach your pupils to think in the Latin word order is to read to them occasionally the Latin selection of the next day's lesson. Order all books closed and then read slowly one short clause or sentence at a time. Call upon pupils to translate each thought-unit as completed.

For an extended discussion of this and other methods for learning to comprehend Latin as Latin, see Part I of *The General Report of the Classical Investigation* (Princeton University Press); also the *Pennsylvania Syllabus in Latin for High Schools* (Department of Public Instruction, Harrisburg, Pa.).

II. New Words

Reading Latin as Latin of course implies at the outset the mastery of a small stock of Latin words.[1] We shall take it for granted that at the beginning of the second year you know all the ordinary prepositions and conjunctions and several scores or hundreds of the most common nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and verbs which occurred almost every day in your first-year work. We shall likewise assume that you have now resolved to adopt the practice of first reading every Latin sentence or passage through in the original word order.

In doing this you will probably discover some new words. Your first impulse will be to turn at once to the Vocabulary for their meaning, but that always takes time and should be reserved as a sort of "court of last resort." There are three ways[2] of getting at the meaning of a new word, which are easier and better than the old way; exhaust all three ways before you resort to the Latin-English Vocabulary:

1. *Think of an English derivative from the Latin word* (nearly seventy per cent of our English words come from the Latin). The English derivative, if the same part of speech as the Latin original, will serve as a stopgap until you can find a synonym which will usually suit the sense better.

2. If you can think of no related English word, try to *recall a related Latin word; e.g.* **amīcus** should suggest the meaning of **amīcitia.**

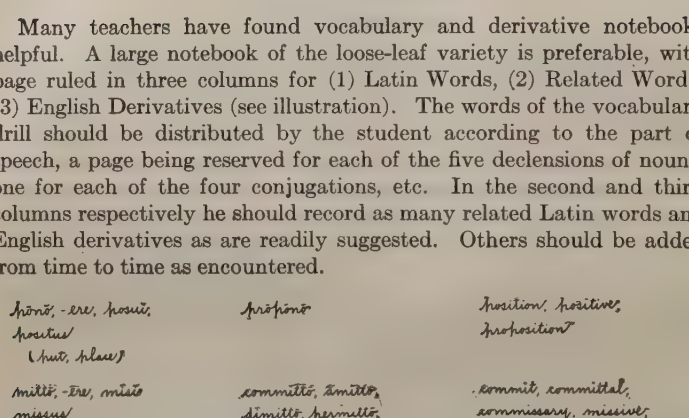
3. If no related English or Latin word suggests itself, *guess at the meaning* from the context and later verify your guess by looking up the word in the Vocabulary.

[1] *Cf. The General Report of the Classical Investigation* (Princeton University Press), p. 125.

[2] *Cf. General Report*, pp. 206–210.

VOCABULARY NOTEBOOK

Many teachers have found vocabulary and derivative notebooks helpful. A large notebook of the loose-leaf variety is preferable, with page ruled in three columns for (1) Latin Words, (2) Related Words, (3) English Derivatives (see illustration). The words of the vocabulary drill should be distributed by the student according to the part of speech, a page being reserved for each of the five declensions of nouns, one for each of the four conjugations, etc. In the second and third columns respectively he should record as many related Latin words and English derivatives as are readily suggested. Others should be added from time to time as encountered.



Other Types of Notebooks

Type 1 (with definitions)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus, *call*

vocation — a *calling*, occupation
convoke — *call* together
invocation — a *calling* upon, a prayer, etc.

Type 2 (with examples of use in English)

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send*

mission — He was sent on a *mission* to Europe.
missive — The letter was a formidable *missive*.
transmit — They will *transmit* the message to us, etc.

ITALIA
Scale of Miles
0 25 50 100 150
Rhenus
(Rhine)
L. Venetus
Aenus
ALPES
GALLIA
VENETIA
ILLYRICUM
Mediolanum (Milan)
Aug. Taurinorum (Turin)
Verona
Mantua
Padus (Po)
LIGURIA
Genua
(Gulf of Genoa)
APPENNINUS
MARE HADRIATICUM
Rubico
Ariminum
Metaurus
Aesis
Luca
Pisae
Arnus
Florentia
Arretium
Sentinum
L. Trasumennus
Clusium
ETRURIA
UMBRIA
PICENUM
Asculum
Volsinii
Falerii
Narnia
Feronia
Tarquinii
Caere
Allia
Roma
Tiberis
Ostia
Tusculum
Ardea
Antium
LATIUM
Praeneste
Sora
Fregellae
Volsci
Circei
Tarracina
Formiae
Capua
Cumae
Misenum
Neapolis (Naples)
Pompeii
CAMPANIA
SAMNIUM
Bovianum
Beneventum
Caudinae
Luceria
APULIA
Aufidus
Cannae
Venusia
Brundisium
CALABRIA
Tarentum
LUCANIA
Heraclea
Paestum
(Gulf of Tarentum)
MAGNA GRAECIA
BRUTTIUM
Croton
CORSICA
SARDINIA
Messana
Mylae
Locri
Rhegium
ERCTE M.
ERYX M.
Panormus
AEGATES INS.
Drepana
Lilybaeum
SICILIA
AETNA M.
Catana
Syracusae
Agrigentum
Ecnomus
Gela
Pachynum Pr.
CALATHA I.
Hippo Zarytus
Utica
Carthago
Pr. Mercurii
Bagrada
COSSYRA
NUMIDIA
AFRICA
Longitude 12° East from 14° Greenwich
Wms. Eng. Co., N.Y.

SECOND LATIN BOOK

PART I

1. A ROMAN FAMILY

I. At Home

In aedificiō pulchrō Rōmae,[1] annīs quibus Augustus prīnceps cīvitātis erat, habitābat familia nōbilis—Caecilia.[2] P. Caecilius Rūfus, paterfamiliās,[3] mīles fuerat; sed nunc erat pāx ("Pāx Augusta"[4] ā grātō populō appellāta) et officia Caecilī pūblica nunc erant. Fulvia, māterfamiliās,[3] erat fīlia Fulvī, nōbilis Rōmānī. Fulvia et Rūfus trēs līberōs habuērunt, quam ob causam "iūs trium līberōrum"[5] obtinuērunt. Hoc iūs ab Augustō datum est quod in paucīs nōbilibus familiīs eō tempore erant multī līberī, et quod Augustus maiōrem esse numerum optimōrum cīvium Rōmānōrum cupiēbat.

Fig. 2. Vir Rōmānus

[1] Locative (**452**): *at Rome.*

[2] Adjective here (*cf.* "the Smith family"); noun in line 19.

[3] An old genitive form. *Paterfamilias* and *materfamilias* are used in English. **Caecilī** (line 7) and **Rūfus** (line 10) refer to the same man.

[4] So called after the emperor Augustus, who brought a long era of peace after many years of civil war.

[5] The fathers of three children were exempted from certain taxes and obligations and were given preference in official positions.

Līberī erant Pūblius, fīlius, quī iam vir erat; Caecilia, fīlia maior; Secunda, fīlia minor. Servī familiae Caeciliae multī erant. Aliī erant Graecī, aliī Āfricānī, aliī Germānī. Pater, māter, līberī, servī — omnēs erant partēs familiae Rōmānae.

Auctōritās patris, quae ā Rōmānīs "patria potestās" appellābātur, maxima erat. Pater rēx tōtīus familiae erat;

FIG. 3. INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE

Note the costume of the woman, the senators, the general (Caesar), and the officer. (From "Julius Caesar.")

deōs colēbat; sōlus negōtium gerēbat. Sī servum aut fīlium interficere cupiēbat, potestātem habēbat; sed numquam eō tempore Rōmānī id cupiēbant. Rūfus bonus, nōn dūrus dominus erat; et familia eum nōn timēbat sed amābat.

Auctōritās mātris Rōmānae in familiā nōn magna erat, sed Fulviam, quae docta ācrisque erat, Caecilius semper cōnsulēbat. Domina servārum erat, et labōrem eārum regēbat. Fīliās docēbat. Pūblius in lūdīs doctus erat, et iam in Graeciam, ubi clārae scholae Athēniēnsēs erant, nāvigāre parābat.

Saepe aut pater aut māter verba faciēbat dē hominibus et factīs quae memoriā tenēbant — dē hominibus quōs ipsī nōverant et dē eīs dē quibus in librīs lēgerant.

Caeciliī vītam aequam agēbant. Itaque somnus eōrum facilis erat. Sed quondam Pūblī somnus levis erat. Dē quō putābat? Haec verba in mente volvēbat: "Crās optimus diēs aderit."

Quid est hoc? Iam cognōscētis.

2. Vocabulary Drill

To the Student. — The words forming the Vocabulary Drill of this and the following lessons in Parts I–IV form a "core" or working vocabulary. Make it your practice, therefore, while studying the lesson to look up each of these "Drill" words in the Latin-English Vocabulary of this book, memorizing not only the meanings but also the *essential facts* about each word, *i.e.* if a noun, its nominative, genitive, and gender; if a verb, its principal parts; if a preposition, the case it takes, etc. Unless you know these essential facts, you can not use the word. You should be more or less familiar with the words in the Drills of Parts I–II from your beginner's book.

After memorizing the following Vocabulary Drill, enter the words in your vocabulary notebook.

doceō	**līberī**	**paucī**
dominus	**multus**	**populus**
dūrus	**nāvigō**	**pūblicus**
fīlius	**obtineō**	**sum**
habeō	**officium**	**teneō**

3. Form Review

(All references are to sections in the Appendix.)

Nouns and adjectives of the first and second declensions (**371, 372, 377**). Present system indicative active of the first and second conjugations (**391, 392**). Present system indicative of **sum** (**397**).

4. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **aedificium pulchrum, familia magna, dominus dūrus.**

(*b*) Conjugate **habeō** and **appellō** in the present system indicative active.

5. Syntax for Special Review

Subject and predicate nominative (**411, 412**). Agreement of adjectives (**405**). Direct object (**426**). Ablative of place where (**446**). Ablative of time when (**447**). Apposition (**410**).

6. Written Exercises

1. There were few children in many Roman families in the time of Augustus. 2. The slaves at that time often had harsh masters. 3. Rufus, head of the family,[1] often consulted Fulvia about the duties of the children and slaves. 4. In the Roman family the mother taught the daughters and the father the sons. 5. Do you not wish to hear much (*plur.*) about Publius, son of Rufus?

7. Word Study: Prefixes

Review the forms and meanings of **ab-, dē-,** and **ex-** (**496**). Define according to the prefix: *abnormal, deduct, export.*

Select the proper form of each prefix and define: (**ab**) *-duct, -vert, -tract;* (**de**) *-scribe, -capitate, -generate;* (**ex**) *-pel, -dict.*

[1] **Paterfamiliās.**

8. A ROMAN FAMILY

II. A New Kinsman

Lūx erat: Pūblius praeceps ad patrem et mātrem cucurrit, et eīs salūtem dīxit.

"Cūr properās?" rogāvērunt.

"Nōnne scītis? Tempus adest quō Q. Fūrius erit noster!"

Q. Fūrius amīcus firmus Pūblī erat. Familia Fūria humilis fuit. Pater Quīntī sex līberōs sed pecūniam nōn magnam habuit. M. Caecilius, frāter P. Caecilī, patris Pūblī, magnam pecūniam sed nūllōs līberōs habuit.

Fig. 4. Augustus as a Youth

"Nōnne cupis fīlium adoptāre?" Pūblius Mārcō dīxerat. Omnēs Rōmānī fīliōs habēre cupiēbant, quod fīliī nōmen familiae servābant, deōs familiae colēbant, "patriam potestātem" cōnfirmābant. Crēbrae erant adoptiōnēs inter Rōmānōs. Multī clārī Rōmānī adoptātī sunt. Fīlius minimus L. Aemilī Paulī ā P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne, fīliō ducis clārī, adoptātus est, et posteā P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Aemiliānus Āfricānus appellābātur. Augustus[1] ipse ā C. Iūliō Caesare adoptātus erat, et nōmen tōtum erat C. Iūlius Caesar Octāviānus Augustus.

Pūblius Q. Fūrium ad M. Caecilium dūxerat.

"Fūrius bonus puer est. Eum adoptāre cupiō," dīxit Mārcus. "Cum meā familiā habitābit, sed saepe patrem, mātrem, frātrēs, sorōrēs vidēbit."

---

[1] An honorary surname (the "revered" or "reverend"), conferred by the Roman Senate upon Octavianus when he became emperor.

Id grātum patrī Quīntī fuerat, et nunc tempus aderat.

Multī clientēs ad P. Caecilium iam veniēbant et salūtem dīcēbant. Cum clientibus et patre Pūblius in Forum prōcessit et ad aedificium praetōris accessit. Q. Fūrius, pater eius, M. Caecilius, amīcī iam aderant. Q. Fūrius novam togam gerēbat.

Praetor condiciōnēs adoptiōnis prōposuit.

"Quīntum, fīlium meum, ā meā patriā potestāte līberō," pater Quīntī ter dīxit.

Tum M. Caecilius dīxit, "Meus fīlius nunc est!"

"Tuus fīlius nunc est," dīxit praetor. "In tuā potestāte nunc est. Nōmen nōn iam Q. Fūrius est, sed M. Caecilius Fūriānus."

Omnēs Fūriānō novō et M. Caeciliō salūtem dīxērunt; tum prōcessērunt.

"Nunc noster Fūriānus es!" dīxit Pūblius Fūriānō.

"Tibi grātiās agō!" respondit Fūriānus, et cum patre novō discessit. Plūra dē Fūriānō et dē Pūbliō audiētis.

9. Vocabulary Drill

appellō	**humilis**	**praeceps**
condiciō	**māter**	**respondeō**
dux	**nōmen**	**salūs**
firmus	**omnis**	**soror**
frāter	**pater**	**tempus**

10. Form Review

Nouns and adjectives of the third declension (**373, 378**).

11. Drill. — Decline **pater omnis, potestās nova, nōmen tuum, fīlius bonus, cliēns firmus.**

12. Syntax for Special Review

Ablative of accompaniment (**438**). Dative of indirect object (**417**).

13. Written Exercises

1. Publius proceeds to the praetor with his father and Marcus. 2. Publius's friend was adopted by Marcus and lived with the family. 3. A new name is given to the humble boy. 4. I shall tell everything (*neut. plur.*) to my father and mother. 5. Roman boys often proceeded to the Forum with their fathers and mothers, brothers and sisters.

14. Word Study: Prefixes

Review the prefixes **ad-**, **in-**, and **con-** (**496**), noting carefully that in all three assimilation may take place. Define according to the prefix: **ad-sum, ac-cēdō, in-veniō, com-moveō**; *ad-vent, in-habit, cor-respond.*

Select the proper form of each prefix and define: (**ad**) *-nounce, -fect, -gravate, -sent, -tract;* (**in**) *-duct, -vent, -migrate;* (**con**) *-rect, -firm, -lect.*

Fig. 5. The Forum at Antioch, Pisidia
Excavated during 1924. (Courtesy of D. M. Robinson.)

15. A ROMAN FAMILY

III. Famous Roman Women

Fulvia, māter Pūblī, cum Caeciliā et Secundā, sorōribus eius, Pūblium Rūfumque exspectābat.

"Dūrum est semper exspectāre!" clāmāvit Secunda. "Virōs exspectāmus, nihil ipsae agimus. Vīta puerōrum et virōrum grātior est. Prōcēdunt in lūdum, in Forum, in Cūriam. Sed puellās Rōma nōn amat."

Fig. 6.
Mulier Rōmāna

"Quid? Nōnne Rōma clārās Rōmānās semper memoriā tenet?" rogāvit Caecilia.

"Vērum est," erant verba Fulviae. "Quis Veturiam, quae Rōmam servāvit, memoriā nōn tenet? Coriolānus, fīlius Veturiae, lēgem prōposuerat. Haec lēx cīvitātī nōn grāta erat. Itaque inimīcī Coriolānum in fugam dedērunt, et is ad Volscōs, hostēs Rōmānōrum, fūgit. Cum Volscīs ad portās Rōmae veniēbat et eam occupāre parābat. Veturia cum aliīs ēgregiīs mulieribus Rōmānīs ad castra Coriolānī prōcessit pācemque petīvit. Coriolānus, verbīs mātris affectus, dīxit, 'Māter, Rōmam servāvistī!' "

"Et quī Rōmānus factīs Cloeliae nōn permōtus est?" dīxit Caecilia. "Captīva, fūgit ex castrīs Etrūscōrum, hostium Rōmānōrum, et trāns flūmen trānāvit."

"Eīs temporibus facile erat fāmam merēre quod Rōmānī bellum gerēbant," dīxit Secunda. "Sed nunc pāx est. Quid Rōmānae in pāce efficere possunt?"

"Multa!" respondit Caecilia. "Nōnne Virginēs Vestālēs sacrīs officiīs saepe Rōmam servāvērunt, deīs inimīcīs? Et quis nōn Līviam[1] bonam memoriā tenēbit?"

"Sed in Forum nōn prōcēdunt."

[1] Wife of Augustus.

"Nōnne Laelia ōrātiōnēs ēgregiās facere poterat?" rogāvit Fulvia. "Nōnne Hortēnsia causam Rōmānārum in Forō agēbat? In bellō cīvīlī triumvirī[1] mulierēs Rōmānās pecūniam cōnferre iussērunt. Hortēnsia in Forō dīxit: 'Cūr pecūniam cōnferre dēbēmus? Nūllam auctōritātem in cīvitāte habēmus. Sī hostēs venient, pecūniam cōnferēmus, sed numquam prō cīvīlī bellō auxilium dabimus.' Hīs verbīs triumvirī concēdere coāctī sunt.

FIG. 7. PUELLA RŌMĀNA

"Puerī Rōmānī dē hīs et dē Cornēliā, Claudiā, Lucrētiā, Tucciā, ipsā Caeciliā Metellā nostrā in lūdīs legunt audiuntque, et semper legent audientque dum Rōma manēbit. Rōmānae bonae cīvitātem mūniunt. Ubi perīcula venient, parātae semper erunt."

16. Vocabulary Drill

afficiō	cōnferō	iubeō
agō	facilis	mūniō
auctōritās	faciō	occupō
cīvitās	fugiō	veniō
cōgō	gerō	verbum

17. Form Review

Present system indicative active of the third and fourth conjugations (**393, 394, 395**).

18. Drill. — Conjugate **agō, veniō, prōpōnō, efficiō,** and **audiō** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative active.

[1] *triumvirs*, a board of three officials.

19. Syntax for Special Review

Ablative of means (**441**). Infinitive used as subject and object (**492, 493**).

20. Written Exercises

1. Coriolanus was moved by his mother's words and did not occupy the city with his troops. 2. Can girls in these times win fame by good deeds? 3. "Why do we contribute money? We have no influence in the state," Hortensia said. 4. Will the women be ordered to contribute the money, or will Hortensia's words compel the men to yield? 5. It was not easy for Roman women at that time to earn money and fame.

21. Word Study: Prefixes

Review the prefixes **re-, prō-, sub-** (**496**). Only **sub-** is assimilated. **Re-** has a form **red-** before vowels.

Define according to the prefix: **re-ferō, red-igō, red-dō, re-dūcō, prō-pōnō, suc-cēdō, sus-cipiō**; *re-mit, re-cessional, pro-claim, pro-mote, pro-vide, sub-tract, su-spect.*

Select the proper form of the prefix **sub-**: *-gest, -position, -ficient, -ceptible, -port.*

Fig. 8. Roman Glassware from Pompeii

22. A ROMAN FAMILY

IV. Days with Books and Writers

In pulchrō templō Apollinis, quod Augustus in bellō vōverat et posteā in Palātīnō cōnfēcerat, erat bibliothēca pūblica ubi multī librī, et Graecī et Latīnī, continēbantur. Ibi Pūblius et Fūriānus saepe diū manēbant. Saepe per Argīlētum, partem urbis in quā librāriōrum tabernae erant,

Fig. 9. The Shopping District of Ancient Rome
Restoration of a street leading to the Palatine Hill.

ambulābant. Prō tabernīs pendēbant librī ab auctōribus et novīs et nōtīs scrīptī. In tabernīs servī librāriōrum semper librōs dēscrībēbant. Magna taberna Sosiōrum grātissima Fūriānō Pūbliōque erat.

Quondam P. Ovidius Nāsō, poēta Rōmānīs eō tempore grātus, carmina legere parābat. Rūfus, pater Pūblī, amīcum poētae nōverat; itaque Rūfus cum amīcō et cum Pūbliō Fūriānōque ad aedificium in quō Ovidius habitāvit prōcessit.

Magnum erat studium Pūblī et Fūriānī; multa enim carmina Ovidī in tabernā Sosiōrum vīderant et explicāverant, et saepe Ovidium ipsum vidēre cupīverant. In viā Rūfus amīcusque multa dē poētīs dīxerant.

"Ovidius poēta optimus est," amīcus exclāmāverat. "Ubi hominēs nōmina omnium aliōrum poētārum quī nunc sunt ex memoriā dēposuerint, nōmen Ovidī remanēbit."

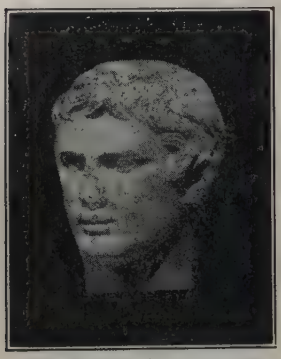


FIG. 10. AUGUSTUS
Found at Antioch, Pisidia, in 1924. (Courtesy of D. M. Robinson.)

"Bonus est, sed nōn est melior quam Vergilius et Horātius, quōs puerī audiēbāmus. Meliōrēs quam illī erant Rōma neque vīdit neque audīvit," dīxerat Rūfus.

"Certē, certē, *Aeneidem*,[1] *Carmen Saeculāre*[2] nōn scrīpsit; *Amōrēs* et aliī librī eius grātī, nōn īnsignēs sunt. Sed multa dē novō librō eius, quī *Metamorphōsēs*[3] appellātur, audīvī."

"Augustusne eum librum vīdit?"

"Id nōn sciō. Ovidius autem Augustō nōn grātissimus esse vidētur. Augustus Horātium et Vergilium memoriā tenet."

Ad aedificium in quō Ovidius habitābat iam vēnerant, et Ovidius iam novum librum legēbat. Carmen dē Mīnōtaurō dūrō, Daedalō, Thēseō fortī lēgit. Pūblius et Fūriānus cum magnō studiō audīvērunt. Carmine lēctō, ex aedificiō tardē excessērunt.

"Poēta certē est!" erant verba Pūblī.

---

[1] *The Æneid*, an epic poem by Virgil.

[2] *The Secular Hymn*, a poem by Horace written for the Secular (*i.e.* Century) Games.

[3] "Transformations," a long poem dealing with supernatural changes, or miracles, from the creation of the world out of chaos to the fabled transformation of Julius Caesar into a star.

23. Vocabulary Drill

amīcus	**interficiō**	**pars**
auctor	**legō**	**petō**
cōnficiō	**maneō**	**pōnō**
contendō	**nōscō**	**prōcēdō**
homō	**novus**	**pugnō**

24. Form Review

Perfect system indicative active of the four conjugations (**391–395**) and perfect system indicative of **sum** (**397**).

25. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate **maneō, parō, scrībō, cupiō,** and **audiō** in the perfect system indicative active.

(*b*) Give a complete synopsis of **dīcō** and **veniō** in the third plural indicative active.

26. Written Exercises

1. Augustus had completed a beautiful temple of Apollo and a public library on the Palatine. 2. There Publius had read many books written by Greek and Latin authors. 3. He had read many poems of Ovid but had not seen the poet himself. 4. Publius and his father proceeded with a friend of the poet to Ovid's house. 5. "Ovid is certainly a good poet," said Publius to his father, "but Rome will always remember Virgil."

27. Word Study: Prefixes

Review the prefixes **in-** (*negative*), **dis-, per-** (**496**). Note that **per-** may have intensive force.

Define according to the prefix: **incertus, inimīcus, dīmittō, discēdō, perficiō, perlegō**; *ingrate, dissimilar, permanent.*

Select the proper form of each prefix: (**in**) *-legal, -iquity, -movable, -resistible, -visible;* (**dis**) *-fer, -gest, -vert, -order.*

28. A ROMAN FAMILY

V. Bad News

Quondam Pūblius et Fūriānus per viam prōcēdēbant. Subitō cōnstitērunt. In Forō clāmōrēs audiēbantur, virī premēbantur, templa deōrum petēbantur, deī vocābantur.

"Quid agitur?" rogāvit Pūblius. Per viam currēbat mīles.

"Est Titus, amīcus noster!" clāmāvit Fūriānus.

"Ipse est!" clāmāvit Pūblius. "Cūr Galliam relīquistī?"

Titus Pūbliō et Fūriānō salūtem dīxit, tum respondit: "Ad portās Rōmae celerī pede cum paucīs aliīs mīlitibus et cum nūntiō vēnimus. Gravis nūntius ad Augustum portātur, quō opprimētur — Vārus et paene omnēs mīlitēs eius victī sunt!"

"Victī?"

"Et interfectī sunt. Nōnne Drūsum memoriā tenētis? Magna pars Germāniae ab illō superāta est, et castra in Germāniā posita sunt. Officium Vārī erat alia castra pōnere, viās mūnīre, illam partem Germāniae prōvinciam Rōmānam facere. Sed Germānī ab Arminiō, duce Germānō, contrā Rōmānōs incitābantur. Vārō nūntiātur oppidum parvum Germānum dēfēcisse. Vārus et mīlitēs Rōmānī castra movent et per silvam Teutoburgiēnsem, in quā perīcula multa erant, prōcēdunt. Subitō Germānī accēdunt, et proelium committitur. Diū pugnant; Germānī vincunt. Paucī ex mīlitibus Vārī manent. In Galliam, in castra nostra contendunt. Potestās Rōmāna nōn iam in Germāniā est. Castra Rōmāna occupābuntur, ā Germānīs tenēbuntur et mūnientur. Hunc nūntium ad Augustum ferimus."

Multī per Forum currēbant.

"Nōnne vidētis?" dīxit Pūblius. "Augustus adest!"

Pūblius, Fūriānus, Titus in Forum dēscendērunt, per quod Augustus portābātur.

"Augustus noster nūntium audīvit; oppressus est," dīxit Fūriānus. Verba Augustī audīre poterant:

"Ōh, Vāre,[1] Vāre! Ubi sunt mīlitēs meī?"

Tardō pede ē Forō discessērunt.

FIG. 11. THE ROMAN FORUM TO-DAY

The arch at the right is that of the emperor Septimius Severus, of the third century A.D. The small protecting shed in front of it covers a monument which was ancient even in the time of Augustus.

29. Vocabulary Drill

audiō	incitō	pēs
committō	mīles	portō
currō	nūntius	superō
dīcō	opprimō	ubi
gravis	parō	vincō

[1] Vocative: *"Oh, Varus, Varus!"*

30. Form Review

Present system indicative passive of the four conjugations (**391–395**).

31. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate **relinquō, portō, interficiō, teneō,** and **mūniō** in the present system indicative passive.

(*b*) Give a three-tense synopsis of the following in the present system indicative, active and passive: **moveō, committō, dēficiō, occupō,** and **audiō.**

32. Syntax for Special Review

Ablative of personal agent (**436**).

33. Written Exercises

1. A large part of Germany had been occupied by Drusus and the Romans. 2. Arminius, a German leader, aroused the Germans against the Romans. 3. The news is carried to Varus, the Roman leader, by a messenger. 4. The Romans advance against the Germans and begin battle in a great forest. 5. The Roman soldiers are defeated by Arminius and few Romans remain in all Germany.

34. Word Study: Suffixes

Review the suffixes **-ia, -tia, -antia, -entia** (**497**). Note that **-ia** usually becomes *-y* in English, while **-tia** becomes *-ce,* and **-antia** or **-entia** becomes *-ance* or *-ence, -ancy* or *-ency.* The combination **-cia** also becomes *-ce.*

Give the English forms of **memoria, Germānia, prōvincia, familia, iūstitia, malitia, dīligentia, prōvidentia, cōnsistentia.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *glory, injury, luxury, notice, grace, instance, science, agency?*

35. A ROMAN FAMILY

VI. The Laws of the Twelve Tables

Quondam Pūblius haec verba recitābat, Secundā, sorōre eius parvā, audiente: "Adversus hostem aeterna auctōritās."[1]

Dē hīs verbīs Secunda Pūblium rogātūra erat, sed hic in Forum excesserat. Itaque Rūfus pater ā Secundā petītus est. Rūfō inventō, Secunda rogāvit:

"Quid est 'Adversus hostem aeterna auctōritās?' Audīvī Pūblium haec dīcentem."

Pater explicāvit: "Haec sunt verba dē Lēgibus Duodecim Tabulārum lēcta, quae ab omnibus puerīs Rōmānīs memoriae semper mandātae sunt, ab eō tempore quō scrīptae sunt."

"Quō tempore scrīptae sunt?"

"Prīmīs annīs cīvitātis, ubi Decemvirī potestātem habuērunt. Nōnne memoriā tenēs? — Diū lēgēs Rōmānōrum, memoriā hominum retentae, nōn scrīptae erant. Sed ā populō Rōmānō scrīptae lēgēs petītae sunt, quod multae iniūriae receptae erant ab hominibus verba lēgum nōn scientibus. Cōnsiliō ā clārissimīs hominibus cīvitātis petītō, hic modus optimus inventus est: trēs virī clārī in Graeciam missī sunt, ubi lēgēs Graecōrum cognōvērunt. Aliī ad Hermodōrum, Graecum in Italiā habitantem, missī sunt. Etiam nunc statua Hermodōrī, ā Rōmānīs posita, in Comitiō stat. Tum summa potestās cīvitātis decem virīs data est, quī iussī sunt lēgēs Rōmānās dēscrībere. Ubi hī virī, Appiō Claudiō prīncipe, diū labōrāvērunt, magnum opus cōnfectum est. Lēgēs, in tabulīs duodecim scrīptae, in Forō positae sunt. Ibi ab omnibus per multōs annōs vīsae sunt, et ibi nunc vidērī possunt."

"Eās saepe vīdī. Sed quae sunt illae lēgēs?"

---

[1] *Against a foreigner the right (in property shall be) everlasting.*

"Multae sunt — dē poenīs, dē iniūriīs, dē familiīs, dē patriā potestāte, dē dēbitīs, dē viīs, dē sepulchrīs — dē iūre Rōmānō. Multae aliae lēgēs posteā lātae sunt, sed Lēgibus Duodecim Tabulārum potestās Rōmāna cōnfirmāta est. Ubi illae lēgēs āmissae erunt, tum potestās Rōmae āmissa erit; illīs manentibus, Rōma aeterna erit."

FIG. 12. RUINS ON THE PALATINE HILL, ROME

36. Vocabulary Drill

annus	**lēx**	**retineō**
clārus	**mandō**	**rogō**
excēdō	**mittō**	**sciō**
hostis	**modus**	**scrībō**
inveniō	**opus**	**videō**

37. Form Review

Perfect system indicative passive of the four conjugations (**391–395**). Participles (**391–395, 379**).

38. Drill. — I. (*a*) Conjugate **mandō** in the perfect passive, **retineō** in the past perfect passive, and **inveniō** in the future perfect passive.

(*b*) Give a six-tense synopsis of the passive of **dūcō** in the third singular and of **cōnficiō** in the third plural.

II. (*a*) Form and translate the participles of **dō, videō, mittō,** and **audiō.**

(*b*) Give the Latin for *having been seen* (acc. plur. masc.); *going to send* (nom. plur. fem.); *knowing* (abl. plur.); *written* (dat. sing. neut.); *going to receive* (gen. plur. masc.); *giving* (nom. plur. neut.).

39. Syntax for Special Review

Perfect participles used as adjectives and nouns (**488**). Ablative absolute (**440**). Participles used as clauses (**489**).

40. Written Exercises

1. Secunda heard Publius reciting strange words. 2. Having found her father, Secunda asked about the words (which she had) heard. 3. Her father said: "The words (which you) heard were selected from the laws." 4. "They were written on tablets under-the-direction-of Appius Claudius." 5. "These laws, placed in the Forum, can be seen by all Romans. While they remain,[1] we shall be free."

41. Word Study

Many English words preserve the exact form of the Latin, some of them even to the extent of retaining the Latin plural: **alumna, alumnae; alumnus, alumni; index, indices.**

Give five additional examples for each of the first three declensions.

---

[1] Use ablative absolute.

42. A ROMAN FAMILY

VII. A Session of the Senate

Pūblius per iānuam vēnit, ad quam Fulvia, māter eius, exspectābat.

"Ubi fuistī?" rogāvit Fulvia. "Tardus es."

"Ad Cūriam Iūliam cum patre prōcessī," respondit Pūblius. "Putō patrem iam ventūrum esse. In Comitiō, ad Cūriam, stābam. Iānuā nōn clausā, multa audīvī et vīdī. Multī patrēs,[1] inter quōs clārissimōs cīvitātis vīdī, per viās in Cūriam convēnērunt. Quibus iam sedentibus, cōnsulēs Dolābella et Sīlānus accessērunt, tum Augustus ipse. Post sacrificium nūntiātum est omnia bona esse. Tum Augustus litterās multās et longās lēgit."

Fig. 13. Cūria
The senate house as it was in ancient times.

"Dē quō?"

"Audīre nōn poteram, quod multī puerī ad iānuam stābant et semper clāmābant. Quem putās eōs dīmīsisse? — Fūriānum! Puerīs verba fēcit: Augustum, prīncipem cīvitātis, patrēs dē gravibus rēbus cōnsulere; deōs vocātōs esse et

[1] *senators.*

adesse; deīs eōs clāmantēs iniūriam facere; eōs poenam datūrōs esse — haec et multa alia. Quō modō, nōn vidēbam; sed coēgit puerōs discēdere. Magnam vōcem habet; putō puerōs eum timuisse. Augustus iam rogābat, 'Quās litterās habētis?' et patrēs litterās legere iubēbat. Litterīs omnibus lēctīs, cōnsul Sīlānus verba fēcit: multōs Rōmānōs clārōs ā servīs interfectōs esse; aliīs in perīculō ā servīs auxilium nōn datum esse; hoc malum esse; servōs cīvis Rōmānī interfectī prehendī et torquērī dēbēre et tum interficī."

"Cuius modī erant sententiae?"

"Paene omnēs patrēs sēnsērunt cōnsilium Sīlānī bonum futūrum esse; paucī, dūrum futūrum esse. Augustus nūntiāvit illōs maiōrem partem vidērī."

"Quae erat sententia patris tuī?"

"Verba multa nōn fēcit, et ea audīre nōn poteram; sed putō eum in parte Sīlānī sēnsisse. Sententiīs datīs, Augustus dīxit, 'Nihil vōs teneō,' et omnēs patrēs ex Cūriā discessērunt."

43. Vocabulary Drill

auxilium	**exspectō**	**servus**
conveniō	**nūntiō**	**stō**
dēbeō	**putō**	**tardus**
dīmittō	**sententia**	**timeō**
discēdō	**sentiō**	**vōx**

44. Form Review

Infinitives of the four conjugations and of **sum** (391–395, 397). **Quī** and **quis** (388, 389).

45. Drill. — I. (*a*) Give **exspectō, respondeō, audiō,** and **accēdō** in the present infinitive, active and passive; (*b*) **clāmō, legō, faciō,** and **veniō** in the future infinitive active; (*c*) **iubeō, interficiō, dō, sentiō,** and **dīcō** in the perfect infinitive, active and passive.

II. Give the Latin for *to whom?* (plur.); *whose* (sing.); *by whom* (plur.); *whom* (masc. sing.); *what* (acc. sing.); *for whom* (fem. plur.); *for what?* (sing.); *who* (fem. sing.); *who?* (masc. plur.); *of whom* (fem. plur.).

46. Syntax for Special Review

Tenses of the infinitive (**495**). Infinitive with a subject accusative (**429**). Indirect statement (**494**). Agreement of the relative (**408**).

47. Written Exercises

1. Fulvia did not know that Publius had been with his father in the Forum. 2. He had heard that Augustus and the consuls would come to the Forum. 3. He said that the consul had made a long speech, and he reported that many Romans were being killed by slaves. 4. The consul thought that these slaves ought to be put to death. 5. Fulvia asked: "Did your father feel that the consul's opinion was good?"

48. Word Study

Many English words preserve the base of Latin nouns, adjectives, or verbs, or the base plus silent *-e:* (*a*) *part, long, respond;* (*b*) *mode, grave, convene.*

Sometimes there are slight changes in the base: *boon* (**bonus**), *expect* (**exspectō**), *clear* (**clārus**), *letter* (**littera**), *claim* (**clāmō**).

Find five additional examples each of nouns, adjectives, and verbs in English which preserve the Latin base and five each of those which preserve the Latin base plus silent *-e*.

49. A ROMAN FAMILY

VIII. Festal Days

Mēnsis Mārtius iam aderat — ōlim prīmus novī annī inter Rōmānōs. Omnēs Caeciliī servīque eōrum vestibus novīs īnsignēs erant. Negōtium nūllī hominī mandābātur, quod mūnera tōtīus cīvitātis ob fēriās dēposita erant. Pūblius Fūriānusque per Forum prōcēdēbant inter crēbrōs hominēs, aliōs ad templum properantēs, aliōs stantēs, omnēs novās vestēs gerentēs. Pūbliō et Fūriānō[1] aedificia adōrnāta spectantibus, per Forum relātum est Vestālēs Virginēs ignem Vestae cum cūrā exstīnxisse, māteriamque ad novum ignem iam contulisse. Duo virī ad Pūblium stābant; hōrum alter alterī dīxit, "Bonum est. Illō igne manente, Rōma superārī nōn potest."

Nunc vōcēs audīrī poterant: "Saliī! Saliī veniunt!"

Per viās veniēbant illī, armātī et ancīlia[2] ferentēs. Populus cum silentiō cōnstitit. Ūnum ex ancīlibus temporibus antīquīs dē caelō cecidisse dictum est. Rōmānī, nōn cupientēs hoc sacrum rapī, iusserant Māmurium, virum callidum, alia huic similia facere. Itaque nēmō illud sacrum nunc cognōscere poterat. Saliī currēbant, ancīlia quae ferēbant ostendentēs. Officium hōrum erat mala ē portīs Rōmānīs expellere. Hīs vīsīs, ad templum Pūblius et Fūriānus prōcessērunt et Mārtem coluērunt.

Aliae antīquissimae fēriae erant multae numerō, variae nātūrā et auctōritāte: Cereālia et Parīlia (vel Palīlia), hae pāstōrum, quōrum dea Palēs erat, illae agricolārum, quī Cererem colēbant; fēriae Latīnae, ubi omnēs Latīnī Iovem in Albānō monte colēbant; Ambarvālia, ubi Frātrēs Arvālēs circum agrōs (quī etiam arva appellantur) animālia dūcēbant; Cōnsuālia, ubi frūmentum collātum sub terrā pōnēbātur, et equī celerēs pede in Circō currēbant; Lupercālia, ubi duo

[1] Ablative absolute. [2] *shields.*

virī per viās currēbant, rīdentēs et omnēs fēminās quās vidēbant verberantēs; Parentālia, ubi sepulchra tōtīus Rōmae adōrnābantur; et aliae. Pontificēs sōlī illās omnēs memoriā tenēre potuērunt.

50. Vocabulary Drill

alius	**expellō**	**possum**
alter	**ferō**	**properō**
colō	**inter**	**referō**
crēber	**numerus**	**spectō**
dūcō	**ostendō**	**tōtus**

51. Form Review

Irregular adjectives (**380**). **Hic** and **ille** (**387**). **Possum** (**398**). **Ferō** (**399**).

52. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **alius mēnsis, hic annus, tōta cīvitās, illud templum, nūllus agricola, hoc animal.**

(*b*) Give a synopsis of **possum** in the third singular indicative active; **ferō** in the third plural indicative passive; **referō** in the first singular indicative active.

(*c*) Conjugate **cōnferō** in the present and future indicative passive.

53. Syntax for Special Review

Ablative of respect (specification) (**448**).

54. Written Exercises

1. Roman holidays were strange in nature and many in number. 2. At these times the business of the entire people was laid aside. 3. Some hastened to the Forum; others proceeded to the temples. 4. The former looked-at the decorated buildings; the latter worshipped the gods. 5. Can you remember the names of two Roman holidays? Were all sacred in nature?

55. Word Study: Suffixes

Review the suffixes **-tās** (*-ty*), **-or** (*-or*), and **-iō** (*-ion*) (**497**).

Give the English forms of **nōbilitās, gravitās, condiciō, vocātiō.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *utility, facility, paucity, production, retention?*

Give and define in terms of their derivation four English words formed by adding the suffix *-or* to the present base of verbs which you have studied, and four others formed by adding this suffix to the stem of the perfect participle.

Give five English words formed by adding the suffix *-ion* to Latin verbs and five formed by adding the suffix *-ty* to Latin adjectives.

FIG. 14. IN THE ALBAN HILLS

The lake is in the crater of an extinct volcano. The Alban Mount may be seen in the distance through the branches of the tree.

56. A ROMAN FAMILY

IX. Superstitions

Quondam Rūfus, in Forum ad negōtium prōcēdēns, caelum spectāvit avēsque trēs in dextrā parte caelī vīdit.

"Signum est!" dīxit. "Fortūna negōtiō meō amīca erit."

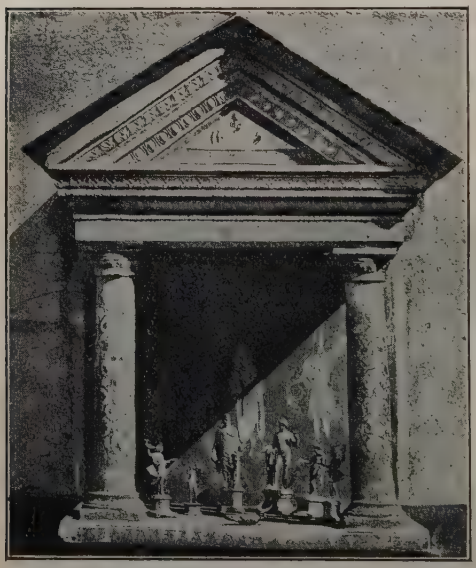


Fig. 15. Deī Familiae
A household shrine with Lares, found at Pompeii.

Ita accidit; itaque Rūfus semper putāvit illās avēs fortūnam bonam eī negōtiō dedisse.

Paene omnēs Rōmānī signa et ōmina semper exspectābant—in caelō, in terrā, in flūminibus. Putābant deōs ipsōs ad hominēs somnō oppressōs saepe accēdere et eōs monēre. Multī Rōmānī in templīs cōnsilium ā deīs petēbant; etiam ibi somnum capiēbant. Eī quī nōn valēbant Aesculāpium hōc modō cōnsulēbant; sed omnēs Apollinem hominibus ūtilissimum deōrum esse ob respōnsa eius putābant. Haec respōnsa plūrima, sed nōn saepe clārissima,[1] per pontificēs eius dabantur.

[1] The responses of the oracles were often so worded that they could be interpreted in two exactly opposite ways.

Rūfus, deōs familiae colēns, eadem verba semper dīcēbat, eadem mūnera sacra eōdem modō semper efficiēbat, familiā cum silentiō spectante. Putābātur, deīs nōn ita vocātīs, familiam gravissimum supplicium datūram esse.

Etiam mortuōs Rōmānī cum cūrā colēbant, quod putābant hōs facillimē et celerrimē ad amīcōs in terrā manentēs venīre posse et eōs terrēre; et mortuōs, sepulchrīs nōn datīs, per omnēs terrās iter dūrum facientēs, multōs annōs in labōre gravī agere cōgī.

Tempore magnī perīculī deī et virī mortuī in viās ipsās vēnisse dictī sunt. Post pugnam Rēgillēnsem[1] Castor Polluxque in Forum vēnisse nūntiābantur. Caesare interfectō, virī mortuī et novissima animālia in viīs vidēbantur — ōmina gravissima, quae mōnstrāvērunt fortūnam inimīcīs Caesaris dūram futūram esse.

Eō tempore fortūnam graviōrem et sacriōrem esse crēdēbant quam nunc. Virī quibus haec diū bona fuerat grātiōrēs deīs erant (ita putābant) quam eī quibus inimīca fuerat. Omnēs mīlitēs fortius et ācrius sub duce quī fortūnae grātus erat pugnābant — et ob eam causam saepius vincēbant.

Rōmānī, mala timentēs, haec faciēbant et putābant; sed nōnne ipsī multa eiusdem generis nunc vidēmus et audīmus?

57. Vocabulary Drill

accēdō	**cōnsilium**	**ipse**
accidō	**cōnsulō**	**moneō**
ācer	**efficiō**	**mūnus**
capiō	**flūmen**	**signum**
celer	**fortis**	**similis**

58. Form Review

Is, īdem, and **ipse** (**387**). Comparison of regular adjectives and adverbs (**381, 383**).

[1] The victory of the Romans at Lake Regillus, 498 B.C.

59. Drill. — I. Decline **id negōtium, eadem pars, homō ipse, īdem annus, ea cūra, tempus ipsum.**

II. Compare (*a*) **gravis, amīcus, dūrus, sacer, grātus, ācer**; (*b*) **celeriter, clārē, graviter, fortiter, facile, ācriter.**

60. Syntax for Special Review

Dative with adjectives (**420**).

61. Written Exercises

1. The Romans thought that Fortune was a goddess friendly to some, unfriendly to others. 2. They were always looking-for signs. Are we ourselves not very like them? 3. They consulted the gods themselves about these signs. 4. When[1] Caesar was killed, very strange omens of the same kind were seen by the frightened people. 5. Soldiers fought more bravely under a leader to whom fortune seemed to be most friendly.

Fig. 16. Roman Merchants

62. Word Study: Prefixes

Review the prefixes **inter-, ob-, ante-, trāns-** (**496**).

Define according to the prefix: **intercipiō, occurrō, oppugnō, antecēdō, trānscrībō, trādūcō**; *intercede, interscholastic, opposition, antedate, transportation, transformer.*

Select the proper form of **ob-**: *-casion, -fer, -ject, -lige.*

[1] Use ablative absolute.

63. A ROMAN FAMILY

X. A Public Spectacle

Ex extrēmīs viīs, ē Forō, dē summō monte Aventīnō et dē Caeliō, ex omnibus partibus Rōmae hominēs ad lūdōs gladiātōriōs[1] prōcēdēbant. Proximō diē Augustus maxima mūnera gladiātōria datūrus erat; nunc gladiātōribus cēna lībera in lūdīs dabātur, et multī Rōmānī, ad hōs properantēs, gladiātōrēs spectātūrī erant. Pūblius et Fūriānus magnō studiō per viās properāvērunt. Gladiātōribus prīmīs spectātīs, Pūblius dīxit, "Haec mūnera meliōra quam omnia alia erunt; hī sunt optimī gladiātōrēs quōs vīdī."

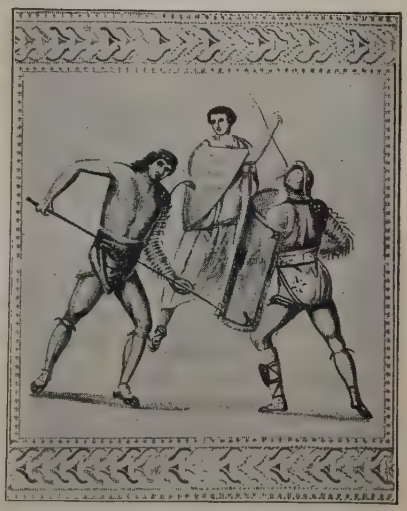


Fig. 17. A Gladiatorial Contest

Nunc diēs mūnerum aderat. Amphitheātrum Statilī hominibus complētum est. In īnferiōre parte Pūblius cum Fūriānō sedēbat. Vir Pūbliō proximus dīxit Augustum duo mīlia gladiātōrum ad haec mūnera parāvisse. Pūblius, Spartacum memoriā tenēns, spērāvit nūllum perīculum Rōmae futūrum esse; sed Augustus ipse aderat, et Pūblius scīvit illīus potestātem maximam esse.

In arēnam prōcēdēbant plūrimī gladiātōrēs, armīs variīs īnsignēs. Firmō pede inter clāmōrēs spectantium ad Augustum accessērunt et eī salūtem dīxērunt.

---

[1] *training schools* for gladiators.

"Vidēsne illōs decem quī arma eiusdem generis gerunt?" rogāvit Fūriānus.

"Videō. Putō eōs esse captīvōs, ex ulteriōre Galliā missōs. Ācrēs videntur, sed nōnne putās illōs septem Aethiopēs melius pugnātūrōs esse? Sed quis est ille? Veturiumne, cīvem Rōmānum, in arēnā videō?"

"Ipse est. Pessimus ille homō damnātus est, quod patrem et amīcum interfēcit."

Prīmum octō paria servōrum eiusdem gentis, Hispānae, prōcessērunt; sed minus ācriter pugnāvērunt quam populus exspectābat, et brevī tempore ex arēnā discessērunt. Posteā decem Thrācēs cum decem Britannīs melius pugnāvērunt. Ūnus ē Britannīs, quī optimē pugnābat, spectantibus grātus erat. Hic, ā Thrāce superātus, nōn interfectus est et clāmōribus populī līberātus est. Tum hominēs cum animālibus, animālia cum animālibus pugnāvērunt. Tandem Veturiō sōlō adductō, leō ācer in arēnam missus est. Leō ā Veturiō vulnerātus est, sed brevī tempore hunc interfēcit.

Mūnera huius modī nunc crūdēlissima videntur; sed auctōritātem Augustī plūrimum cōnfirmāvērunt, quod populō Rōmānō maximē grāta erant.

64. Vocabulary Drill

addūcō	**genus**	**proximus**
arma	**mōns**	**spērō**
captīvus	**nūllus**	**studium**
cīvis	**pār**	**summus**
extrēmus	**perīculum**	**ulterior**

65. Form Review

Comparison of irregular adjectives and adverbs (**381–383**). Numerals (**384**).

66. Drill. — I. Compare (*a*) **magnus, multus, bonus, parvus, malus, brevis, grātus, ācer;** (*b*) **bene, magis, male, multum, minus, breviter, grātē, ācriter.**

II. Review the declension of **hic (387), ille (387), is (387), īdem (387), quī (388), quis (389), ipse (387), alius (380).**

III. Give in Latin the numbers from *1-10; 1000 men; 2000 animals.*

67. Syntax for Special Review

Uses of the ablative given in the preceding lessons.

68. Written Exercises

1. In the gladiatorial schools were very many men sent from the farthest parts of Gaul and Britain. 2. To these shows many thousands of the best citizens hurried with the greatest eagerness. 3. Many prisoners and slaves were wounded or killed in the arena (while) Romans looked-on. 4. In those times condemned (men) very often fought with the gladiators and were killed by them. 5. Do you not think that these same shows were very cruel?

69. Word Study: Spelling

The spelling of English words is often simplified by reference to the Latin words from which they come.

The Latin double consonant is usually preserved in English, except at the end of a word: *expelled,* but *expel* (from **pellō**). Give five additional examples.

As assimilation of prefixes often causes a doubling of consonants, it is often possible to obtain help in spelling by analyzing the word. Compare *de-ference* and *dif-ference, ac-com-modate* and *re-com-mend.* Give five additional examples.

Fig. 18. The Temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill as It Was

PART II

70. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

I. The Farewell Dinner

Quondam domus nōbilis familiae Rōmānae, Caeciliae, maximē turbābātur. Pūblius, fīlius P. Caecilī Rūfī, et Fūriānus, fīlius adoptātus M. Caecilī, frātris Rūfī, diū in animō habuerant ad Graeciam nāvigāre, et clārōs philosophōs Graecōs audīre; et nunc proximum diem exituī cōnstituerant. Nōna hōra fuit — hōra cēnae. Cēna in ātriō Rūfī, nōn in trīclīniō,[1] parāta erat, quod adfutūrī erant paucī. In ātrium, in quō mulierēs exspectābant, ē balneīs vēnērunt virī.

"Cēna pōnātur!" clāmāvit Rūfus.

Virīs accumbentibus[2] et mulieribus sedentibus, soleae sunt dēpositae, et ā servīs mēnsa in ātrium portāta est. Mēnsā positā, aqua et mappae[3] sunt omnibus datae.

Prīma pars cēnae, prōmulsis,[4] in ātrium allāta est — ōva et lactūca;[5] tum mulsum.[6] Aquā et mappīs iterum datīs, cēna ipsa allāta est. Cibus bonus erat, nostrō similis. Per cēnam multa dicta sunt dē Graeciā et Graecīs.

Magnum erat studium Pūblī et Fūriānī, quod in Graeciam prōcessūrī erant. Sed Rūfus verba gravia Mārcō dīxit: "In terram novam prōcēdunt. Cōnfīdāmus eōs vītam dignam āctūrōs esse." "Semper memoriā teneant sē Rōmānōs esse," respondit Mārcus. "Semper piī maneant — tum vītam dignam agent."

"Servus Graecus audiātur!" clāmāvit Pūblius.

"Et Graecum carmen canat!" dīxit Fūriānus.

---

[1] *dining room.*

[2] The men reclined on couches, resting on their left elbows.

[3] *napkins.* [4] *first course.* [5] *eggs and lettuce.* [6] *honey-wine.*

FIG. 19. A LOAF OF BREAD
Found at Pompeii. Note the baker's stamp.

Postquam servus carmen cecinit, Rūfus dīxit: "Nunc linguīs faveāmus,[1] et deōs colāmus."

Ubi Larēs in mēnsā positī sunt, Rūfus cibum et vīnum ad eōs posuit. Omnibus stantibus, silentium factum est. Tum, Laribus magnā cūrā remōtīs, secunda mēnsa[2] in ātrium portāta est — dulcia et frūctūs. Cēnā perfectā "ab ōvō ūsque ad māla,"[3] Rūfus dīxit, "Servus Gallus veniat." Ille, mēnsā pedibus retentā, in manibus, tum in capite stetit, et multa alia grāta fēcit.

Sed nunc erat tempus discēdere. Servī iussī sunt soleās parāre, et omnēs discessērunt.

71. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Ubi erat cēna? 2. Quī nōn accumbēbant? 3. Quae erat ultima pars cēnae? 4. Quis Graecum carmen cecinit? 5. Quis in capite stetit?

FIG. 20. AN OLIVE PRESS

[1] Lit., "let us favor with our tongues," *i.e.* by refraining from evil words; hence, *let us keep silent.*

[2] As the dessert was brought in on a separate table, **secunda mēnsa** came to mean *dessert.*

[3] A proverbial expression which came to mean *from beginning to end* (*cf.* "from A to Z"), from the Roman practice of beginning a dinner with *eggs* and ending with *apples* or other fruits.

FIG. 21. ROMAN SHOES

Found at Saalburg, Germany, at the site of a Roman fort. Note how modern some of them look.

72. Vocabulary Drill

afferō	domus	manus
cōnfīdō	faveō	nōnus
cōnstituō	frūctus	perficiō
dignus		pius

73. Forms

(All references are to sections in the Appendix.)

Fourth declension (**374**). Present tense subjunctive, active and passive, of the second, third, and fourth conjugations (**392–395**).

74. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **exitus ipse, hic frūctus, illa manus.**

(*b*) Conjugate in the present subjunctive, active and passive: **teneō, dēpōnō, perficiō, audiō.**

75. Syntax

Volitive subjunctive in main clauses (**465**).

76. Written Exercises

1. Let us hear about the departure of Publius and Furianus. 2. A great dinner was prepared, during which many (things) were spoken about Greece. 3. When the dinner was finished, Publius's father said, "Let my boy always remember that Romans are brave." 4. "Let him live a worthy life in Greece." 5. "Let him remain dutiful and remember home and the gods."

77. Word Study: Vowel Changes

When a Latin word is compounded with a prefix, short **a** or short **e** in the root usually becomes short **i** before a single consonant except **r**; a short **a** usually becomes short **e** before two consonants. These changes are carried over into English.

From **capiō**: Latin **in-cipiō, in-ceptus**; English *incipient, inception.*

From **faciō**: Latin **ef-ficiō, ef-fectus**; English *efficient, effective.*

From **teneō**: Latin **con-tineō**; English *continent.*

Give additional compounds and derivatives of the above words and of **agō, habeō, damnō, statuō,** and **cadō.**

In compounds **ae** is usually changed to long **ī** and **au** to long **ū.**

From **caedō**: Latin **in-cīdō**; English *incision.*

From **aequus**: Latin **in-īquus**; English *iniquity.*

From **claudō**: Latin **ex-clūdō**; English *exclusive.*

78. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

II. The Journey to Brundisium

Nunc diēs aderat. Impedīmentīs et servīs parātīs, familia tōta cum Pūbliō Fūriānōque ex urbe ad portam Capēnam pedibus prōcessit, quod nūllae raedae in urbe erant. Ibi in raedam, quattuor equīs trāctam, ascendērunt Pūblius, Fūriānus, servī, mātre et sorōribus flentibus et omnibus "Valēte!"[1] clāmantibus. Portā relictā, in Appiā Viā prōcessērunt, quae iam ad flūmen parvum Almōnem dēscendēbat. Tum via plāna multa mīlia passuum per agrōs tetendit. Pūblius et Fūriānus cōnstitērunt ut sepulchrum clārae suae cognātae, Caeciliae Metellae, vidērent. Multa alia sepulchra vīdērunt, inter quae īnsigne erat id Messālae Corvīnī.

Prīmīs hōrīs saepe cōnsistēbant ut īnsignia loca vidērent. Vīdērunt Campum Sacrum Horātiōrum, ubi Horātiī cum Cūriātiīs temporibus antīquīs pugnāverant. Vīdērunt Pomptīnās palūdēs, trāns quās nāvigiō parvō trānsportātī sunt. Posteā celerius prōcessērunt, cōnsistentēs ut noctem in vīllā hospitis Rūfī agerent, aut ut equī integrī peterentur. Quīntō diē in forum Capuae, ultimae urbis Appiae Viae, pervēnērunt, sextō diē Capuam relīquērunt.

Iter nunc per montēs et silvās faciēbant, et via mala erat. Pūblius Fūriānō dīxit, "Raedae adhaereāmus, nē ēiciāmur." In hīs regiōnibus nūllī hospitēs Rūfī habitāvērunt; itaque in caupōnam,[2] appellātam "Ad[3] Elephantum," accēdere coāctī sunt, ut noctem ūnam agerent. Sed caupōna sordida erat, neque dormīre facile erat. Proximō diē hominēs armātōs in viā vīdērunt; sed servī arma cēpērunt, et hominēs fūgērunt. Paulō post, maxima tempestās commōta est, et ad vīllam dēsertam properāvērunt nē tempestāte opprimerentur. Tandem, quārtō decimō diē, ad portās Brundisī pervēnērunt.

---

[1] *Farewell!* [2] *inn.* [3] *at (the sign of).*

In hōc locō raedam relīquērunt nāvemque petīvērunt, nē 30
morā impedīrentur et ut quam mātūrissimē ad Graeciam
veherentur. Sed gubernātor dīxit, "Magna nunc tempestās
in marī est. In hōc locō maneāmus, nē perīculum suscipiā-
mus." Itaque, litterīs ad familiam missīs, Pūblius et Fūri-
ānus apud[1] hospitem manēbant. 35

FIG. 22. APPIA VIA

In many places the irregularly shaped stones with which the road was surfaced are still in place. The Romans placed their tombs along the roadsides so that they might be seen by as large a number of persons as possible. The above picture shows a number of tombs.

79. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Ubi erat sepulchrum Caeciliae Metellae? 2. Quot noctēs in caupōnīs Pūblius Fūriānusque agēbant? 3. Quot diēs in itinere erant?

[1] *at* (*the house of*).

80. Vocabulary Drill

ascendō	**ēiciō**	**quārtus**
decimus	**gubernātor**	**quīntus**
dēserō	**mātūrus**	**tempestās**
dormiō		**vehō**

81. Forms

Ordinal numerals (**384**). Imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the second, third, and fourth conjugations (**392–395**).

82. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate in the present and imperfect subjunctive active: **prōcēdō, fugiō, maneō, dormiō.**

(*b*) Conjugate in the present and imperfect subjunctive passive: **videō, opprimō, ēiciō, impediō.**

83. Syntax

Tense sequence (harmony) (**460**). Purpose clauses with **ut** and **nē** (**466**).

84. Written Exercises

1. "Good-by!" cried his mother and sisters, and Publius hastened toward Brundisium in order to sail for Greece. 2. They often stopped to see famous places near the road. 3. Then they hurried-on to spend the night in the villa of a guest-friend. 4. The slaves sought fresh horses in order that they might not be hindered by the bad roads. 5. Finally they arrived at the gates of Brundisium and hastened to the ship in order not to spend another night in Italy.

85. Word Study: Suffixes

The following suffixes have no sharply defined meanings but it is useful to recognize them: **-ium** (English *-e* or *-y*), **-tium** (English *-ce*), **-men** (English *-men*, *-min*, *-me*), **-tūs** (English *-tue*).

Give the English form of **studium, officium, artificium, silentium, spatium, volūmen, crīmen, virtūs.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *sacrifice, commerce, remedy, prodigy, culmin(ate), lumin(ous), specimen, crimin(al)?*

Fig. 23. Sepulchrum Caeciliae Metellae in Appiā Viā

86. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

III. A Letter from Athens

Pūblius patrī et mātrī et sorōribus suīs s. p. d.[1] Sī valētis, bene est; valeō. Nunc (quidem) valeō; sed nōn semper valuī! — Brundisiō relictō, postquam nāvis parva in mare lātum prōcessit, tanta tempestās commōta est ut putārem undās altās nāvem frāctūrās esse. Fūriānus autem dīxit, "Nautae ita perītī sunt ut nāvem facile servent. In īnferiōrem partem properēmus ut ibi somnum capiāmus et clārum caelum spērēmus."

Dēscendimus. Nāvis ita volvēbātur ut mors ab omnibus spērārētur; sed post diem longum et noctem longiōrem ad urbem Graecam Dyrrachium pervēnimus. Viīs tam malīs iter per Graeciam fēcimus ut paene cōnficerēmur. Per oppida dēserta, per agrōs nōn cultōs, per urbēs bellīs cīvīlibus oppressās, prōcessimus. Tandem ad clāram urbem Athēnās pervēnimus, quae urbs ita pulchra est ut omnia dē eā scrīpta nōn satis dīcant. Agora, quae est forum Athēnārum, et Acropolis, Capitōliō Rōmānō similis — hae sōlae, aedificiīs statuīsque adōrnātae, ita ēgregiae sunt ut numquam satis laudentur. Sed in proximīs litterīs plūs dē urbe scrībam. Nunc dē studiīs audīre cupitis.

Ubi ad portam Athēnārum accessimus,[2] vīdimus multōs vestem scholasticam gerentēs et tantīs clāmōribus vocantēs ut cōnsisterēmus et cum silentiō eōs spectārēmus. "Nōnne petitis scholam Agēnoris?" "Nōnne petitis scholam Chlorī?" et alia clāmābant. "Ad scholam Enchōriōnis rhētoris prōcēdimus," dīximus. Statim ab aliīs relictī sumus, ab aliīs

---

[1] **salūtem plūrimam dīcit,** *sends heartiest greetings.* These words were regularly abbreviated.

[2] The following description of student life in Athens is based on that given by Libanius in the fourth century, A.D. But it is not improbable that it is substantially correct for the age of Augustus.

Fig. 24. The Acropolis at Athens as It Is

prehēnsī. In aedificium parvum ductī sumus, et iānua clausa est. Tam diū ibi mānsimus ut putārēmus illōs numquam reversūrōs esse. Tandem līberātī sumus nē perterrērēmur et ab illīs rīdentibus ad cēnam ductī sumus, post quam omnibus modīs lūdificātī sumus. Tum ad balnea ductī vestem scholasticam accēpimus. Posterō diē ad numerum scholasticōrum Enchōriōnis, quī grātus vidētur, ascrīptī sumus. Crās studia incipiēmus. Cum Graecā familiā ad Agoram habitāmus.

Vidētis omnia bona esse. Saepe scrībēmus et saepe litterās exspectābimus. Valēte.

87. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Cūr Pūblius nōn semper valuit? 2. Quid est Agora? 3. Quid ad portam Athēnārum Pūblius vīdit? 4. Ubi habitāvit Pūblius?

88. Vocabulary Drill

frangō	**perterreō**	**satis**
ita	**postquam**	**tantus**
līberō	**prehendō**	**tempestās**
mors		**volvō**

89. Forms

Present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the first conjugation (**391**).

90. Drill. — Conjugate the following in the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive: **servō, adōrnō, laudō, vocō, habitō, perterreō, dīcō, cōnficiō, relinquō, commoveō.**

91. Syntax

Result clauses with **ut** and **ut nōn** (**472**).

92. Written Exercises

1. The storm on the sea was so great that all were frightened. 2. The waves were so high that the ship did not easily proceed. 3. We hastened below in order not to see the storm. 4. Finally we arrived at Greece and, leaving the ship behind, we hurried toward the city (of) Athens. 5. This famous city is so adorned with beautiful buildings that it is praised by all.

93. Word Study: Spelling

Reference to the Latin will often clear up difficulties of English spelling due to silent or weakly sounded letters or to other causes. Give the Latin originals of the following words: *laboratory, repetition, separate, desperation, comparative, debt, reign, assign, doubt, receipt, consensus, deficit, ascension, conscience.*

Derivatives of compounds of **capiō** have *ei: receive, deceive, conceive, perceive.*

FIG. 25. A TEMPLE IN ATHENS

Often called the Theseum, or temple of Theseus. This is the best preserved temple in this ancient city.

94. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

IV. A Gossipy Letter from Rome

M. Caecilius Fūriānō suō. Rogāvistī, "Quid agit rēs pūblica?" Cōnsulēs proximī annī creātī sunt — Lepidus et Taurus. Ille Augustō cārus est. Maiōrēs[1] eius erant Sulla et Pompeius, Caesaris inimīcus, sed Augustus tam bonus est ut memoriam rērum eius modī dēpōnere possit.

Hic nūntius multō gravior erit: A. Corellius, tribūnus, iam[2] decem diēs mortuus est. (Omnēs amīcī eius spem habuerant eum paucīs diēbus diūtius vīctūrum[3] esse,) ut frātrem, ex Galliā properantem, vidēre posset; sed hoc nōn permissum est. Fūnus īnsigne erat — ōrātiō ante domum (habita,) pompa longa, cornicinēs,[4] plūrimae imāginēs,[5] rogus multōs pedēs altus (sed turba tanta erat ut difficile esset rogum vidēre), sepulchrum ēgregium.

Ovidius poēta, ex urbe ad oppidum barbarum expulsus, iam[2] paene duōs annōs litterās supplicēs ad Augustum scrībit, sed ille nōn commovētur. Augustī autem silentium tantum (est ut nēmō causam poenae Ovidī cognōscere possit. Ovidius librum novum ēdidit, quī "Ībis" appellātur. Librum emam et mittam ut legere possīs.

(Nōvistīne Bilbiōnem,) quī tantam pecūniam habet ut domus ūna eam capere nōn possit — illum quī aedificia incēnsa celeriter emit, tum, igne operā servōrum exercitōrum exstīnctō, reficit? Agrum magnum ēmit. Multōs diēs iam[2] cupiō agrum parvum emere, ut agricola in ōtiō sim. Pulchrum

---

[1] *ancestors.*

[2] The present tense is used with **iam** where the English idiom calls for the present perfect: *has now been dead.*

[3] From **vīvō.**

[4] *hornblowers, i.e.* a band.

[5] *wax masks* of ancestors who had held high public office. These were kept in a special room in the house and served as a portrait gallery. At funerals they were put on by hired men, so that it seemed as if all of a man's great ancestors were at his funeral.

agrum in Sabīnīs, quod nōn multīs mīlibus passuum ab eō Horātī poētae abest, invēnī. Quid dē hōc putās?

Fig. 26. Thermae
Remains of the immense Baths of Caracalla, Rome. (From "The Eternal City.")

Duōs servōs ēmī, ut vigiliae essent et auxilium vigiliīs nostrīs dare possent. Faciēs pulcherrimae erant, sed ipsī stupidissimī erant! Tum Rūfus eōs ā mē ēmit ut coquī[1] essent et auxilium coquō suō dare possent. Omnēs rīdēmus!

Diēs omnēs paene similēs sunt. Surgō; clientibus audītīs, in Forum prōcēdō, ut aut iūdicia audīre possim aut senātuī adsim; prandium[2] capiō; dormiō; exerceor[3]; in Thermās[4] Agrippae prōcēdō, et ibi amīcōs videō. Tum est cēna, tum quiēs.

Haec cotīdiē agimus. Quid agit Fūriānus meus?

95. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis Augustō cārus fuit? 2. Ubi erat frāter Corellī? 3. Ubi erat Ovidius? 4. Quae erat causa poenae Ovidī?

---

[1] *cooks.* [2] *luncheon.* [3] *train myself, exercise.* [4] *baths* (public).

96. Vocabulary Drill

creō	**exstinguō**	**rēs pūblica**
diēs	**faciēs**	**senātus**
ēdō	**incendō**	**spēs**
emō	**quiēs**	**supplex**
exerceō		**surgō**

97. Forms

Fifth declension (**375**). Present system subjunctive of **sum** and **possum** (**397–398**).

98. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **haec rēs pūblica, paucī diēs, spēs parva, faciēs pulchra.**

(*b*) Conjugate **sum** and **possum** in the present and imperfect subjunctive. Review these tenses in the indicative.

99. Syntax

Accusative of extent (**427**). Ablative of measure of difference (**444**).

100. Written Exercises

1. Marcus (in) his letter told Furianus about the things which he was doing. 2. Consuls had been elected a few days before. 3. Ovid had been banished to a town which was many miles away. 4. For many months Bilbio had been setting buildings on fire so that he could buy and repair them. 5. For two years Marcus had desired to buy a small farm so that he might be a farmer.

101. Word Study: Prefixes

For meaning and use of **prae-** (*pre-*), **contrā-** (*contra-, counter-*), **bene-** (*bene-*), **male-** (*male-*), see **496.** Define according to the prefix: *prevent, premonition, predict, preclude, prerequisite, counterirritant, contradict, counter-revolutionary, benefactor, benediction, malefactor, malediction.*

102. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

V. The City of Athens

Paulō post litterās Pūblius ad patrem mātremque mīsit, in quibus multa dē urbe Athēnīs nārrāta sunt.

"Cum ad hanc urbem accessissēmus," scrīpsit, "cupiēbāmus quam prīmum templum Minervae, quod Parthenōn

Fig. 27. Propylaea et Templum Victōriae

The approach to the Acropolis in Athens as it is. The temple of "Wingless Victory" is at the right.

appellātur, vidēre. Est in monte quī Acropolis appellātur, cuius portae, Propylaea appellātae, tam pulchrae sunt ut eō tempore diū eās spectantēs steterīmus et posteā eās saepe spectāverīmus. Ad eās est templum parvum in quō est statua Victōriae sine ālīs facta. Cum dē hāc rogāvissēmus, respōnsum est: 'Victōria ita facta est nē ab urbe discēderet.'

Saepe dictum est Parthenōnem pulcherrimum esse omnium aedificiōrum; cum per Propylaea prōcessissēmus et ad Parthenōnem ipsum vēnissēmus, hoc intellegere poterāmus. In eō est statua Athēnae, altior quam sex virī; hanc Phīdias fēcit. Dea ipsa ex ebore[1] facta est, vestis et arma ex aurō. Ita īnsignis est ut nēmō eam nōn permōtus spectāre possit, nēmō memoriam eius dēpōnere possit. Cum Parthenōnem vīdissēmus, ad aliud templum Athēnae prōcessimus, in

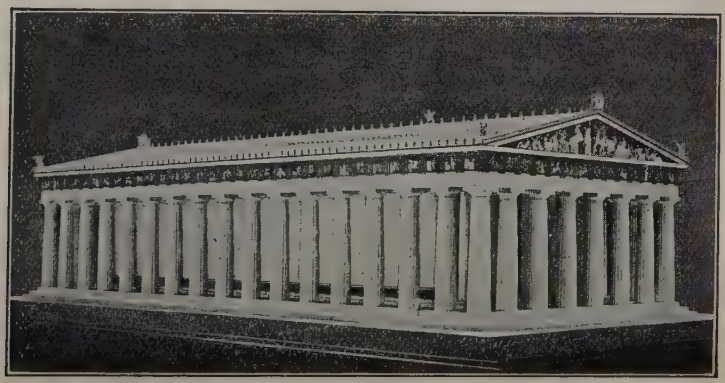


FIG. 28. THE PARTHENON
Picture of a model in the Metropolitan Museum, New York.

porticū cuius sunt statuae virginum. Cum Acropolis relīcta esset et locus comitiōrum, quī Pnyx appellātur, Arēopagusque, locus iūdiciōrum, vīsī essent, in Agoram prōcessimus. Ibi, inter alia, aedificium ā Caesare Augustōque factum vīdimus.

"Cum in urbe multōs diēs fuissēmus, et multa alia clāra loca invenīre potuissēmus, haec optima vīsa sunt: Stadium; Olympiēum, nōn perfectum, maximum tamen templum Graeciae, quod Augustus dīcitur perficere cupere; Acadēmia, quae mīlle passūs ab urbe abest et in quā clārī philosophī docent. Tempus tam breve est ut lūdīs in theātrō habitīs

[1] *ivory.*

nōndum adfuerīmus; theātrum autem vīdimus, et exīstimāmus id pulcherrimum esse.

"Sed urbs tanta est ut nōn omnia loca aedificiaque nōta invēnerīmus. Sed quam prīmum ea petēmus et dē eīs scrībēmus."

Cum litterae lēctae essent, Rūfus multa alia dē Athēnīs tam grāta nārrāvit ut tandem Secunda dīceret, "Ōh! Cūr puer nōn sum! Ad eam urbem pulchram statim prōcēdere cupiō!"

FIG. 29. THE ERECHTHEUM AS IT IS

A temple of Athena on the Acropolis, Athens, showing the Porch of the Maidens, so called because the columns consist of statues of maidens.

103. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quid Pūblius cupiēbat quam prīmum vidēre? 2. Cūr statua Victōriae sine ālīs facta est? 3. Quis statuam Athēnae fēcit? 4. Quae alia loca Pūblius vīdit?

104. Vocabulary Drill

dēpōnō	**īnsignis**	**mīlle**
exīstimō	**intellegō**	**quam prīmum**

105. Forms

Perfect system subjunctive, active and passive, of the four conjugations (**391–395**). Perfect system subjunctive of **sum** and **possum** (**397–398**).

106. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate the following verbs in the perfect and past perfect subjunctive, active and passive: **nārrō, doceō, dīcō, perficiō, inveniō.**

(*b*) Conjugate **sum** and **possum** in the perfect system subjunctive.

107. Syntax

Descriptive **cum** clauses (**475**).

108. Written Exercises

1. When Publius had been in the city a few days, he sent a letter to his father. 2. He told about the many things which he had seen when he was approaching (**ad**) the city. 3. The city was so large that he had not been able to see all the famous places. 4. A little later, when he stood before the Parthenon, he exclaimed, "This is the most beautiful of all temples!" 5. When Secunda had read his letter, she asked many things about Athens.

109. Word Study: Suffixes

For the meaning and use of **-ilis** (*-ile, -il*), **-bilis** (*-ble, -able, -ible*), **-āris** (*-ar*), **-ārius** (*-ary*), see **497.** Give the English forms of **agilis, fertilis, memorābilis, possibilis, volūbilis, particulāris, necessārius.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *facile, docile, delectable, defensible, fragile, noble, popular, primary?* Find five other examples of each of the suffixes *-ble* (*-able, -ible*), *-ar*, and *-ary* in English words derived from Latin words already studied.

110. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

VI. A Wedding

Pūbliō cum Fūriānō in Graeciā studente, rēs grātissima Rōmae[1] agēbātur — nūptiae Caeciliae, sorōris Pūblī, et Cn. Sulpicī Laetī. Paucīs mēnsibus ante Caeciliīs Sulpiciīsque in ātrium Rūfī cum amīcīs ingressīs, T. Sulpicius Mūrēna, pater Laetī, cum fīliō prō Rūfō et Caeciliā cōnstiterat Rūfumque rogāverat: "Spondēsne fīliam tuam fīliō meō uxōrem[2] darī?" Rūfus responderat: "Spondeō." Tum Laetus Caeciliae ānulum, Caecilia Laetō pulchrum servum dederat, et patrēs inter sē dē dōte ēgerant — quantum Rūfus in animō habēret dare, quō modō pecūnia parārī posset. Nunc diēs nūptiārum aderat. Proximā nocte Caecilia mūnera Laribus dederat;[3] nunc, sōle oriente, ōminibus optimīs nūntiātīs, ā mātre ad nūptiās parābātur, et cum eā amīcae loquēbantur. Māter flammeum[4] et deinde corōnam in caput Caeciliae posuit.

"Mīror quid frāter meus agat," dīxit Caecilia, "et quid arbitrātūrus sit, nūntiō dē mē allātō."

Nunc Caecilia, postquam sē nūpsit, cum mātre amīcīsque in ātrium adōrnātum dēscendit, ubi Rūfus et pontifex exspectābant. Cum Laetus et amīcī in ātrium ingressī essent, prōnuba,[5] Sergia, manūs Caeciliae et Laetī iūnxit, et Caecilia dīxit, "Ubi tū Gāius, ego Gāia."[6] Eīs nunc sedentibus, pontifex deōs (maximē Iūnōnem) vocāvit. Tum, "Fēlīciter!" clāmor erat, "Spērō vōbīs omnia bona futūra esse, vītam vestram longam!"

---

[1] *at Rome* (**452**). [2] *(as) wife.*

[3] On the eve of her marriage the Roman girl dedicated her toys and childish garments to the household gods.

[4] *bridal veil* (flame-colored).

[5] The *matron* who attended the bride.

[6] An old formula, equivalent to "Whither thou goest, I will go."

"Nōn iam nostra est," Rūfus Laetō dīxit, "sed tua."

Cēna maxima allāta est, et Rūfus nūntiāvit, "Nōs reficiāmus!"

Vesperī omnēs in viam sē recēpērunt. Ibi, mātre Caeciliam retinente, aliī pompam parāvērunt. Subitō Laetus Caeciliam rapuit, et pompa profecta est, amīcīs canentibus, rīdentibus, "Talassiō!"[1] clāmantibus. Cum ad iānuam Laetī accessissent, Caecilia eam adōrnāvit. Postquam Laetus Caeciliam per iānuam portāvit,[2] Caecilia iterum dīxit, "Ubi tū Gāius, ego Gāia." In ātriō Laetus Caeciliae ignem aquamque dedit.[3] Posterō diē cēna altera data est, ubi Caecilia, mātrōna nova, deīs sacrificāvit. Familia eius nōn iam Caecilia, sed Sulpicia erat.

111. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis erat fīlius Sulpicī Mūrēnae? 2. Ā quō servus datus erat? 3. Quid pontifex fēcit? 4. Quid prōnuba fēcit?

112. Vocabulary Drill

arbitror	iungō	orior
clāmor	loquor	proficīscor
ingredior	mīror	quantus

113. Forms

Personal and reflexive pronouns (**385, 386**). Deponent verbs (**396**).

114. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate the following as *one verb* throughout the four subjunctive tenses, giving the first singular of the first, the second singular of the second, etc.: **mīror, habeō, loquor, dīcō, proficīscor, orior.**

---

[1] An ancient marriage cry, the meaning of which is unknown.

[2] So that she might not stumble on the threshold — an unlucky omen.

[3] Equivalent to turning over the household to her.

(*b*) Give the genitive singular and plural of **ego, tū, suī,** and **is**; next give *in succession* the dative, the accusative, and the ablative, singular and plural, of these pronouns with their meanings.

(*c*) Conjugate reflexively and translate (**ego**) **mē reficiō,** (**tū**) **tē reficis,** etc., in the present and future tenses. Give a synopsis with the reflexive of **sē recipere** in the third plural, indicative and subjunctive.

115. Syntax

Indirect questions (**479**).

116. Written Exercises

1. Caecilia wondered what Publius thought about the wedding. 2. She kept-asking herself where he then was and what he was doing. 3. Her (girl) friends asked her how much dowry (*gen.*) was being given and talked among themselves about the wedding. 4. "We hope that the gods will grant you a long life!" they had cried (upon) entering the atrium. 5. When the procession had started, the friends asked themselves how Laetus and Caecilia would enter.

117. Word Study: Spelling

The base of the Latin present participle (**-ant, -ent, -ient,** according to conjugation) is used as a suffix in English. All English words derived from the first conjugation have *-ant;* all adjectives and most nouns derived from the other conjugations have *-ent;* but some *nouns* derived through the French have *-ant.* Give examples.

The addition of **-ia** to the base of the present participle gives a suffix **-antia, -entia** (*-ance, -ence, -ancy, -ency*). The same rule for spelling holds which was given above. Give examples.

118. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

VII. A Holiday

In scholā Enchōriōnis rhētoris erat magnus numerus hominum. Fēriae erant, et Enchōriō, ut artem suam dēmōnstrāret, ōrātiōnem habēre parābat. Eī[1] quaerentī dē quō ageret,[2] aliquis dīxit, "Dē mīlitibus quī fortiter pugnāvērunt sed victī ad patriam rediērunt; cīvēs cōnstituērunt ut dux eōrum poenam daret; tū, ūnus ē mīlitibus, prō eō ōrā."[3] Enchōriō ōrātiōnem tam ēgregiam habuit ut multī flērent clāmārentque; et quīdam vir exiēns eī magnam pecūniam dedit.

Posteā Pūblius et Fūriānus ē scholā cum duōbus Graecīs exiērunt. Accidit ut per viās gradientēs statuam virī currentis, ā clārō Myrōne factam, vidērent. Itaque cōnstitērunt ut eam spectārent.

"Nōnne Graecī semper virōs currentēs amant?" rogāvit Pūblius.

"Sī quis celerrimē currit," respondit ūnus ē Graecīs, "cārissimus urbis suae est; et sī quis in lūdīs Olympicīs vincit, cārissimus est tōtīus Graeciae. Illī lūdī, quī antīquī et īnsignēs sunt, Iovī in urbe Olympiā hōc ipsō annō habentur et post quattuor annōs iterum habēbuntur. Ad hanc urbem virī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae eunt ut ibi contendant. Virō sē nōn dignē gerentī, virō quī fraudem fēcit, nōn permittitur ut contendat. Victōrēs corōnās, statuās, carmina accipiunt."

"Nōnne audīvī dē quōdam virō quī tempore magnī perīculī longē cucurrit, nūntium portāns?" rogāvit Fūriānus.

"Philippidēs erat," respondit alter ē Graecīs. "Ōlim[4] ducēs Persārum, cum multīs mīlibus mīlitum in Graeciam

---

[1] Dative, depending on **dīxit**.
[2] *he should treat.*
[3] Imperative: *plead.*
[4] 490 B.C.

prōgressī, ad campum quī Marathōn appellātur dēscendērunt. Philippidēs ad urbem Spartānōrum missus est ut auxilium peteret. Haec urbs circiter centum quīnquāgintā mīlia passuum aberat, sed ille secundō diē ad eam pervēnit. Spartānī autem respondērunt fēriās esse et sibi nōn permittī ut ex urbe exīrent. Itaque Athēniēnsēs sōlī, Miltiade duce,

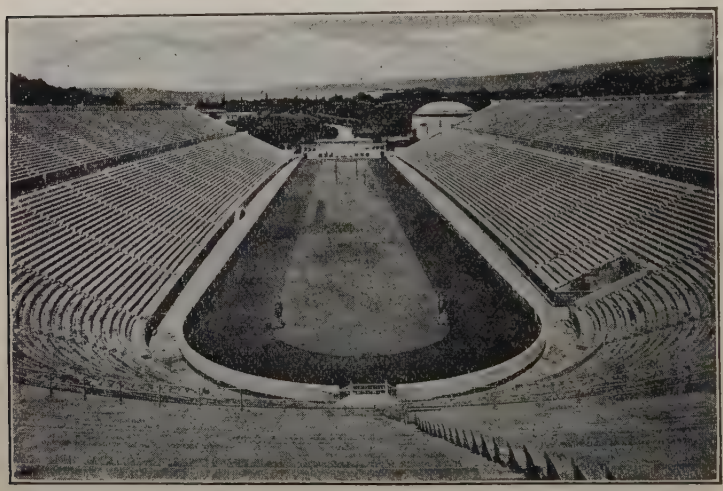


Fig. 30. The Stadium at Athens

The restoration of the ancient structure was completed several years after the first presentation of the modern Olympic games in Athens in 1896. It seats 50,000 people. The Marathon race is now a regular feature of the program of the Olympic games.

Persās dūrōs expulērunt et Graeciam servāvērunt. Post hoc proelium īdem nūntius Philippidēs ad urbem Athēnās celeriter cucurrit sed postquam in urbem pervēnit 'Victōria!' clāmāns mortuus est."

"Graecī fortēs sunt," dīxit Pūblius, amīcīs suīs Graecīs relictīs. "Nōnne mīrāris quō modō accidat ut Rōmānōs nōn vīcerint?"

119. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis prō duce victō ōrāvit? 2. Quid accēpit ille quī in lūdīs Olympicīs vīcit? 3. Quid fēcit Philippidēs?

120. Vocabulary Drill

aliquis	**exeō**	**quaerō**
ars	**gradior**	**quīdam**
dēmōnstrō	**prōgredior**	**redeō**

121. Forms

Indefinite pronouns (**390**). **Duo, trēs,** and **mīlle** (**380**). Conjugation of **eō** (**400**).

122. Drill. — **I.** Decline with meanings **ūnus cīvis, duae ōrātiōnēs, trēs virī, mīlle urbēs, tria mīlia mīlitum.**

II. (*a*) Give a synopsis of **eō** in the indicative and subjunctive active, third singular. (*b*) Conjugate **exeō** in the present and future indicative with meanings. (*c*) Conjugate **redeō** in the imperfect and past perfect indicative and subjunctive without meanings.

123. Syntax

Substantive clauses (**469, 473**).

124. Written Exercises

1. The Greeks had determined that the defeated general should pay the penalty. 2. Some one asked Enchorio[1] not to deliver a speech in behalf of this man. 3. By his speech he caused some[1] to go out weeping. 4. If anyone had not conducted himself properly, it was not permitted him to contest in the Olympic games. 5. It happened that a certain Philippides ran many miles (in) returning to the city.

[1] Make subject of the verb in the substantive clause.

125. Word Study: Suffixes

For the meaning and use of **-ānus** (*-an, -ane, -ain*), **-ālis** (*-al*), **-icus** (*-ic*), **-īvus** (*-ive*), **-ōsus** (*-ous, -ose*), see **497.** Give the English forms of **hūmānus, urbānus, mortālis, cīvicus, āctīvus, cūriōsus, bellicōsus.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *meridian, certain, liberal, classic, passive, morose?* Give three other examples of each of the above suffixes in English words.

FIG. 31. A TEMPLE ON THE PALATINE HILL, ROME

This restoration of the temple of Cybele shows, like so many other Roman buildings, the influence of Greek architecture; *cf.* with Figs. 25, 28, 41. The Greek influence on Rome was felt in many other ways. The Romans realized that, while they had conquered the Greeks by force of arms, the Greeks had conquered them by the arts of peace.

126. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

VIII. National Heroes

Dē virīs clārīs Pūblius et Fūriānus saepe cum amīcīs duōbus Graecīs loquēbantur. Pūbliō maximē grātum erat dē Graecō Dēmosthene audīre — quī puer vōcem pessimam habuerat, sed quī eam exercuerat loquendō ad mare, clāmandō dum currit,[1] dīcendō dum aliquid in ōre habet;[1] et quī tandem prīmum locum inter omnēs ōrātōrēs attigerat. "Ille sōlus melior quam Cicerō erat et etiam Rōmānīs laudandus est," dīcēbat Pūblius.

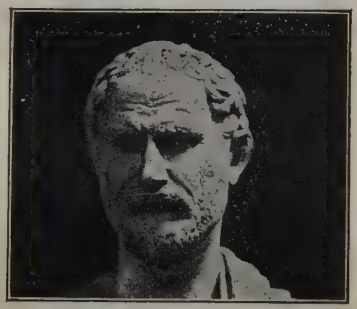


Fig. 32. Demosthenes

Fūriānus saepe dē rēbus mīlitāribus loquēbātur factaque Caesaris, Scīpiōnis, Pompeī, Marī nārrābat. "Et inter hōs īnsignēs omnibus pōnendus et in honōre habendus est Decius Mūs," dīcēbat. "Certior factus in somnō ante proelium deōs sacrificium ā Rōmānīs exigere, sē deīs vōvit, tum in mediōs hostēs sē iēcit ad exercitum Rōmānum servandum. Hōc factō, Rōmānī vīcērunt."

"Mihi grātissimus imperātōrum Graecōrum," dīcēbat ūnus ē Graecīs, "est Themistoclēs. Imperātor factus tempore maximī perīculī, auctōritātem Athēnārum nāvibus summam fēcit, Athēnās optimē mūnīvit, Persās tandem ē Graeciā expulit."

"Multī Rōmānī Graecīs similēs sunt," quōdam diē dīxit Pūblius. "Vergilius, clārissimus poēta Rōmānus, quī carmen dē Trōiānīs et dē Rōmā cōnstituendā scrīpsit, similis Homērō est, quī dē bellō Trōiānō scrīpsit. Numa autem quī tempori-

[1] In English the past tense is used.

bus antīquīs lēgēs quās ā deīs accēperat Rōmānīs dedit, similis Solōnī est, quī lēgēs fēcit ad Athēnās turbātās reficiendās."

"Sed quī Rōmānus philosophīs Graecīs pār est?" rogāvit alter ē Graecīs. "Cicerō, Lucrētius, quī dē atomīs et dē orīgine hominum rērumque scrīpsit, aliī philosophī Rōmānī — hī ad Graeciam audiendī et discendī causā vēnērunt. Quis

FIG. 33. THEMISTOCLES

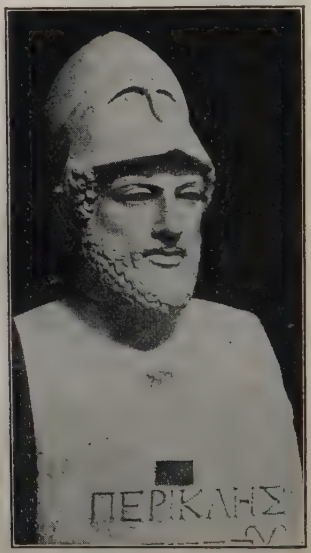


FIG. 34. PERICLES

Sōcratem memoriā nōn tenet, quī puerōs interrogandō docēbat et eōs ad bene vīvendum īnstruēbat; quī malī[1] expellendī et bonī[1] mōnstrandī grātiā semper labōrābat; quī ob sententiās suās interfectus est?"

"Quī Graecus Augustō nostrō pār est?" respondit Fūriānus. "Periclēs quidem īnsignis erat — Athēnās adōrnāvit, auctōritātem urbis auxit, pāce regēbat. Augustus autem

[1] Neuter noun forms: *evil, good.*

nōn sōlum Rōmam adōrnāvit auxitque — urbem quam ex latere[1] factam accēpit nunc marmoream relinquit — sed nunc omnēs terrās pāce, sapientiā, iūstitiā regit."

Et duo Graecī fassī sunt illum īnsignem esse.

127. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quid fēcit Decius Mūs? 2. Cūr hoc fēcit? 3. Quī Rōmānus similis Solōnī fuit? 4. Quī Graecus similis Vergiliō fuit?

128. Vocabulary Drill

attingō	discō	fateor
autem	exercitus	īnstruō
cōnstituō	exigō	voveō

Fig. 35. The Forum and the Capitoline Hill as They Were

129. Forms

Future passive participle and gerund (**391–396**).

130. Drill. — (*a*) Give the future passive participle of **clāmō, habeō, dīcō,** and **audiō.**

(*b*) Give a synopsis with translation of **mihi laudandus est** in the indicative.

[1] From **later,** *brick.*

131. Syntax

Uses of the future passive participle (**490**). Uses of the gerund (**491**). Dative of agent (**425**).

SUMMARY

I. The gerund and the future passive participle are alike in the following:

(*a*) Both are derived from the present stem of verbs: {**amā-** / **amā-**}

(*b*) Both add **-nd-** to the present stem: {**ama + nd** / **ama + nd**}

(*c*) Both belong to the second declension: {**ama + nd + ī** (*gen.*) / **ama + nd + us, -a, -um**}

II. They differ in the following:

The gerund	The future passive participle
(*a*) is a *verbal noun*	(*a*) is a *verbal adjective*
(*b*) has four endings (**-ī, -ō, -um, -ō**)	(*b*) has thirty forms (**-us, -a, -um**, etc.)
(*c*) is always *active* (translate "-ing")	(*c*) is always *passive* (translate "to be," "must be")
(*d*) never agrees with anything	(*d*) always agrees with a noun or pronoun

132. Written Exercises

1. We all ought to be informed about famous Greeks and Romans. 2. Demosthenes, for the sake of training his voice, used-to-shout near the sea. 3. Decius Mus, in order to save the Romans, flung himself into the midst of the enemy. 4. Virgil's poem about the Trojan War and the founding of Rome ought to be read by all boys and girls. 5. Augustus always labored to increase the Roman authority by ruling justly.

133. Word Study: Abbreviations

Find the Latin words for which the following abbreviations stand and their meanings: **etc., et al., s.v., ult., prox., e.g., A.B., A.M., S.B., LL.D.**

134. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

IX. A Visit to the Academy

Saepe Pūbliō et Fūriānō grātum erat per urbem Athēnās ambulāre et virōs maximae auctōritātis causās ōrantēs audīre. Saepe autem grātius erat urbem relinquere sēque ad locum pulchrum et tranquillum, Acadēmiam, recipere.

Quōdam diē eō tardē prōcēdēbant, librōs carminum ferentēs.

"Quot Rōmānī per hanc ipsam viam ambulāvērunt! — Rōmānī quī posteā clārissimī factī sunt," dīxit Pūblius. "Etiam nōs contendāmus ut clārī fiāmus — tū ut dux īnsignis fiās, ego ōrātor!"

Nunc inter arborēs Acadēmiae stābant. Hae erant novae sed iam altae. Nam Sulla, bellum in Graeciā gerēns, antīquās illās arborēs excīderat ut ē māteriā īnstrūmenta bellī fierent.

"Quā magnitūdine arborēs fīunt!" dīxit Pūblius. "Audīvī quōsdam Athēniēnsēs dīcere hās paucīs annīs tam altās quam illās antīquās futūrās esse. Sulla, quī illās excīdit, vir magnae virtūtis īnsignisque audāciae erat, sed rēs pulchrās nōn amābat. Statuās quidem ē Graeciā tulit; hoc autem fēcit ut magnam praedam in urbem Rōmam referret."

Nunc sub arbore altā librōs quōs sēcum tulerant ēvolvunt diūque legunt. Tum Fūriānus dīxit, "Hīc mihi grātissimum est carmina Horātī legere, quod hīc Horātius ipse carmina legēbat et scrībēbat. Horātius, quī vir corpore parvō et rotundō erat, bellō erat inimīcus — Sullae dissimillimus. Nūntiō bellī allātō, nōn turbābātur. Brūtus[1] sōlus potuit eum permovēre (saepe mīror quō modō) ut tribūnus mīlitāris fieret. Brūtō et Cassiō ad urbem Philippōs victīs, Horātius

[1] Brutus, together with Cassius and others, had slain Caesar and fled from Rome, pursued by Antony, Caesar's friend, and Octavian, Caesar's nephew, later called Augustus.

scūtum relīquit (memoriāne tenēs?) fūgitque. Posteā ab Augustō, contrā quem sub Brūtō arma tulerat, amīcus dēlēctus est, et nōtissimus poēta Rōmae factus est."

FIG. 36. CARNEADES

"Hīc saepe dē philosophīs admoneor," dīxit Pūblius. "Est Platō, quī prīmus hīc docuit; Aristotelēs, quī rēgem Alexandrum īnstrūxit; Carneadēs, quī nunc prō iūstitiā, nunc contrā eandem, verba īnsignia facere potuit."

Subitō accessērunt duo Graecī. Ab hīs certiōrēs factī rhētorem clārum ōrātiōnem in Agorā habitūrum esse et tempus adesse, Pūblius et Fūriānus librōs celeriter volvērunt et ex Acadēmiā discessērunt.

135. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quid Sulla in Acadēmiā fēcit? 2. Quō modō erat Horātius Sullae dissimilis? 3. Contrā quem Horātius pugnāverat?

136. Vocabulary Drill

admoneō	**fīō**	**recipiō**
contrā	**magnitūdō**	**turbō**
dēligō	**ōrō**	**virtūs**

137. Forms

Conjugation of **fīō** (**402**). Subjunctive of **ferō** (**399**).

138. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate **fīō** in the present system, indicative and subjunctive.

(*b*) Give a synopsis of **ferō** in the indicative and subjunctive, third plural. Form the future passive participle and the gerund of **referō** and decline in the singular.

139. Syntax

Predicate nouns and adjectives (**412**). Genitive and ablative of description (**414, 445**).

140. Written Exercises

1. "Let us strive to become men of the greatest influence," said Publius to Furianus. 2. "Leaving the city behind, let us retire to the Academy, carrying our books with us." 3. "Under the tall trees we shall read and tell about Romans who became famous." 4. Horace, who had borne arms against Augustus, became a noted poet. 5. Sulla, a man of the greatest courage who had come to Greece for the sake of waging war, carried back to the city (of) Rome many beautiful things.

141. Word Study: Prefixes

For the meaning and use of **circum-** (*circum-*) and **super-** (*super-, sur-*), see **496.** Define according to the prefix: *circumscribe, circumference, circuit, supervise, surface, surplus, survive, superfluous, supergovernment.*

Prefixes often have intensive force; this is especially true of **con-, ex-, ob-, per-: cōnficiō,** *"do up," do thoroughly;* **efficiō,** *make out, complete;* **occīdō,** *cut up, kill;* **perficiō,** *do through and through, finish.* Define according to the intensive use of the prefix: *compel, complement, commotion, conserve, experience, emotion, extensive, obtain, observe, persist, permanent.*

142. TWO ROMAN STUDENTS

X. The Home-coming

Tandem diēs aderat quō, studiīs perfectīs, Athēnae Pūbliō Fūriānōque relinquendae erant.

"Illīs invideō quī nunc in Graeciā, nunc in Italiā habitant," dīxit Fūriānus, volēns Rōmam vidēre, nōlēns tamen Athēnās dēserere.

Certiōrēs autem ā mercātōre factī viās bonās esse, sibi persuāsērunt ut proficīscerentur. Nūntiō allātō latrōnēs viātōribus nocēre, servīs armātīs ut praesidiō impedīmentīs essent, per Graeciam iter fēcērunt. Marī tranquillō, ad urbem Brundisium sine cāsū nāvigāvērunt, et ibi duōs diēs mānsērunt, quod quaedam vidēre volēbant: locum ubi Augustus nōmen Caesaris accēperat, et aedificia duo — illud in quō Vergilius mortuus erat postquam ē Graeciā rediit, et illud in quō Horātius paucōs diēs habitāverat. Hoc tam grātum Pūbliō erat ut discēdere nōllet. Fūriānus autem dīxit, "Nōnne vīs quam prīmum domum tuam vidēre?"

"Volō!"[1] respondit Pūblius. Itaque quam celerrimē profectī sunt.

Magnum erat gaudium familiae Caeciliae, fīliīs duōbus reversīs. Paene tōtum diem ātrium clientibus et amīcīs salūtem dīcentibus complētum est. Posteā Caeciliī ad Campum Mārtium in pulchrās Thermās Agrippae iērunt. Ibi cum aliīs amīcīs locūtī, sē exercuērunt et lāvērunt.

Proximō diē, rogātus quid facere vellet, Pūblius dīxit sē velle in Circum īre quadrīgāsque vidēre. Pater respondit nōn circēnsēs lūdōs, sed scaenicōs eō diē darī; quendam Mūcium quoque carmina sua lēctūrum esse.

Pūblius dīxit sē nōlle Mūcium audīre; lūdōs autem scaenicōs sibi placēre et eōs vidēre velle.

---

[1] *Yes* was often expressed in conversation by repeating the verb.

Fābula, ā Plautō dē lārvīs scrīpta, grāta erat. Tum pantomīmus[1] victōriās Augustī exprimēns tam bene saltāvit ut populus clāmāret, ad pantomīmum curreret, pecūniam iaceret. Etiam Augustus eī corōnam dedit, quam accipere maximō honōrī pantomīmō erat. Lūdīs perfectīs, omnēs per Forum reversī sunt.

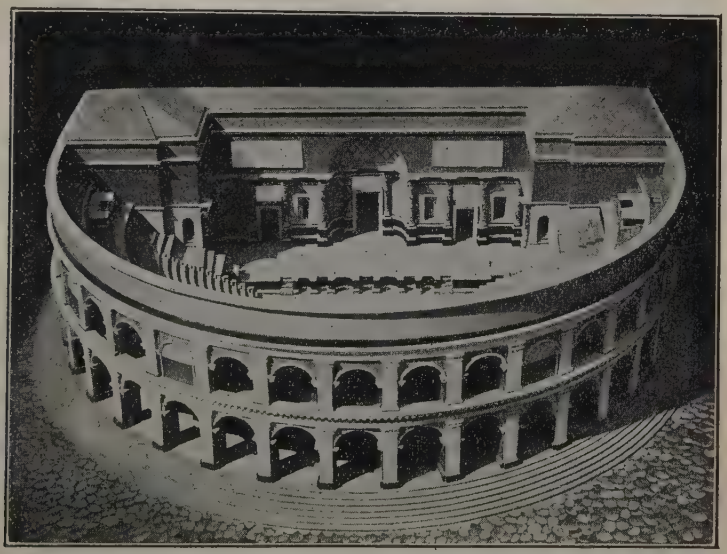


FIG. 37. THE THEATER AT HERCULANEUM AS IT WAS

Pūblius et Fūriānus nunc vītam cīvium Rōmānōrum iniērunt. Pūblius quaestor creātus est, perque tōtum cursum honōrum īre parāvit. Fūriānus, tribūnus mīlitāris factus, auxiliō ducī circumventō missus est, sēque tam fortiter gessit ut lēgātus fieret. Itaque et Pūblius et Fūriānus vītā suā magnam auctōritātem familiae Caeciliae et servāvērunt et auxērunt.

[1] *pantomime, ballet dancer.*

143. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quibus invidēbat Fūriānus? 2. Postquam rediērunt quid Fūriānus Pūbliusque fēcērunt? 3. Cui Augustus corōnam dedit?

144. Vocabulary Drill

cāsus	**ineō**	**noceō**
circumveniō	**invideō**	**nōlō**
compleō	**lēgātus**	**placeō**
honor	**mercātor**	**volō**

145. Forms

Conjugation of **volō** and **nōlō** (**401**).

146. Drill. — (*a*) Give a synopsis of **volō** in the third singular and **nōlō** in the third plural, indicative and subjunctive.

(*b*) Conjugate the following verbs as *one verb* (see **114**) throughout the indicative and subjunctive: **sum, possum, proficīscor, eō, ferō, fīō.**

147. Syntax

Dative with special verbs (**421**). Dative of reference (**419**) and dative of purpose (**418**).

148. Written Exercises

1. After finishing their studies, Publius and Furianus wished to see Rome but were unwilling to leave Athens. 2. They were informed, moreover, that bandits were molesting travelers. 3. Furianus, however, persuaded Publius to start as soon as possible, and so they armed the slaves as a protection for themselves and the baggage. 4. It was pleasing to them to see home again, and they said that they wanted to make the journey as swiftly as possible. 5. Great was the joy of the whole family when the boys returned. Do you envy them? Does this story please you?

149. Word Study: Suffixes

For the meaning and use of **-tūdō** (*-tude*), **-mentum** (*-ment*), **-ūra** (*-ure*), **-faciō, -ficō** (*-fy*), see **497.** Give the English forms of **altitūdō, servitūdō, argūmentum, experīmentum, agricultūra, pictūra.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *solitude, magnitude, instrument, moment, conjecture?*

Give three other examples of each of the above suffixes in English words.

FIG. 38. A ROMAN IN HIS HOME

Note the rolls of books, the furniture, statuary, costumes.

150. A LATIN PLAY

BULLA

Persōnae

Aelia, *parva puella Rōmāna* — **Damyx**
Lāneis, *serva* — **Thoa** } *uxōrēs latrōnum*

Q. Aelius Frontō, *Rōmānus, pater Aeliae*

Locus: In oppidō Paestō, ante templum.

(*Ē dextrā parte accēdunt Frontō, Aelia, Lāneis.*)

Lāneis. Aelia! Bulla tua aurea! Eam nōn videō. Estne āmissa?

Aelia. Ecce! Nōn amissa est — sub tunicā est.

Lāneis. Quam terrēbar! Necessārium est tē eam semper dīligenter servāre, quod tē ē malīs servābit.

Frontō. Hoc est templum. Aelia! Volō tē cum Lāneide hīc remanēre. Ego deōs ōrābō ut nōbīs iter fēlīx dent. Lāneis! Oportet tē cum Aeliā semper manēre, quod magna perīcula adsunt.

Lāneis. Ita, ita! Manēbō. (*Frontō in templum it.*)

Aelia. Lāneis! Quandō domum[1] ībimus?

Fig. 39. Bulla
In the Metropolitan Museum, New York.

Lāneis. Quandō deī iter fēlīx nōbīs dare volent. Nōnne autem Paestum pulchrum oppidum est? Nōnne Titūrius, hospes tuī patris, nōbīs in hōc oppidō manentibus semper bonus est?

Aelia. Ita; et Titūrium maximē amō, sed —

Lāneis. Multōs servōs habet — labor meus hīc levis est. Nōnne vīs labōrem Lāneidis tuae levem esse?

Aelia. Sed mātrem vidēre volō. Iam diū eam nōn videō. (*Ante templum nunc cōnsīdunt.*)

---

[1] *home.*

Lāneis. Quam calidus est diēs! Cōnfecta sum.

Aelia. Lāneis! Quandō pater sciet iter fēlīx futūrum esse?

Lāneis. Quandō auspicia bona erunt.

Aelia. Ōh! (*Lāneis parat dormīre.*) Lāneis! Nōnne cupis Rōmam rūrsus vidēre?

Lāneis. Quid? Ita, ita.

Aelia. Multa agam! Prīmum mātrī salūtem dīcam. Tum omnibus amīcīs multa dē Paestō, dē Titūriō, dē itinere nārrābō. Nūlla ex amīcīs meīs iter tam longum fēcit. Quam mē mīrābuntur! (*Lāneis nunc dormit.*) Tum omnia illa quae prō amīcīs ēmī eīs dabō — bene erit!

(*Ē sinistrā parte accēdunt Damyx et Thoa.*)

Fig. 40. Pūpae

In the Boston Museum of Fine Arts.

Damyx. Vidēsne illam?

Aelia. Per viās ībō, et omnia aedificia nova spectābō.

Thoa. Pulchra est! Et callida vidētur. Eam rapiāmus!

Aelia. Prō pūpīs[1] meīs novās vestēs faciam. —

Damyx. Dēbēmus autem magnā cum cūrā agere. Serva adest.

Thoa. Illa dormit. (*Aelia Thoam et Damycem videt. Prōcēdit ut eās spectet.*)

Damyx. Puella pulchra es. Nōnne vīs nōbīscum ambulāre? Multa grātissima tibi mōnstrābimus.

Aelia. Nōlō. Pater iussit mē hīc remanēre.

Thoa. Oho! Bona puella es! Nōs autem nōn longē prōcēdēmus. Brevī tempore revertēmur.

Aelia. Nōn ībō.

Damyx (*Thoae*). Quid faciēmus?

---

[1] *dolls.*

Thoa (*Aeliae*). Sī nōbīscum veniēs, tē multa grāta docēbimus.

Aelia. Māter mē multa docet. Quid vōs mē docēbitis?

Thoa. Docēbimus quō modō magnam pecūniam sine labōre semper parāre possīs. Tum semper poteris emere omnia quae cupis.

Aelia. Vōbīscum nōn ībō. Fūrēs[1] estis.

Damyx. Nōn fūrēs, sed Furiae sumus! Audīsne? Sī nōbīscum īre nōn vīs, tē īre cōgēmus!

Thoa. Et sī clāmābis, tē interficiēmus!

Aelia. Vōs nōn timeō.

Damyx. Quid?

Aelia. Furiae malae sunt, et malae rēs mihi nocēre nōn possunt.

Thoa. Cūr?

Aelia. Ex omnibus malīs mē servat bulla. (*Bullam mōnstrat.*)

Damyx. Ecce!

Thoa. Aurea est!

(*Eōdem tempore et Damyx et Thoa bullam rapere cōnantur; inter sē pugnant.*)

Damyx et Thoa. Au — au! (*Lāneis sē movet.*)

Thoa. S — st! Serva sē movet! Prehendēmur!

Damyx. Fugiāmus! (*In sinistram partem celeriter exeunt.*)

Lāneis. Aelia!

Aelia. Adsum, Lāneis.

Lāneis. Paene dormiēbam. Calidissimus est diēs! (*Ē templō venit Frontō.*)

Frontō. Aelia! Lāneis! Auspicia optima sunt. Deī nōbīs iter fēlīx dant. Hōc ipsō diē proficīscēmur.

Aelia. Bene, bene est!

Frontō. Et quid agēbat Aelia mea?

Aelia. Duās Furiās vīdī.

Frontō et Lāneis. Quid?

Aelia. Ita. Mē sēcum īre cupiēbant. Cōnābantur mihi nocēre. Malae erant — sed bulla mea mē servāvit!

Frontō (*parvā vōce*). Lāneis! Quid dīcit?

Lāneis (*parvā vōce*). Nihil est. Calidus diēs est, et puella cōnfecta est. Dormiēbat. Haec in somnō vidēbat; nunc putat omnia vēra esse.

---

[1] *thieves.*

Frontō. Intellegō. Prōcēdāmus, Aelia. Memoriam Furiārum dēpōnāmus, et nōs ad iter parēmus.

Aelia. Ita! Sed bullam meam semper amābō, quod haec mē ā Furiīs dēfendit.

Lāneis. Rēctē! (*Frontō et Lāneis rīdent. Exeunt omnēs in dextram partem.*)

Fig. 41. A Temple at Paestum

One of the best preserved Greek temples in existence. Built in the sixth century B.C.

FIG. 42. THE TEMPLE OF JUNO ON THE CAPITOLINE HILL AS IT WAS

TRANSLATION HELPS AND HINTS

The Translation of Latin into English

In reading a Latin passage, we must first feel and understand it ourselves in the Latin — just the way one reads French or German *in the original*, without stopping at first to substitute English words. In this way only can one get what is commonly called a "feeling for the language."

Next comes the translation, when we seek to "carry over" into English the *thought* (though not always the *form*) of the original Latin. This is primarily an English exercise. Its purpose is to give us practice in English expression, *i.e.* in telling others what we have read and telling them in such a fashion that we shall be easily understood. The English used should be *natural* and *idiomatic*, the kind that we read in English books or hear spoken by educated persons. One can never string words together in mechanical fashion and do justice to the original sentence. It is always well to remember that a sentence in any language is a group of words *making sense*, and that anything short of this is *nonsense*. A good translation falls somewhere between a "literal" (*i.e.* word for word) translation and a free rendering of the thought or sense of the passage, without any attempt to preserve its form: no ideas not already in the original are to be injected and none omitted.

English word order differs from that of Latin, but often the Latin order can be preserved.

Note the following points:

1. Generally speaking, do not translate an accusative (object) first, as it usually follows the verb in English.

2. If the verb comes first in the Latin, keep the order of words by supplying "there."

3. Be careful not to skip over a conjunction or a punctuation mark.

4. A relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence is often used merely to connect with a preceding sentence and should be translated by a demonstrative: **Quod ille cōnspexerat,** *He had observed this.*

5. Avoid the absolute construction in translating an ablative absolute. Use a phrase or clause: **signō datō,** *when the signal was given.*

6. In general, a Latin participle is often best translated by a clause beginning with *when, although, if, since, after,* etc.

7. Break up a long complex sentence into two or more short sentences.

8. Remember that the Latin constructions which are stressed most in textbooks are often those which differ in some respect from the English and that in translating them the English idiom must be followed.

9. Do not always use the one English meaning that you have learned for a Latin word but find the English synonym which fits the context.

Examine carefully the following Latin passage and the two translations which are given with it. The first translation, handed in by a pupil, is meaningless; the second, found in a book, is idiomatic and sensible.

Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

(1) *When Caesar learned this, of whom had gone through the territory, that he may reduce and bring them together, if in his sight they wished to be guiltless, he reduced the enemy in number, received into surrender all the rest as hostages, the arms, and dishonored deserters.*

(2) *So soon as Caesar came to know of this, he commanded the inhabitants through whose borders they had marched to seek them out and bring them back, if they wished to clear themselves in his sight. When the runaways were brought back, he treated them as enemies; all the remainder, upon delivery of hostages, arms, and deserters, he admitted to surrender.*

INTRODUCTION TO PART III

151. Livy

Most of the stories in the following selections are adapted from Livy or Eutropius, unless otherwise noted.

Livy was one of Rome's most famous historians. Living over 1900 years ago, in the time of Augustus, the most glorious period in Roman literature, he wrote a history of Rome from its beginnings down to his own time. The purpose of the work was to give the Roman citizen a higher appreciation of his country.

The work was divided into 142 books. Of these only 35 books, including the first ten, are now in existence. On account of the very great importance of the work for the history of Rome, it has ever been the dream of scholars to find the lost books of Livy. Only recently the newspapers all over the world printed sensational accounts of the discovery of these books by an Italian scholar in Naples. It was reported that he was planning to sell them for £1,000,000 (over $4,600,000). He could easily have obtained that sum if he had found what was claimed, but it has been shown that there was nothing in the story.

The old Roman tales that Livy weaves into his early history of Rome may be mere legends, but they are none the less, like the story of Washington and the cherry tree, of great importance and interest and give a good insight into Roman character and ideals. One historian says of them:

> If now we take a general view of this wonderful collection of legends, caring little whether the details be wholly or in part imaginary, but regarding the heroes and heroines as at least a gallery of moral types, we may gain a fair notion of the kind of greatness that carried Rome, the city of the Tiber, to the headship of the ancient world. It is simple enough. There is a plain devotion to duty, a disregard of personal inclinations, a pride that disdains submission, a constancy of the finest

temper. There is a clear grasp of the object of the hour and a willingness to take the necessary steps. . . . We are not dealing with a clever people, like the Greeks. Here there is no constellation of brilliant stars, but a succession of good citizens, able to coöperate and to obey, and pre-eminent among peoples ancient or modern in unfaltering steadiness of nerve.

Eutropius, a writer of the fourth century A.D., wrote a very brief history of Rome, in the early part of which he used an abridged edition of Livy as his source.

FIG. 43. THE ROMAN FORUM AS IT IS

The three columns belong to the temple of Castor and Pollux.

PART III

I

152. The Early Kings of Rome

Rōmānum imperium ā Rōmulō initium habet. Is, XVIII annōs nātus, urbem parvam in Palātīnō monte cōnstituit. Cōnstitūtā cīvitāte, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ēgit: multitūdinem fīnitimōrum in cīvitātem recēpit et centum ex seniōribus dēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōminā vit quod senēs erant. Hōrum cōnsiliō omnia ēgit.

Post mortem Rōmulī Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est, quī bellum nūllum quidem gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitātem quam Rōmulus iūvit; nam lēgēs mōrēsque Rōmānīs cōnstituit, quī cōnsuētūdine[1] proeliōrum sēmibarbarī putābantur. Annum dīvidit in decem mēnsēs et multa sacra ac templa Rōmae[2] cōnstituit.

Huic successit Tullus Hostīlius. Hic Albānōs et Veientēs bellō superāvit. Urbem auxit, adiectō Caeliō monte.

Post hunc Ancus Mārtius suscēpit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs pugnāvit. Aventīnum montem cīvitātī adiēcit et Iāniculum. Ōstiam cōnstituit.

Deinde rēgnum Prīscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic numerum senātōrum duplicāvit. Circum[3] Rōmae[2] aedificāvit. Lūdōs Rōmānōs īnstituit. Vīcit īdem etiam Sabīnōs; prīmusque[4] triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās.[5] Capitōlium aedificāvit.

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, fīlius nōbilis mulieris, captīvae tamen. Hic quoque Sabīnōs vīcit. Montēs trēs, Quirīnālem, Vīminālem, Ēsquilīnum, urbī adiūnxit; fossās circum mūrum dūxit. Prīmus omnium cēnsum habuit, quī

---

[1] *because of their habit of (waging) wars.*
[2] *at Rome* (**452**). [3] Noun. [4] *(he was the) first (who).* [5] *sewers.*

adhūc per orbem terrārum nōn cognitus erat. Sub eō Rōma, omnibus in cēnsum dēlātīs,[1] habuit LXXXIIII mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum, cum hīs quī in agrīs erant.

Read Tappan, pp. 1–23; Morris, pp. 7–21; Church (*Livy*), Chapters I–IV; Guerber, pp. 11–42; Haaren and Poland, pp. 9–38.[2]

153. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis erat rēx post Rōmulum? 2. In quō locō Rōmulus urbem posuit? 3. Quis erat quīntus rēx? 4. Quis erat secundus mōns urbī adiectus? 5. Tertius? 6. Quis īnstituit lūdōs?

154. Vocabulary Drill

Look up the following words in the Latin-English Vocabulary, learn thoroughly (genitive and gender of nouns, principal parts of verbs, etc., with meanings), and enter them in your vocabulary notebook together with English derivatives.

adiciō	dīvidō	mūrus
adiungō	iuvō	senex
cōnsuētūdō	mēnsis	succēdō
habit	mōs	

155. Idioms

An idiom is an expression peculiar to a particular language. It can not well be translated literally into another language. Note and memorize the following idioms in the above passage:

1. **XVIII annōs nātus,** *eighteen years old* (lit., *born eighteen years*).
2. **orbis terrārum,** *the world* (lit., *the circle of the lands*).

156. Dative with Compounds

Sometimes when certain prepositions are used as prefixes with intransitive verbs, the meanings of the verbs are

[1] *enrolled.* [2] For full titles of these books see **370.**

changed in such a way as to call for the dative. The English equivalent often calls for *to* or *for*. See **successit** in line 13 above. No general rule can be given. The dative regularly goes closely with the prefix. When the simple verb is transitive, the compound sometimes takes both an accusative and a dative. See **adiēcit** in line 16 and **adiūnxit** in line 25.

157. Written Exercises

1. Whom did Tullus Hostilius succeed? 2. After conquering the Albans, he joined the Caelian hill to the city. 3. Numa added no hill to Rome, but he gave the Romans laws. 4. Numa divided the year into months and established many customs.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

158. 1. From Slave Boy to King

Rēgnō Tarquinī Prīscī rēs mīra fuit. Servius Tullius puer erat rēgis servus. In capite huius puerī dormientis flamma appāruit multōrum in cōnspectū. Cum quīdam aquam ad exstinguendum ferret, ab rēgīnā Tanaquīle retentus est, quae movērī vetuit puerum. Tum cum somnō etiam flamma abiit. Tum abductō in sēcrētum rēgī Tanaquil "Vidēsne tū," inquit, "hunc puerum tam humilem? Hic lūmen rēbus nostrīs erit praesidiumque nōbīs afflictīs; eī[1] amīcī sīmus et bonīs artibus[2] īnstituāmus." Hōc factō, puer fit vir īnsignis. Cum marītus quaererētur fīliae[1] Tarquinī, nēmō Rōmānus cum illō cōnferrī potuit, fīliamque suam eī rēx spopondit. Post mortem Tarquinī Servius, quī servus fuerat, rēx factus est.

Read Church (*Livy*), Chapter III.

---

[1] Dative. [2] Supply **eum.**

II

159. The Last of the Kings and the Establishment of the Republic (509 B.C.)

L. Tarquinius Superbus, fīlius Prīscī Tarquinī, Tullium occīdit. Ipse erat septimus atque ultimus rēgum. Volscōs superāvit; cum Tuscīs pācem fēcit; et templum Iovī in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Posteā, cum Ardeam oppugnāret, imperium āmīsit. Nam cum fīlius eius, Tarquinius iūnior, nōbilissimam Collātīnī uxōrem, Lucrētiam, iniūriā affēcisset, eaque dē iniūriā Collātīnō et patrī et amīcīs dīxisset, in omnium cōnspectū Lucrētia sē occīdit. Propter quam causam L. Iūnius Brūtus populum contrā Tarquinium incitāvit. Posteā exercitus quoque, quī Ardeam cum ipsō rēge oppugnābat, eum relīquit. Postquam ad urbem Rōmam rēx vēnit, portīs clausīs, exclūsus est. Cum imperāvisset annōs XXV, cum uxōre et līberīs suīs fūgit. Septem rēgēs CCXXXXIIII annōs rēgnāverant. Mors fortis mulieris cīvitātem līberāvit.

Tum Rōmānī incipiunt cōnsulēs duōs, prō ūnō rēge, hāc causā creāre: ut, sī ūnus malus esset,[1] ab alterō retinērētur. Et cōnstituērunt nē imperium longius quam annum[2] cōnsulēs habērent.[3] Fuērunt annō prīmō, expulsīs rēgibus, cōnsulēs L. Iūnius Brūtus et Tarquinius Collātīnus, marītus Lucrētiae. Sed Tarquiniō Collātīnō[4] statim sublāta potestās est; cōnstituērunt enim nē ūllus Tarquinius in urbe manēret. Itaque ex urbe migrāvit, et in locō eius factus est Valerius Pūblicola cōnsul. Commōvit tamen bellum urbī Rōmae rēx Tarquinius, quī erat expulsus, et, collēctīs multīs gentibus, ut in rēgnum posset restituī pugnāvit. In prīmā pugnā

---

[1] *should be.* [2] Extent of time.
[3] *should not have;* volitive substantive clause (**469**).
[4] *from Collatinus;* dative of separation (**423**).

FIG. 44. LUCRETIA AND HER MAIDS

(See page 82.)

Brūtus et Arrūns, Tarquinī fīlius, occīsī sunt. Rōmānī tamen in eā pugnā victōrēs fuērunt.

Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius ut reciperet
30 rēgnum bellum Rōmānīs intulit, auxilium eī ferente Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum. Rōmam paene cēpit. Hōc tempore Horātius Coclēs pontem dēfendit et Rōmam servāvit.

Read Tappan, pp. 25–31; Guerber, pp. 42–51; Morris, pp. 26–42; Church (*Livy*), Chapter V.

FIG. 45. STREET SCENE IN ANCIENT ROME

(From "Messalina.")

160. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis erat pater Tarquinī Superbī? 2. Quot rēgēs Rōmānī habuērunt? 3. Quī erant prīmī cōnsulēs? 4. In cuius locō factus est Pūblicola cōnsul? 5. Quis Tarquiniō auxilium tulit?

161. Vocabulary Drill

Look up, learn, and enter in your notebook, with derivatives where possible:

cōnspectus	**occīdō**	**restituō**
imperium	**oppugnō**	**statim**
mulier	**propter**	**tollō**

162. Descriptive *Cum* Clauses

Review descriptive **cum** clauses (**475**) and find those used in the above passage.

163. Written Exercises

1. Tarquin the Proud succeeded Tullius, whom he killed. 2. When he had conquered the enemies of Rome, he at once built a noble temple to Jove. 3. When he had ruled for many years, he lost his power on account of his own son. 4. The authority of kings was taken away when the Roman people, after expelling the Tarquins, began to elect consuls.

164. Word Study: Prefixes

The prefix **sēmi-** means *half* or *partly* in Latin and English: **sēmibarbarus,** *semibarbarous. Semiannual* means *occurring every* ***half year.***

The prefix **bi-** or **bis-** means *twice* or *two:* **biennium,** *a period of two years* (from **annus**). Distinguish carefully *semiannual* and *biennial, semimonthly* and *bimonthly.* **Bi-** is often found in chemical terms: *bicarbonate, bichloride.*

The prefix **ūn-, ūni-** (from **ūnus**) means *one: unanimous, uniform.*

The prefix **multi-** (from **multus**) means *much, many: multiform, multigraph, multimillionaire.*

Give three other examples of each of these prefixes in English words.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

165. 2. The Horatii and the Curiatii

Tullō Hostīliō rēge, Rōmānī cum Albānīs bellum gerēbant. Forte in duōbus exercitibus erant trēs frātrēs (et aetāte et vīribus parēs). Horātiī erant Rōmānī; Cūriātiī, Albānī. Cum hīs agunt rēgēs, ut prō suā patriā hāc condiciōne pugnent: ibi imperium erit, ubi victōria erit.

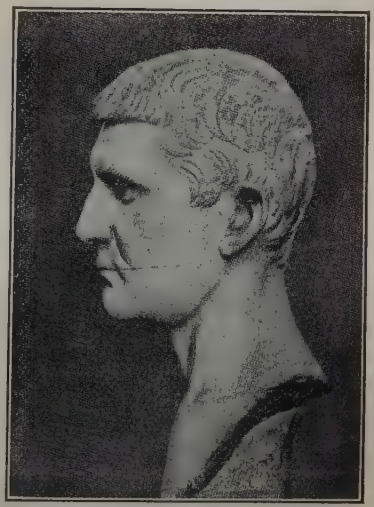


Fig. 46. Vir Rōmānus

Tempore cōnstitūtō, arma capiunt. Duo Rōmānī, vulnerātīs tribus Albānīs, interfectī sunt. Ad quōrum cāsum cum clāmāvisset gaudiō Albānus exercitus, Rōmānās legiōnēs iam spēs omnis dēseruerat. Forte tertius Rōmānus integer fuit; tribus Cūriātiīs sōlus nōn pār erat, sed contrā singulōs ferōx. Itaque, ut cum singulīs pugnāret, fūgit. Tum respiciēns videt eōs magnīs intervāllīs sequentēs; ūnus nōn multō abest. In eum magnō impetū rediit; et dum Albānus exercitus clāmat Cūriātiīs,[1] ut opem ferant frātrī, iam Horātius, caesō hoste, secundam pugnam petēbat et alterum Cūriātium interficit. Iamque singulī supererant,[2] sed nec spē nec vīribus parēs. Alter integer et duābus victōriīs ferōx in pugnam tertiam ībat, alter vulnerātus victusque frātrum morte victōrī obicitur hostī. Illō interfectō, Rōmānī cum gaudiō Horātium accipiunt.

[1] Indirect object of **clāmat.** [2] From **supersum.**

dīmīsit. Huic Mūciō posteā, quod dextram manum āmīserat, nōmen Scaevolae[1] datum est.

Read Tappan, pp. 30–31; Guerber, pp. 76–78; Church (*Livy*), Chapter VI; Haaren and Poland, pp. 61–63.

167. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Cūr voluit Mūcius Tiberim trānsīre? 2. Cūr multitūdō ad tribūnal rēgis erat? 3. Cūr Mūcius scrībam Porsenae occīdit? 4. Quō modō Mūcius nōmen Scaevolae accēpit?

168. Vocabulary Drill

aciēs	ferē	intrā
adeō (*verb*)	gladius	obsideō
aperiō	inopia	trānseō
	inquit	

169. Future Passive Participle and Gerund

Review the future passive participle, the gerund, and the dative of agent (**490, 491, 425**). See also **131.** Find all the examples of these in the above passage.

170. Latin Sentence Structure

Mīlitēs eum prehēnsum retrāxērunt (line 14), *The soldiers seized him and pulled him back.*

Note the striking difference between English and Latin sentence structure.

Latin prefers to vary the construction by use of participles (including the ablative absolute) and subordinate clauses of various sorts.

English prefers to use coördinate clauses connected by *and.*

---

[1] *Left-handed* ("*Lefty*").

171. Written Exercises

1. When Rome was being besieged and there was a scarcity of grain, Mucius approached the senate. 2. He said that Rome was to be saved by him. 3. He set out for the enemy's camp for the purpose of killing the king (*use future passive participle with* **ad** *or* **causā**). 4. He was to be feared by the enemy, for he had come to free Rome by fighting.

172. Word Study: Spelling

We have many silent consonants in English words. They cause trouble in spelling. In some cases the difficulty is cleared up by taking thought of the Latin original, for Latin has no silent letters. Compare the following, often misspelled: *debt* (**dēbitus**), *honor* (**honor**), *assign* (**signum**), *mortgage* (**mortuus**), *receipt* (**receptus**).

Can you find other instances?

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

173. 3. The Regulation of War[1]

In rē pūblicā maximē cōnservanda sunt iūra bellī. Nam sunt duo genera dēcertandī, ūnum per disputātiōnem, alterum per vim. Illud proprium est hominis, hoc animālium. Itaque nōn fugiendum est[2] ad vim et bellum nisi ūtī nōn licet disputātiōne.[3] Suscipienda quidem bella sunt ut sine iniūriā in pāce vīvāmus; post autem victōriam cōnser-

[1] Adapted from Cicero's treatise *De Officiis*, which deals with moral duties. It was written for his son.

Cicero was Rome's greatest orator. The literary style which he created has never been surpassed. He was to prose what Virgil was to poetry, the finest example of Roman genius. To his Letters more than to anything else we are indebted for our intimate knowledge of the great men and events of the closing days of the Roman Republic.

[2] Impersonal; translate: *we must not resort to.*

[3] Ablative with **ūtī**.

vandī sunt eī quī nōn crūdēlēs in bellō fuērunt, ut[1] maiōrēs nostrī Tusculānōs, Volscōs, Sabīnōs in cīvitātem etiam accēpērunt. At Carthāginem omnīnō sustulērunt; etiam Corinthum (et hoc vix probō), sed crēdō eōs hoc fēcisse nē locus ipse ad bellum faciendum hortārī[2] posset. Nam pāx quae nihil habitūra sit[3] īnsidiārum semper est petenda. Sed eī quī, armīs positīs, ad imperātōrum fidem fugiunt recipiendī sunt. In quō magnopere apud nostrōs iūstitia culta est; nam eī quī cīvitātēs victās in fidem recēpērunt eārum patrōnī fuērunt. Nūllum bellum est iūstum nisi quod aut, rēbus repetītīs, gerātur[4] aut dēnūntiātum ante sit. Bellum autem ita suscipiātur[5] ut nihil nisi pāx quaerī videātur.

FIG. 48. CORINTH

The citadel of Corinth was on top of the hill.

[1] *as;* so regularly with the indicative.

[2] Supply as object "the inhabitants of Corinth."

[3] Translate as if indicative; **īnsidiārum** depends on **nihil**.

[4] Translate **gerātur** and **sit** as if indicative. War should be started only if restitution of stolen property is sought or if it is duly declared beforehand.

[5] *let war be undertaken;* volitive subjunctive (**465**).

IV

174. The Secession of the Plebs (494 B.C.)

Paulō post rēgēs exāctōs[1] bellum cīvīle propter aes aliēnum[2] inter senātōrēs et plēbem oritur. Hōrum multī dīxērunt sē in fīnibus hostium prō lībertāte et imperiō pugnantēs domī[3] ā cīvibus captōs et oppressōs esse, tūtiōremque in bellō inter hostēs lībertātem plēbis esse quam in pāce inter cīvēs. Quīdam, quī Sabīnō bellō fortis mīles fuerat, "Mē absente," inquit, "ager vāstātus est, vīlla incēnsa, tribūtum imperātum. Aes aliēnum facere mē oportēbat. Posteā agrum āmīsī et ā crēditōribus in vincula coniectus sum." Hōc audītō, multitūdō postulāvit ut senātus vocārētur. Senātū convocātō, nūntiātur Volscōs ad urbem oppugnandam venīre. Omnēs pugnant, hostēsque vincuntur. Post bellum senātus nihil dē plēbe ēgit. Tum aliud bellum oritur. Cōnsulēs nōmina cīvium legunt.[4] Cum ad nōmen nēmō respondēret, omnēs dīcunt lībertātem reddendam esse priusquam arma danda, ut prō patriā cīvibusque, nōn prō dominīs pugnent. Dictātor plēbī meliōrem condiciōnem post bellum pollicitus est. Sed, bellō cōnfectō, nihil āctum est.

Tum plēbs in Sacrum montem sēcessērunt.[5] Hic mōns trāns Aniēnem flūmen est tria ab urbe mīlia passuum. Patribus placuit ad plēbem mittī Menēnium Agrippam. Is hoc nārrāvit:

"Ōlim reliquae partēs corporis hūmānī īrātae erant quod

---

[1] *after the expulsion of the kings.* What literally?

[2] *another's money*, i.e. *debt.* It is a wholesome thing for a debtor to think of a debt in this way.

[3] *at home* (**452**).

[4] They called the roll in the draft.

[5] As **plēbs** is plural in thought, the plural verb is used. So in English we may say "The committee *is* meeting," when the committee is thought of as a whole, or "The committee *are* not agreed," when the individuals are in the mind of the speaker.

suā cūrā, suō labōre ventrī[1] omnia quaerēbantur, quī ipse nihil agēbat. Coniūrāvērunt nē manūs ad ōs cibum ferrent, nec ōs acciperet, nec dentēs cōnficerent.[2] Dum ventrem hōc modō vincere volunt, ipsa membra paene moriuntur. Inde appāret ventrem nōn magis alī quam alere." Cum ostenderet quam corporis discordia similis esset īrae plēbis, pāx facta est hāc condiciōne, ut tribūnī plēbis creārentur neque ūllī patrī[3] licēret eum magistrātum capere. Tribūnī accēpērunt potestātem auxilī dandī contrā cōnsulēs.

Read Tappan, pp. 32-38; Guerber, pp. 81-86; Morris, pp. 54-59.

FIG. 49. SACER MŌNS

The bridge, part of which is ancient, crosses the Anio River. On the other side the Sacred Mount may be seen.

175. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quō modō bellum cīvīle ortum est? 2. Ubi erat Sacer mōns? 3. Quam potestātem habēbant tribūnī plēbis? 4. Cui licēbat eum magistrātum capere?

---

[1] *for the stomach.* [2] "*do up*," i.e. *chew up.* [3] *patrician.*

176. Vocabulary Drill

alō	**licet**	**polliceor**
appāreō	**multitūdō**	**postulō**
coniciō	**oportet**	**tūtus**

177. Impersonal Verbs

Some verbs may at times be used impersonally, without an expressed subject or with a clause as subject. Compare **nūntiātur** in line 11 and **appāret** in line 28.

Other verbs are used only impersonally and therefore have no forms in the first and second persons, as **licet** and **oportet.** With **licet** the dative of the person is used; with **oportet,** the accusative as subject of the infinitive. **Mē hoc facere oportet** means *it is necessary that I do this. I must* (*ought to*) *do this.* This may be expressed in two other ways: **Hoc facere dēbeō** and **hoc mihi faciendum est.**

The impersonal form **placet** is used with the dative and has the idiomatic sense "it is decided by."

FIG. 50. PUER RŌMĀNUS

178. Written Exercises

1. The common people ought not to be seized and thrown into chains by creditors. 2. Will it not be necessary (for) them to demand better conditions? 3. It has been decided by the senate to make peace by promising these conditions. 4. No senator will be allowed to oppress the common people.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

179. 4. Proverbs of Publilius Syrus[1]

1. Ab aliīs exspectēs[2] alterī[3] quod[4] fēcerīs.
2. Aliēnum aes hominī ingenuō[5] acerba est servitūs.
3. Aliēna[6] nōbīs, nostra plūs aliīs placent.
4. Bis vincit quī sē vincit in victōriā.
5. Cui plūs licet quam pār est plūs vult quam licet.
6. Discordiā fit carior concordia.
7. Prōspicere in pāce oportet quod bellum iuvet.[7]
8. Spīna etiam grāta est ex quā spectātur rosa.

Fig. 51. Roman Savings Bank

Made of clay. Now at the Johns Hopkins University. (Courtesy of D. M. Robinson.)

---

[1] These are taken from plays which **Publilius** wrote in the time of Caesar.

[2] Subjunctive used in a command.

[3] With **fēcerīs**, which is perfect subjunctive. What is the modern form of this saying?

[4] The antecedent "that" is to be supplied.

[5] *free.*

[6] **Aliēna** and **nostra** are used substantively as subjects of **placent.**

[7] Subjunctive: *may aid.*

V

180. The Fabian Family Goes to War (479–478 B.C.)

Eō tempore neque pāx neque bellum cum Veientibus[1] fuit. Legiōnibus Rōmānīs cēdēbant, et in urbem suam sē recipiēbant; ubi dēductās sēnserant legiōnēs, agrōs Rōmānōrum vāstābant. Ita neque omittī tōta rēs nec perficī poterat. Tum Fabia gēns senātum adiit. Cōnsul Fabius prō gente loquitur: "Assiduum magis quam magnum praesidium, ut[2] scītis, patrēs cōnscrīptī, in hōc bellō habēre necesse est. Dum vōs alia bella cūrātis, nōs cum Veientibus bellum gerēmus. Pollicēmur tūtam maiestātem Rōmānī nōminis futūram esse. Id velut familiāre bellum gerere, prīvātā pecūniā, nōbīs in animō est." Grātiae magnae āctae sunt.

Fig. 52. Etruscan Hut Urn

The Etruscans, later imitated by the Romans, put the ashes of the dead in small urns made to resemble the houses in which they lived.

Perfertur per tōtam urbem rūmor. Fabiī ab omnibus laudantur. Posterō diē arma capiunt; eō quō[3] ā cōnsule iussī erant conveniunt. Cōnsul ēgrediēns gentem omnem suam īnstrūctō agmine videt; acceptus in medium eōs prōcēdere iubet. Numquam exercitus vel minor numerō vel clārior fāmā per urbem prōcessit. CCCVI mīlitēs, omnēs nōbilēs, omnēs ūnīus gentis, quī omnēs īnsignēs dūcēs, ēgregiī senātōrēs esse potuērunt,[4] ībant.

Fabiī omnia tūta fēcērunt neque iam Veientēs agrōs vāstāvērunt. Etiam proelia commīsērunt, gēnsque ūna populī

---

[1] The Etruscan town of Veii was Rome's chief enemy in the early days. The capture of the city came at the end of the fourteenth war!

[2] *as.* [3] Adverb. [4] *might have been.*

Rōmānī saepe Etrūscam cīvitātem superāvit. Id prīmō acerbum indignumque Veientibus est vīsum; inde nātum est cōnsilium capiendī hostem īnsidiīs. Iamque Fabiī tam dēspexerant hostem ut sua invicta arma crēderent nōn sustinērī posse. Veientēs pecora in campum ēgērunt et īnsidiās parāvērunt. Cum Fabiī pecora cōnspexissent, ad ea cucurrērunt. Subitō hostēs ex īnsidiīs cōnsurgunt. Fabiī superātī caesī sunt omnēs. Ūnus puer propter aetātem in urbe relictus erat. Hic futūrus erat orīgō gentis Fabiae dubiīsque rēbus populī Rōmānī maximum auxilium.[1]

Read Guerber, pp. 91–94; Church (*Livy*), Chapter VIII; Haaren and Poland, pp. 72–75.

181. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quid pollicitī sunt Fabiī? 2. Hocne perfēcērunt? 3. Quot Fabiī ad bellum iērunt? 4. Quot occīsī sunt? 5. Quō modō superātī sunt?

182. Vocabulary Drill

agmen	**dēdūcō**	**necesse**
caedō	**dēspiciō**	**pecus**
cōnspiciō	**ēgredior**	**perferō**
	nāscor	

183. Idioms

patrēs cōnscrīptī, *senators* (lit., *conscript* or *enrolled fathers*).

Review the idioms **bellum gerere, grātiās agere, sē recipere, proelium committere.**

184. Result Clauses

Review result clauses (**472**).

---

[1] *E.g.* Quintus Fabius Maximus, who achieved fame in the Second Punic War

185. Written Exercises

1. The enemy neither yielded to the Romans nor commenced battle, so that there was neither peace nor war. 2. "It will be necessary, senators," said the consul Fabius, "to keep a small and constant garrison in the enemy's country." 3. "Our family will carry on the war in such a way that you will be permitted[1] to withdraw the-rest-of the forces." 4. The Fabii, however, were so seriously defeated by the enemy that all were killed.

186. Word Study: Prefixes

Review the prefix **inter-** (**496**). The preposition **intrā** (*within, inside*) is also used as a prefix in English. The two must be carefully distinguished: an *intercollegiate* contest is one *between* two (or more) colleges, as Harvard and Yale; an *intracollegiate* contest is one *within* a single college, as when the freshmen and sophomores of Yale play a game. What is the difference between *interscholastic* and *intrascholastic, interstate* and *intrastate?*

Intrō- (*within*) is also used as a prefix: **intrō-dūcō**; *introduce, introspection.*

Extrā- (*outside*) is found in *extraordinary* (from **ōrdō**).

Define *extralegal, intramural, extramural.*

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

187. 5. A Statesman Who Could Not Be Bought[2]

Phōcion Athēniēnsis saepe exercitibus praefuit summōsque magistrātūs cēpit, sed tamen multō nōtior est ob prīvātam vītam quam ob fāmam reī mīlitāris. Fuit enim semper

---

[1] Impersonal (**177**).

[2] Adapted from **Nepos**, a writer of the first century B.C., contemporary with Cicero and Caesar. He wrote biographies of famous Greeks and Romans.

pauper, quamquam dītissimus esse poterat propter honōrēs dēlātōs potestātēsque summās quae eī ā populō dabantur. Cum magna mūnera pecūniae ā lēgātīs rēgis Philippī dēlāta reiceret, lēgātī dīxērunt: "Sī ipse haec nōn vīs, līberīs tamen tuīs prōspicere tē oportet, quibus difficile erit in summā inopiā tantam patris glōriam servāre." Hīs ille, "Sī meī[1] similēs erunt," inquit, "īdem hic parvus ager illōs alet quī mē ad hanc dignitātem perdūxit; sī dissimilēs sunt futūrī, nōlō meā pecūniā illōrum lūxuriam alī augērīque."

FIG. 53. CLOĀCA MAXIMA

This sewer, the largest in ancient Rome, empties into the Tiber River, as here shown.

[1] Genitive of **ego**, dependent on **similis**: *like me.*

VI

188. The Laws of the Twelve Tables (451–450 B.C.)

Postquam tribūnī creātī sunt, nōn semper erat concordia inter patrēs plēbemque. Paucīs annīs Q. Mārcius Coriolānus ex urbe expulsus est quod plēbī[1] nōn favēbat. Ad Volscōs, quōs ipse vīcerat, contendit et auxilia contrā Rōmānōs accēpit. Rōmam oppugnātūrus erat, sed ā mātre permōtus exercitum dēdūxit.[2]

L. Quīnctius Cincinnātus omnem suam pecūniam dare coāctus est prō fīliō, quī ā tribūnō plēbis accūsātus erat. Posteā parvum agrum trāns Tiberim colēbat. Tum senātus tempore magnī perīculī eum dictātōrem creāvit. Nūntiī eum in agrō labōrantem invēnērunt.

Postquam dē lēgibus multōs annōs inter senātum plēbemque discordia fuit, placuit[3] (creārī) decemvirōs prō duōbus cōnsulibus. Hī iussī sunt lēgēs novās ferre. Trēs ex hīs in Graeciam missī sunt ut clārās lēgēs Solōnis dēscrīberent et aliārum Graeciae cīvitātum mōrēs iūraque nōscerent. Prōpositīs decem tabulīs,[4] populum convocāvērunt et legere lēgēs prōpositās iussērunt:

"Omnibus," inquiunt, "(summīs īnfimīsque, iūra aequāvimus, sed plūs possunt multōrum cōnsilia.) Versāte in animīs vōbīscum omnēs rēs, cōnferte sententiās, cōnāminī hās lēgēs meliōrēs facere. Eās lēgēs populus Rōmānus habēbit dē quibus omnēs cōnsentient." Hae lēgēs mānsērunt fōns omnis pūblicī prīvātīque iūris Rōmānōrum. Proximō annō duae lēgēs additae sunt.

Ūnus ē decemvirīs, Ap. Claudius, voluit rāpere Verginiam, fīliam fortis mīlitis. Appius, nē vidērētur contrā iūs agere, dīxit eam servam esse. Sed multitūdō, Appiō resistere

---

[1] See **421.** [2] For the story *cf.* **15.** [3] See **177.**

[4] *tables* or *signs*, on which the laws were written and displayed. Permanent records of this sort were made of bronze.

audēns, in Forō eam dēfendit. Deinde Appius, "Ī," inquit, "līctor; removē multitūdinem et dā viam dominō ad prehendendam servam." Tum pater Verginius, "Hōc ūnō modō quō possum," inquit, "fīlia, tibi lībertātem dō," et eam occīdit. Plēbs, hāc rē incitātus, iterum sēcessit et coēgit decemvirōs potestātem dēpōnere.

Read Guerber, pp. 94–97; Tappan, pp. 39–43.

189. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis oppugnātūrus erat suam patriam? 2. Cūr nōn hoc fēcit? 3. Quō modō Cincinnātus pecūniam suam āmīsit? 4. Cūr decemvirī creātī sunt? 5. Quī fōns erat iūris Rōmānōrum? 6. Quis Verginiam occīdit?

190. Vocabulary Drill

audeō	**deinde**	**resistō** (*w. dat.*)
cōnor	**multum posse**	**versō**
cōnsentiō	**(plūs, plūrimum)**	**videor**

191. Imperative

Learn the forms of the present imperative, active and passive (**391 ff.**).

192. Written Exercises

1. "Do you dare attack Rome?" his mother said. Coriolanus was so deeply-moved that he withdrew his army. 2. The decemvirs, after calling the people together, said: "Read these new laws and agree among yourselves about them." 3. "Try to put away discord so that the rights and counsels of the many may seem to have the greatest influence." 4. "Do not resist [1] the laws, because they are the source of your liberty."

---

[1] The imperative is not used in negative commands. Instead, the Latin says **nōlī(te) resistere,** *be unwilling to resist.*

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

193. 6. Quotations from Horace[1]

1. Aequam mementō[2] rēbus in arduīs servāre mentem.
2. Aurea mediocritās.
3. Caelum, nōn animum, mūtant quī trāns mare currunt.
4. Carpe diem.[3]
5. Crēscentem sequitur cūra pecūniam.
6. Est modus[4] in rēbus.
7. Levius fit patientiā quicquid[5] corrigere est nefās.
8. Magnās inter opēs inops.
9. Nīl mortālibus arduī[6] est.
10. Nīl sine magnō vīta labōre dedit mortālibus.
11. Permitte dīvīs cētera.
12. Rāra avis.
13. Rīdentem dīcere vērum.
14. Virginibus puerīsque.[7]
15. Vīxēre[8] fortēs ante Agamemnona.[9]

---

[1] **Horace** (65–8 B.C.) was one of the greatest of Roman poets. His *Odes*, *Satires*, and *Epistles* are delightful reading. He was a friend of Virgil and Augustus.

[2] Imperative: *remember*. **Aequam** modifies **mentem.** In poetry the word order is freer than in prose.

[3] *Seize the (present) day.*

[4] In the same sense as **mediocritās** in No. 2.

[5] *whatever*. The clause is the subject of **fit.**

[6] With **nīl**: *Nothing hard.*

[7] Dative.

[8] For **vīxērunt.**

[9] **Agamemnona** is accusative. Agamemnon was the leader of the Greeks in the Trojan War.

VII

194. Camillus and the School-teacher

Postquam M. Fūrius Camillus Veiōs cēpit,[1] obsidēbat urbem Faliscōrum, quī Veientēs iūverant. Fortūna eī mātūram victōriam dedit.

Mōs erat Faliscīs eōdem homine magistrō[2] et sociō līberōrum suōrum ūtī, simulque complūrēs puerī cūrae ūnīus hominis mandābantur. Prīncipum līberōs ille docēbat quī scientiā praestābat. Is ante bellum puerōs prō urbe lūdī exercendīque causā prōdūcēbat. Eō mōre per bellī tempus nōn intermissō, nunc breviōribus nunc longiōribus spatiīs[3] trahēbat eōs ā portā. Tandem cum longius solitō[4] prōgressus esset, in casta Rōmāna eōs ad Camillum dūxit. "Falēriōs," inquit, "vōbīs trādidī, cum in potestātem tuam dederim eōs puerōs quōrum patrēs ibi capita rērum sunt." Quae ubi Camillus audīvit, "nōn vēnistī," inquit, "ad populum aut imperātōrem similem tuī.[5] Sunt bellī, sīcut pācis, iūra, iūstēque ea[6] nōn minus quam fortiter didicimus gerere. Arma nōn habēmus contrā eam aetātem cui semper parcitur;[7] arma habēmus contrā mīlitēs quī, cum nōn lacessīti ā nōbīs essent, castra Rōmāna ad Veiōs oppugnāvērunt. Eōs tū novō scelere[8] vincere voluistī; ego Rōmānīs artibus, virtūte, opere, armīs Falēriōs vincam." Nūdātum deinde eum, manibus post tergum ligātīs, redūcendum ad urbem puerīs trādidit, virgāsque[9] quibus prōditōrem agerent[10] eīs dedit. Ad

---

[1] 396 B.C. [2] In apposition with **homine**: *as teacher.*

[3] Translate: *for distances.*

[4] Ablative of comparison (**437**): *than usual.*

[5] Genitive of **tū**, with **similem,** which may take a genitive or dative.

[6] *i.e.*, **bella.**

[7] **Parcō** takes the dative (**421**). Such verbs must be used impersonally in the passive, as only a *direct* object can become subject when the change from active to passive is made.

[8] *crime* (nom. **scelus**). [9] *whips.* [10] *they might drive.*

quod spectāculum populus concurrit. Deinde ā magistrātibus dē rē novā vocātō senātū, tanta commūtātiō animīs est iniecta ut pācem tōta postulāret cīvitās. Fidēs Rōmāna, iūstitia imperātōris in forō laudantur, cōnsēnsūque omnium lēgātī ad Camillum in castra, atque inde, permittente Camillō, Rōmam[1] ad senātum proficīscuntur ut dēderent[2] Falēriōs.

Read Guerber, pp. 101–104; Church (*Livy*), Chapter XII; Haaren and Poland, pp. 82–86.

195. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Cūr Camillus Faliscōs oppugnāvit? 2. Quem mōrem habēbat magister Faliscus? 3. Cūr ad Camillum iit? 4. Quid fēcit Camillus? 5. Quid fēcērunt Faliscī postquam magister puerīque rediērunt?

196. Vocabulary Drill

aetās	**concurrō**	**praestō** (*w. dat.*)
brevis	**dēdō**	**trādō**
complūrēs	**imperātor**	**ūtor** (*w. abl.*)
	lacessō	

Remember that **ūtor** always takes the ablative instead of a direct object.

197. Causal and Adversative *Cum* Clauses

The conjunction **cum** sometimes means *since* or *although*. Clauses in which it is used in either of these senses are always in the subjunctive. Find examples of this construction in the above passage.

---

[1] *to Rome.*

[2] Imperfect because **proficīscuntur** really refers to the past (historical present, **456, 460, Note**).

198. The Relative as Connective

In Latin the relative pronoun is often used to connect a sentence with a preceding sentence. In English a personal or demonstrative pronoun with or without a conjunction (*and*, *but*, etc.) is more common.

quae* ubi Camillus audīvit** (line 14), *when Camillus heard* ***these *things.*

ad *quod* spectāculum (line 24), *to* ***this*** *spectacle.*

This construction used to be more common in English than at present; compare the headings of chapters in books: "In which John goes to school."

199. Written Exercises

FIG. 54. GATE AND AQUEDUCT
This gate in the wall around Rome carries above it three aqueducts.

1. Since Falerii had aided the enemy, the Roman commander-in-chief attacked this city. 2. Although a school-teacher was willing to betray the city to the Romans, the latter did not wish to conquer in this manner. 3. Women and children were always spared[1] when towns were captured, since the Romans excelled in justice. 4. They used so much skill and courage that very many towns and cities surrendered[2] in a short time.

[1] See line 17 and footnote 6. [2] Use reflexive pronoun.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

200. 7. Two Fables[1]

SOUR GRAPES

Fame coācta vulpes[2] in altā vīneā ūvam[3] petēbat, summīs vīribus saliēns. Quam ubi tangere nōn potuit, discēdēns, "Nōndum mātūra est," inquit; "nōlō acerbam sūmere."

Eī quī verbīs ēlevant[4] quae nōn facere possunt hoc exemplum sibi ascrībere dēbent.

THE FROG THAT BURST

Inops, dum potentem vult imitārī, moritur.

Quondam rāna[5] cōnspexit bovem et, tācta invidiā tantae magnitūdinis, īnflāvit pellem. Tum ā nātīs[6] suīs quaesīvit num maior quam bōs esset. Illī negāvērunt. Rūrsus īnflāvit pellem et similī modō quaesīvit quis maior esset. Illī dīxērunt bovem. Tandem dum vult etiam magis sēsē īnflāre, corpus eius ruptum est.

---

[1] Adapted from fables written in verse by **Phaedrus**, who lived in the time of Augustus, at the beginning of the Christian era. Many of his fables were adapted from the Greek fables of Aesop.

[2] *fox.*

[3] *grapes, bunch of grapes.*

[4] *make light of.*

[5] *frog.*

[6] Used substantively: *children.*

VIII

201. The Gauls Capture Rome (390 B.C.)[1]

Gallī, dulcibus frūctibus maximēque vīnō Italiae captī, Alpēs trānsiērunt et agrōs Etrūscōrum occupāvērunt. Tum contrā Rōmānōs prōcessērunt. Sed Rōmānī, quī cum fīnitimīs populīs pugnantēs saepe dictātōrem creāverant, nihil extraōrdināriī imperī aut auxilī quaesīvērunt. Plūrimum terrōris ad Rōmānōs celeritās hostium tulit. Ad flūmen Alliam Rōmānī superātī sunt. Maxima pars eōrum ad urbem Veiōs fūgit; nihil praesidī Rōmam[2] mīsērunt. Aliī Rōmam petīvērunt et, nē clausīs quidem portīs urbis, in arcem fūgērunt. Tam facile Rōmānī victī sunt ut Gallī mīrantēs prīmum stārent, īnsidiās verentēs. Deinde ad urbem prōgressī sunt. Cum equitēs rettulissent nōn portās urbis clausās, nōn mīlitēs in mūrīs esse, īnsidiās et noctem veritī, inter Rōmam atque flūmen Aniēnem castra posuērunt.

Cum spēs nūlla urbis dēfendendae esset, Rōmānī cōnstituērunt ut iuventūs mīlitāris cum mulieribus ac līberīs in arcem Capitōliumque concēderet. Ibi, armīs et frūmentō collātō, deōs hominēsque et Rōmānum nōmen dēfendere parant. Virginēs Vestālēs sacra pūblica ex urbe portant. Senēs cōnstituunt in urbe morī. Aliōrum pars in agrōs fugiunt,[3] pars urbēs fīnitimās petunt.

Seniōrēs in aedibus[4] suīs adventum hostium obstinātō[5] ad mortem animō exspectābant. Eī quī magistrātūs gesserant, augustissimā veste vestītī in mediō aedium in eburneīs sellīs[6] sēdērunt. Posterō diē Gallī urbem ingressī ad praedam properant. Venerābundī[7] spectābant sedentēs virōs,

---

[1] Rome was not again captured by a foreign foe for 800 years.
[2] *to Rome.*
[3] See p. 91, footnote 5.
[4] *houses.*
[5] *resolved.*
[6] *ivory chairs.*
[7] *full of reverence.*

quī ob vestem et maiestātem gravitātemque ōris simillimī deīs vidēbantur. Cum Gallī, ad eōs velut ad imāginēs versī, stārent, M. Papīrius, ūnus ē senibus, Gallum barbam suam permulcentem[1] scīpiōne eburneō[2] percussit. Ab eō initium caedis ortum est. Cēterī in aedibus suīs interfectī sunt. Post prīncipum caedem nēminī parcitur,[3] dīripiuntur aedificia, iniciuntur ignēs.

Read Guerber, pp. 104–106; Morris, pp. 94–104; Church (*Livy*), Chapter XIII; Haaren and Poland, pp. 86–98.

Fig. 55. Papīrius Gallum Percutit

202. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Cūr Gallī in Italiam vēnērunt? 2. Postquam Rōmānī ad Alliam victī sunt, quae loca petīvērunt? 3. Cūr Gallī nōn eōdem diē Rōmam ingressī sunt? 4. Quō diē ingressī sunt? 5. Quid fēcērunt senēs?

---

[1] *stroking his* (Papirius's) *beard.*

[2] *ivory staff* — part of the insignia of a triumphing general. He was seated, as we might say, in full uniform, wearing all his medals.

[3] See **421.**

203. Vocabulary Drill

adventus	**iniciō**	**nē . . . quidem**
concēdō	**initium**	**posterus**
eques	**morior**	**vereor**

204. Genitive of the Whole

1. **nihil imperī** (line 4), *no power.*
2. **plūrimum terrōris** (line 5), *a great deal of terror.*
3. **pars eōrum** (line 7), *part of them.*
4. **nihil praesidī** (line 8), *no guard.*
5. **in mediō aedium** (line 25), *in the center of the house.*

The genitive of the whole (partitive genitive) *represents the whole to which a part belongs.* It may depend on any noun, pronoun, adjective, or adverb which implies a part of the whole. Ordinarily the construction is the same as in English and causes no trouble (examples 2, 3, 5). At times, where the genitive is used in Latin with such words as **nihil, satis, quid** (examples 1, 4), we prefer in English to use an adjective modifier. But even in English we sometimes use such expressions as *nothing of good.*

With cardinal numerals and **quīdam** the ablative with **dē** or **ex** is preferred to the genitive of the whole: **ūnus ē senibus** (line 30), *one of the old men.*

205. Written Exercises

1. Nothing (of) good is inspired by a great deal of terror. 2. Since the Romans feared the approach of the enemy's horsemen, they fled and left no guard. 3. At the beginning of the danger the others the next day withdrew to the citadel. 4. Of all the Romans the old men alone determined to die in the city.

Fig. 56. Roman Dice

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

206. 8. A Horse Fit for a King[1]

Equus Alexandrī Magnī nōmine Būcephalus fuit. Ēmptus erat talentīs[2] XIII et rēgī Philippō, patrī Alexandrī, dōnātus. Dē hōc equō haec accēpimus. Ubi armātus erat ad proelium, numquam ascendī sē ab ūllō nisi ab Alexandrō passus est. Bellō Indicō Alexander in hostium manum, nōn satis sibi prōvidēns, equum immīsit. Tum equus in latere vulnerātus est. Moriēns tamen ē mediīs hostibus rēgem rettulit atque, ubi eum extrā tēla extulerat, statim concidit et mortuus est. Tum rēx Alexander, obtentā eius bellī victōriā, oppidum in eō locō cōnstituit, idque ob equī honōrēs Būcephalum appellāvit.

Fig. 57. Alexander Magnus

---

[1] Adapted from **Aulus Gellius**, a writer of the second century A.D., who tells many curious and interesting anecdotes. His *Noctes Atticae* or "Attic Nights," from which the above was taken, is a sort of literary scrapbook, written, as he tells us, during the long winter evenings in Attica, Greece, to amuse and instruct his children.

[2] A talent was worth about $1180.

IX

207. The Defeat of the Gauls

Arx Capitōliumque in magnō perīculō fuērunt. Nam Gallī nocte tantō silentiō in summum ēvāsērunt ut nōn custōdēs sōlum fallerent sed nē canēs[1] quidem excitārent. Ānserēs[2] nōn fefellērunt, quōs sacrōs Iūnōnis[3] in summā inopiā cibī Rōmānī tamen nōn occīderant. Quae rēs eīs salūtī fuit; nam clangōre[4] eōrum excitātus est M. Mānlius, quī, armīs raptīs, ad arma cēterōs vocāvit. Eī Gallōs facile dēiēcērunt.

Fig. 58. Canis

Sed posteā nōn sōlum cibus sed etiam spēs dēfēcit. Tum tribūnīs mīlitum negōtium datum ut pācem facerent. Ācta rēs est, et mīlle pondō[5] aurī pretium factum est. Pondera[6] ab Gallīs allāta inīqua et, tribūnō Rōmānō reiciente, additus est ā Gallō ponderī gladius, audītaque vōx Rōmānīs nōn ferenda, "Vae[7] victīs."

---

[1] *dogs.* [2] *geese.*
[3] *to Juno* (genitive with **sacrōs**).
[4] *cackling.*
[5] Used as an indeclinable noun: ***pounds.***
[6] *weights.* [7] *woe.*

Sed dī[1] et hominēs prohibuērunt esse redēmptōs Rōmānōs. Nam nōndum omnī aurō pēnsō, Camillus, quī absēns iterum dictātor creātus erat, vēnit. Gallōs discēdere iubet et eīs imperat ut sē ad proelium expediant. Suōs ferrō, nōn aurō, recipere patriam iubet. Gallī in Rōmānōs currunt sed vincuntur; castra capiuntur; nē nūntius quidem proelī relictus.

Sed nunc plēbs voluit ruīnās Rōmae relinquere et in urbem Veiōs migrāre. Camillus ita verba fēcit et eōs mōvit: "Nihilne tenet vōs haec terra quam mātrem appellāmus? Equidem[2] cum patria in mentem venit, haec omnia occurrunt: collēs campīque et Tiberis et hoc caelum sub quō nātus ēducātusque sum. Nōn sine causā dī hominēsque hunc urbī cōnstituendae locum ēlēgērunt, marī propinquum, regiōnum Italiae medium. Argūmentō[3] est ipsa magnitūdō tam novae urbis. Nōn singulae urbēs, nōn coniūnctī cum Aequīs Volscī, nōn tōta Etrūria bellō vōbīs pār est. Hīc Capitōlium est, in quō locō respōnsum est[4] caput rērum summamque imperī fore.[5] Hīc Vestae ignēs, hīc ancīlia dē caelō dēmissa, hīc omnēs dī propitiī manentibus vōbīs."

Read Guerber, pp. 106–109; Church (*Livy*), Chapter XIV.

208. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quō modō Capitōlium servātum est? 2. Cūr Rōmānī voluērunt pācem facere? 3. Cūr aurum Gallīs nōn datum est? 4. In quā parte Italiae est Rōma? 5. Quod flūmen per Rōmam fluit?

209. Vocabulary Drill

collis	**ēvādō**	**propinquus**
coniungō	**fallō**	**redimō**
dēficiō	**occurrō**	**reiciō**
dēiciō	**pondus**	**sine**

[1] For **deī**. [2] *for my part.* [3] (*serves as*) *proof.*
[4] *i.e.* by an oracle.
[5] Future infinitive of **sum** instead of **futūrum esse.**

210. Dative with Adjectives

Review the adjectives on which a dative depends (**420**). Find all the examples of this construction in the above passage.

211. Dative of Purpose

Review the dative of purpose and the "double" dative (**418, 419**). Find all the examples of this construction in the above passage.

212. Omission of *Sum*

A form of **sum** is often omitted either when it might be used as a copula or in compound tenses of the indicative or infinitive of verbs.

Note the following in the above passage: line 20, **datum (est)**; line 24, **allāta (sunt)**; line 25, **audīta (est)**; line 32, **relīctus (est)**; line 44, **ignēs (sunt)**.

213. Written Exercises

1. What circumstance was a source-of-safety to the Romans? 2. When the Gauls were already near the top (of the) hill, the Romans threw them down. 3. When the Romans had made peace with the Gauls by paying (*fut. pass. part.*) money, Camillus ransomed them, not with gold but with steel. 4. "The gods," said he, "have chosen Rome, to which no city is equal, as a home for themselves."

Fig. 59. Gallus Moriēns

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

214. 9. Good Citizenship[1]

Nec locus tibi ūllus dulcior esse dēbet patriā.[2]

Omnium societātum[3] nūlla est gravior, nūlla cārior quam ea quae cum rē pūblicā est ūnī cuique[4] nostrum. Cārī sunt parentēs, cārī līberī, propinquī, familiārēs, sed omnēs omnium cāritātēs patria ūna continet, prō quā nēmō bonus dubitet[5] mortem petere. Quō[6] est dētestābilior istōrum immānitās[7] quī lacerāvērunt omnī scelere[8] patriam et in eā dēlendā occupātī et sunt et fuērunt.

Est proprium mūnus magistrātūs intellegere sē gerere personam[9] cīvitātis dēbēreque eius dignitātem sustinēre, servāre lēgēs, iūra dīscrībere,[10] ea[11] fideī suae commissa meminisse.

Prīvātum autem oportet aequō et parī iūre cum cīvibus vīvere, tum in rē pūblicā ea velle quae tranquilla et honesta sint;[12] tālem enim solēmus et sentīre bonum cīvem et dīcere.

Sī pecūniam aequam omnibus esse nōn placet, sī ingenia omnium paria esse nōn possunt, iūra certē paria dēbent esse eōrum quī sunt cīvēs in eādem rē pūblicā.

Mēns et animus et cōnsilium et sententia cīvitātis posita est in lēgibus. Ut corpora nostra sine mente, sīc cīvitās sine lēge suīs partibus ūtī nōn potest.

Fundāmentum est iūstitiae fidēs.

---

[1] Adapted from various works of **Cicero**, especially the *De Officiis* (**173**).
[2] Ablative of comparison (**437**).
[3] *associations.*
[4] From **quisque**, *each.* **Nostrum** is from **ego**, not **noster.**
[5] *would hesitate.* [6] *therefore.*
[7] *ferocity.* [8] *crime.*
[9] *represent;* lit., *wear the mask of* (*play the part of*).
[10] *administer justice.*
[11] Neuter plural, object of **meminisse.** It is modified by **commissa.**
[12] Translate as if indicative.

X

215. The Romans and the Latins[1]

T. Quīnctius dictātor contrā Gallōs, quī ad Italiam iterum vēnerant, missus est. Hī trāns Aniēnem flūmen cōnsēderant. Ibi nōbilissimus dē senātōribus, T. Mānlius, prōvocantem[2] Gallum occīdit. Gallī victī sunt. Nōn multō post Tuscī victī sunt et octō mīlia captīvōrum ex hīs in triumphum ducta.

Cum Latīnī, quī ā Rōmānīs superātī erant, mīlitēs dare nōllent, ē Rōmānīs tantum[3] mīlitēs lēctī sunt. Erant LX mīlia armātōrum. Parvīs adhūc[4] Rōmānīs rēbus,[5] magna tamen in rē mīlitārī virtūs erat. Hic exercitus Gallōs vīcit.

Latīnī, quī nōluerant mīlitēs dare, hoc ā Rōmānīs exigere coepērunt, ut ūnus cōnsul ē suō populō, alter ē Rōmānīs creārētur. Quod cum esset negātum, bellum contrā Rōmānōs susceptum est. Latīnī Rōmānīs similēs erant linguā, mōribus, armōrum genere, īnstitūtīs mīlitāribus. Itaque cōnsulēs Rōmānī, T. Mānlius Torquātus (ille quī Gallum occīderat) et P. Decius Mūs, cōnstituērunt cum maximā cūrā pugnāre et imperāvērunt nē quis extrā ōrdinem[6] in hostēs pugnāret.

Forte inter cēterōs quī ad explōrandum dīmissī erant T. Mānlius, cōnsulis fīlius, ad castra hostium ēvāsit. Cum equitem Latīnum vidēret, imperī patris oblītus[7] est et cum hoste pugnāre coepit. Eō victō, ad patrem rediit et dē victōriā eī dīxit. Quod ubi audīvit cōnsul, statim mīlitēs con-

---

[1] The Latins were the non-Roman people of Latium, the country in which Rome was situated. The defeats of the Gauls here mentioned took place in 361 and 349 B.C., that of the Etruscans in 356, that of the Latins in 339.

[2] *who challenged him.* The story is told in **221.**

[3] Adverb: *only.* [4] *up to this time.*

[5] For **rē pūblicā**; ablative absolute.

[6] *in skirmishes.* What literally?

[7] *forgot;* takes the genitive (**imperī**).

vocārī iussit. Tum fīliō, "Quoniam tū," inquit, "neque imperium cōnsulis neque maiestātem patris veritus, contrā ēdictum nostrum extrā ōrdinem cum hoste pugnāvistī et disciplīnam mīlitārem, quā stetit ad hanc diem Rōmāna rēs, solvistī, trīste exemplum sed salūbre[1] posterīs nostrīs erō. Mē quidem et amor līberōrum et virtūs tua movet; sed tū quoque, sī quid in tē nostrī sanguinis est, volēs disciplīnam mīlitārem poenā tuā restituere." Hōc dictō, imperāvit ut fīlius statim morte afficerētur.

Post hoc Latīnī magnā pugnā superātī sunt.

Read Tappan, pp. 43–55; Morris, pp. 108–111; Church (*Livy*), pp. 225–238.

216. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quot bella Rōmānī cum Gallīs gessērunt? 2. Cūr Rōmānī bellum cum Latīnīs gessērunt? 3. Quod aliud bellum Rōmānī gessērunt?

217. Vocabulary Drill

armō	**explōrō**	**negō**
coepī	**imperō**	**quoniam**
cōnsīdō	**iterum**	**quoque**

218. Volitive Substantive Clauses

Review volitive substantive clauses (**469**). Find examples of such clauses in the above passage.

219. Indefinites *Quis, Aliquis,* and *Quīdam*

After **sī, nisi,** and **nē, quis** is used as an indefinite pronoun (*some, any*) in place of **aliquis** (*cf.* above, lines 18 and 31). Review the declension of **quis, aliquis,** and **quīdam** (**389, 390**).

---

[1] *wholesome.*

220. Written Exercises

1. The brave consul ordered his own son to be killed so that he might be a wholesome example to the rest. 2. The consuls had asked that no one fight with the enemy unless ordered.[1] 3. Certain of the soldiers had been sent out to reconnoiter, and the consul's son also had begged to go with them. 4. Since many thousands of armed (men) had encamped near the city, the two consuls had warned their (men) to obey the order.

FIG. 60. ROMAN SOLDIERS ON THE MARCH
(From "Antony and Cleopatra.")

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

221. 10. How T. MANLIUS TORQUATUS EARNED HIS SURNAME[2]

Gallī contrā Rōmānōs pugnābant. Quīdam ex Gallīs quī et vīribus et magnitūdine et virtūte cēterīs praestābat prōcessit et petīvit ut omnēs quiēscerent. Silentiō statim factō, vōce maximā clāmat: "Sī quis mēcum pugnāre vult, prōcēdat." Nēmō audēbat propter magnitūdinem eius atque immānem faciem. Deinde Gallus irrīdēre incipit atque linguam ēicere. Doluit T. Mānlius, mīles Rōmānus, tantum

[1] Use **iubeō**.

[2] Adapted from **Aulus Gellius.** The incident referred to took place in 361 B.C. on the occasion of the second invasion of the Gauls.

dēdecus cīvitātī accidere, ē tantō exercitū nēminem prōcēdere. Prōcessit ipse et contrā Gallum cōnstitit. Gallus, quī duōs magnōs gladiōs habuit, scūtō prōiectō, exspectābat; Mānlius scūtō scūtum percussit[1] atque Gallum dē locō dēiēcit. Dum sē Gallus iterum eōdem modō cōnstituere cōnātur, Mānlius iterum scūtō scūtum percussit atque dē locō hominem iterum dēiēcit. Eō modō sub Gallī gladium successit atque parvō suō gladiō eum interfēcit. Torquem[2] eius dētrāxit eamque sibi in collum impōnit. Quō ex factō ipse posterīque eius Torquātī sunt nōminātī.

Read Church (*Livy*), Chapter XV.

FIG. 61. TORQUĒS GALLICAE

[1] *struck (the Gaul's) shield with his own.*

[2] *collar* of gold, worn by ancient soldiers as a military decoration, like our medals.

XI

222. The Samnites and Pyrrhus[1]

Iam Rōmānī potentēs esse coepērunt. Bellum enim CXXX mīlia passuum ab urbe apud Samnītēs gerēbātur, quī mediī sunt inter Pīcēnum, Campāniam, et Āpūliam. L. Papīrius Cursor dictātor ad id bellum profectus est.[2] Quī cum Rōmam redīret, Q. Fabium Maximum, magistrum equitum,[3] apud exercitum relīquit. Huic imperāvit nē, sē absente,[4] pugnāret. Ille, occāsiōne repertā, fēlīcissimē pugnāvit et Samnītēs dēlēvit. Ob quam rem ā dictātōre damnātus quod, sē vetante, pugnāvisset,[5] magnā grātiā mīlitum et populī līberātus est.

Posteā Samnītēs Rōmānōs, T. Veturiō et Sp. Postumiō cōnsulibus, apud furculās Caudīnās[6] vīcērunt. Pāx tamen ā senātū et populō solūta est, quae cum eīs propter necessitātem facta erat. Posteā Samnītēs victī sunt. Eō tempore Ap. Claudius aquam[7] Appiam indūxit et viam Appiam mūnīvit. Tum bellum cum Samnītibus per annōs XLIX āctum Rōmānī sustulērunt. Neque ūllus hostis fuit intrā Italiam quī Rōmānam virtūtem magis fatīgāverit.[8]

Tum contrā Tarentīnōs, quī in ultimā Italiā sunt, bellum coeptum est, quod lēgātīs Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcissent.[5] Hī ā Pyrrhō, Ēpīrī rēge, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium petēbant. Is ad Italiam vēnit,[9] tumque prīmum Rōmānī cum trāns-

---

[1] The first Samnite war began in 343 B.C., the second in 326, the third in 298. The final subjugation of the Samnites took place in 290 B.C.

[2] 325 B.C.

[3] *master of the horse;* second in command to a dictator.

[4] Ablative absolute: *in his absence.* How literally?

[5] The subjunctive is used in causal clauses with **quod** and **quia** when the reason given is that of some one other than the speaker or writer.

[6] *Caudine Forks,* a mountain pass in Samnium; date: 321 B.C.

[7] *aqueduct;* date: 312 B.C.

[8] *wearied;* subjunctive in a descriptive clause (**474**).

[9] 281 B.C.

marīnō hoste pugnāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōnsul P. Valerius Laevīnus, quī, cum explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra dūcī, eīs ostendī omnem exercitum tumque eōs dīmittī, ut renūntiārent Pyrrhō quae ā Rōmānīs agerentur. Commissā mox pugnā, cum iam Pyrrhus fugeret, elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit. Posteā Pyrrhus omnia ferrō ignīque vāstāvit atque Praeneste vēnit, XVIII mīlia passuum

FIG. 62. AQUEDUCT AT ANTIOCH, PISIDIA

Appius Claudius in a sense was a pioneer in establishing the Roman Empire, for wherever the conquering Romans went they built their fine roads and aqueducts—in far-off Asia as well as in France, Spain, and Africa. (Courtesy of D. M. Robinson.)

ab urbe Rōmā. Lēgātī ad eum dē redimendīs captīvīs missī ab eō cum honōre acceptī sunt. Captīvōs sine pretiō Rōmam mīsit. Cum Pyrrhus Rōmānōrum[1] magnā admīrātiōne tenērētur, lēgātum mīsit ut pācem peteret. Condiciōnēs pācis Rōmānīs nōn placuērunt et eī Pyrrhum ex Italiā excēdere iussērunt. Cum Pyrrhus ā lēgātō quaereret quālem Rōmam comperisset,[2] dīxit sē rēgum patriam vīdisse; tālēs[3]

[1] *for the Romans*, depending on **admīrātiōne.**
[2] *what he found Rome like.* [3] With **quālis:** *such as.*

esse omnēs Rōmānōs quālis ūnus[1] Pyrrhus in Ēpīrō et reliquā Graeciā putārētur.[2]

Paucīs annīs post cōnsul M'. Curius Dentātus exercitum Pyrrhī cecīdit[3] et castra cēpit. Pyrrhus Tarentum fūgit et paulō post occīsus est.

Read Tappan, pp. 55–61; Guerber, pp. 112–121; Morris, pp. 116–125; Morris (*Greek*), pp. 324–333.

223. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis Fabium damnāvit? 2. Cūr? 3. Quid Ap. Claudius fēcit? 4. Cūr Pyrrhus in Italiam vēnit? 5. Quō modō Pyrrhus vīcit? 6. Quid lēgātus Pyrrhī dē Rōmānīs dīxit? 7. Quis Pyrrhum vīcit?

224. Vocabulary Drill

apud	**explōrātor**	**quālis**
comperiō	**ignis**	**renūntiō**
enim	**indūcō**	**reperiō**
	passus	

225. Place to Which

Cum Rōmam redīret (line 4), *When he returned to Rome.*
Praeneste vēnit (line 29), *He came to Praeneste.*
Rōmam mīsit (line 31), *He sent to Rome.*
Pyrrhus Tarentum fūgit (line 40), *Pyrrhus fled to Tarentum.*

Ordinarily place to which is expressed by the accusative with the preposition **ad** or **in.** The preposition is omitted with names of towns and a few other words.

226. Indirect Questions

Review indirect questions (**479**) and find examples of this construction in the above passage.

---

[1] *alone.*
[2] Verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse are in the subjunctive.
[3] 275 B.C.

227. **Written Exercises**

1. Did you learn how Appius brought water many miles to Rome? 2. The leader, on seeing the fire, ordered two of the scouts to find out what things were being done among the enemy. 3. Pyrrhus asked the envoy what-sort-of city Rome was. 4. It was afterwards reported to the Romans that he had fled to Tarentum.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

228. **11. A Lesson in Voting**[1]

Fabricius magnā glōriā vir magnīsque rēbus gestīs fuit. P. Cornēlius Rūfīnus imperātor bonus et fortis mīlitārisque disciplīnae perītus[2] fuit, sed avārus erat. Hunc Fabricius nōn probābat et eī inimīcus ob mōrēs fuit. Sed cum temporibus difficillimīs reī pūblicae cōnsulēs creandī essent et Rūfīnus peteret cōnsulātum competītōrēsque eius nōn essent bellī perītī, summā ope[3] Fabricius labōrāvit ut Rūfīnō cōnsulātus dēferrētur. Eam rem quibusdam mīrantibus, "Mālō," inquit, "ā cīve spoliārī[4] quam ab hoste vēnīre."[5] M. Cicerō refert[6] hoc esse dictum, nōn aliīs, sed ipsī Rūfīnō, cum hic Fabriciō ob opem[7] grātiās ageret.

Hunc Rūfīnum, postquam bis cōnsul et dictātor fuit, cēnsor[8] Fabricius ob lūxuriam ē senātū ēiēcit.

---

[1] Adapted from **Aulus Gellius.** Fabricius was the hero of the war with Pyrrhus, who admired him so much that he offered him part of his kingdom.

[2] Governs the genitive. [3] *effort.*

[4] *to be robbed.*

[5] *to be sold* (from **vēneō**).

[6] *reports.* [7] *help.*

[8] The censor had the right to expel senators who committed offenses or whose manner of living was not in accord with that of the best Roman tradition.

XII

229. The Punic Wars[1]

Prīmō bellō Pūnicō Rōmānī prīmum in marī pugnāvērunt et hostēs vīcērunt. Neque ūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit, quod, invictī in terrā, iam etiam in marī plūrimum poterant. Postquam Sicilia capta est et Corsica Sardiniaque vāstātae sunt, bellum in Āfricam trānslātum est. Victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petīvērunt. Quam cum Rēgulus, dux Rōmānōrum, nōllet nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus dare, victus et captus est. Hic, Rōmam missus, senātuī persuāsit nē pācem cum Poenīs faceret. Carthāginem reversus occīsus est. Tandem cōnsul Catulus profectus est cum CCC nāvibus in Siciliam; Poenī contrā ipsum CCCC parāvērunt. Numquam in marī tantīs cōpiīs pugnātum est.[2] Carthāginiēnsēs superātī sunt. Pāce in omnibus locīs factā, Rōmānī nūllum bellum habuērunt, quod[3] hīs post Rōmam conditam semel tantum, Numā Pompiliō rēge, acciderat.

Fig. 63. Victory Column

Copy of an ancient column celebrating a naval victory.

Bellum Pūnicum secundum Rōmānīs ab Hannibale illātum est. Cum magnō exercitū Alpēs trānsiit. Post complūrēs parvās victōriās Hannibal Rōmānōs ad lacum Trasumennum ex īnsidiīs gravissimē vīcit.

[1] First Punic War, 264–241 B.C.; Second Punic War, 218–201 B.C. These wars made Rome mistress of the ancient world. Carthage was the dominating sea power before the first war. In the second war, the Romans, after being almost entirely overcome, finally triumphed under the leadership of Scipio. The word Punic is derived from **Poenī**, another name for the Carthaginians, who originally came from Phoenicia.

[2] *was a battle fought.*

[3] The whole clause is the antecedent: (*a thing*) *which.*

Rōmae[1] ad prīmum nūntium proelī populus cum magnō terrōre in Forum concurrit. Mulierēs rogāvērunt omnēs quae fortūna exercitūs esset. Tandem praetor, "Pugnā," inquit, "magnā victī sumus." Posterīs diēbus ad portās maior prope multitūdō mulierum quam virōrum stetit, quae aut

Fig. 64. Hannibal Crossing the Alps

suōrum aliquem aut nūntiōs dē eīs exspectābat. Ūnam fēminam in ipsā portā incolumī fīliō subitō occurrentem in complexū[2] eius exspīrāvisse dīcunt; alteram, cui mors fīlī falsō nūntiāta erat, sedentem domī[3] ad prīmum cōnspectum redeuntis fīlī gaudiō mortuam esse dīcunt.

Proximō annō Rōmānī ab Hannibale pulsī etiam maiōrem calamitātem ad Cannās accēpērunt. Multae Italiae cīvitātēs ad Poenōs dēfēcērunt. Nec tamen hoc Rōmānōs

[1] *at Rome;* locative (**452**). [2] *embrace, arms.* [3] *at home;* locative (**452**).

mōvit ut pācis umquam mentiō apud eōs fieret. Servōs mīlitēs[1] fēcērunt, quod[2] numquam ante factum erat. Hannibal trēs modiōs[3] ānulōrum aureōrum Carthāginem mīsit, quōs ex manibus equitum Rōmānōrum mortuōrum dētrāxerat.

Read Tappan, pp. 72–99; Guerber, pp. 121–132; Morris, pp. 126–144; Haaren and Poland, pp. 114–129.

230. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quō bellō Rōmānī prīmum in marī vīcērunt? 2. Cūr haec victōria eīs maximē grāta fuit? 3. Plūrēsne nāvēs in hāc pugnā Carthāginiēnsēs habuērunt? 4. Quis erat dux Carthāginiēnsium secundō bellō?

231. Vocabulary Drill

calamitās	**incolumis**	**prope**
dētrahō	**īnferō**	**subitō**
fēmina	**persuādeō** (*w. dat.*)	**tamen**

232. Ablative of Cause

Review the ablative of cause (**443**). Find one example in the above passage.

233. Written Exercises

1. Regulus, when sent unharmed to Rome, persuaded his country to make war upon the enemy. 2. Not moved by the words of women and friends, he returned to Carthage. 3. You all know how great a loss Rome received the next year. 4. Although she was terrified by reports of the defeat and had withdrawn almost all her troops, nevertheless Rome did not make peace.

---

[1] *They made soldiers (of) the slaves.*
[2] *(a thing) which.* [3] *pecks.*

234. **Word Study: Suffixes**

The suffix **-idus** (English *-id*) is added chiefly to verb stems to form adjectives: **timidus,** *timid.* When the noun suffix **-tās** (English *-ty*) is added, **-idus** becomes **-idi-**: **timiditās,** *timidity.*

The suffix **-īnus** (English *-ine*) is added to noun and adjective stems to form adjectives: **equīnus,** *equine.* When the suffix **-tās** is added, **-īnus** becomes **-īni-**: **vīcīnitās,** *vicinity.*

Exercise. — Define the following and give the Latin words from which they are derived: *fluid, placid, rapid, valid, vivid, feminine, marine, submarine.* Give additional examples of these suffixes in English words.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

235. 12. QUOTATIONS FROM SENECA[1]

1. Hominēs dum docent discunt.
2. Magna rēs est vōcis et silentī tempora nōsse.[2]
3. Maximum remedium īrae mora est.
4. Nōn est in rēbus vitium, sed in ipsō animō.
5. Nōn sum ūnī angulō[3] nātus; patria mea tōtus hic mundus est.
6. Omnis ars imitātiō est nātūrae.
7. Optimum est patī quod ēmendāre nōn possīs.[4]
8. Ōtium sine litterīs mors est.
9. Quī beneficium dedit taceat; nārret quī accēpit.
10. Sī vīs amārī, amā.
11. Ubicumque homō est, ibi beneficī locus est.

---

[1] **Seneca** was the tutor and later the advisor of the emperor Nero (54–68 A.D.). The five years at the beginning of Nero's reign when the latter was still under Seneca's influence were called the "five golden years" of his reign. Seneca wrote many books on philosophy.

[2] For **nōvisse.**

[3] *for one corner alone.*

[4] Translate as if indicative.

XIII

236. The Macedonian Conquest[1]

Post Pūnicum bellum secūtum est Macedonicum contrā Philippum rēgem, quod Rōmānī suscēpērunt ut Graecās cīvitātēs līberārent. T. Quīnctius Flāminīnus contrā Philippum missus rem bene gessit. Corinthum prōcessit ut ibi in lūdīs Isthmiīs[2] condiciōnēs pācis dēferret. Omnēs ad spectāculum cōnsēderant, et praecō,[3] ut mōs erat, in mediūm prōcessit et, tubā silentiō factō, prōnūntiat senātum Rōmānum et Quīnctium imperātōrem iubēre omnēs gentēs Graeciae līberās esse. Audītā vōce praecōnis, vix satis crēdere potest sē quisque bene audīvisse.[4] Tum tantus clāmor est ortus ut facile appārēret nihil omnium bonōrum multitūdinī grātius quam lībertātem esse. Aliī aliīs dīcēbant esse ūnam in terrīs gentem quae suā pecūniā, suō labōre ac perīculō bella gereret[5] prō lībertāte aliōrum, nē quod imperium iniūstum in tōtō orbe terrārum esset.

Duōbus annīs posteā Quīnctius in Italiam profectūrus Graecōs hōc modō monet: "Concordiae cōnsulite. Contrā vōs cōnsentientēs nec rēx quisquam nec tyrannus satis valēbit.[6] Aliēnīs armīs redditam lībertātem vestrā cūrā servāte, ut populus Rōmānus dignīs datam esse lībertātem sciat." Hās velut parentis vōcēs cum audīrent, mānāvērunt[7] omnibus gaudiō lacrimae, ita ut Quīnctium ipsum quoque cōnfunderent dīcentem.

---

[1] War against Philip, 200–197 B.C.; against Perseus 171–168 B.C.

[2] Similar to the Olympic games. They got their name from being held on the Isthmus of Corinth.

[3] Nominative: *announcer.*

[4] *no one could really believe that he had heard aright.*

[5] Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse are in the subjunctive **(480).**

[6] *Cf.* "United we stand; divided we fall."

[7] *flowed for all* (i.e. *from the eyes of all*).

Victā Asiā quoque, Perseus, fīlius Philippī, Rōmānīs bellum intulit. Eum L. Aemilius Paulus ad Pydnam vīcit, XX mīlibus peditum eius occīsīs, XI mīlibus captīs. Rōmānōrum centum mīlitēs āmissī sunt.

In triumphō nōn Perseus sōlum documentum hūmānōrum cāsuum fuit, ductus per urbem in vinculīs ante currum victōris ducis, sed etiam victor Paulus. Nam ex quattuor fīliīs duōs in adoptiōnem aliīs familiīs dederat, Q. Maximum et P. Scīpiōnem; duōs sōlōs, hērēdēs nōminis, sacrōrum, familiaeque, retinuerat. Ex hīs minor, XII annōs nātus, quīnque diēs ante triumphum, maior, XIV annōrum, trēs diēs post triumphum mortuus est.

Read Tappan, pp. 99–102; Guerber, pp. 137–139; Guerber (*Greek*), pp. 280–282.

237. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Cūr bellum contrā Philippum susceptum est? 2. Cūr Quīnctius Corinthum iit? 3. Quō proeliō Perseus victus est? 4. Quis erat Perseus? 5. Quot fīliōs habuit Paulus post triumphum?

238. Vocabulary Drill

cupiō	**quisquam**	**sequor**
hūmānus	**quisque**	**victor**
pedes	**reddō**	**vix**

239. *Quisque* and *Quisquam*

Learn the declension of **quisque** and **quisquam** (**390**). Review that of **quis, aliquis,** and **quīdam** (**389, 390**).

Quisque is usually placed after a pronoun or a superlative adjective.

Quisquam is stronger than **aliquis** and is usually found in sentences containing or implying a negative. It is often best translated *any at all.*

240. Written Exercises

1. The messenger had spoken, and not a single one could believe his words. 2. "What did he say?" each one was asking himself. Some could hardly speak on account of their tears. 3. The Roman infantry (as) victors restored to the Greek states their freedom. 4. The victor himself was a better proof of human misfortunes than any of the captives following the triumphal chariot.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

241. 13. Cato and the Women

Inter bellōrum magnōrum cūrās intercessit rēs parva sed quae[1] in magnum certāmen excesserit.[2] In mediō Pūnicī bellī lēx Oppia lāta erat nē qua mulier plūs quam sēmunciam[3] aurī habēret nec veste versicolōrī ūterētur nec vehiculō in urbe veherētur. Post bellum mulierēs voluērunt hanc lēgem abrogārī. Nec auctōritāte nec imperiō virōrum continērī poterant; omnēs viās urbis obsidēbant; etiam audēbant adīre cōnsulēs. Sed cōnsul, M. Porcius Catō, haec verba fēcit: "Sī in suā quisque uxōre, cīvēs, iūs virī retinēre īnstituisset,[4] minus negōtī cum omnibus fēminīs habērēmus.[5] Quia singulās nōn continuimus, omnēs timēmus. Maiōrēs nostrī voluērunt fēminās agere nūllam rem, nē prīvātam quidem, sine parentibus vel frātribus vel virīs; nōs, sī deīs placet, iam etiam rem pūblicam capere eās patimur. Hāc rē expugnātā, quid nōn temptābunt? Sī eās aequās virīs esse patiēminī, tolerābilēs vōbīs eās futūrās esse crēditis? Simul ac[6] parēs esse coeperint, superiōrēs erunt. Nūlla lēx

---

[1] (*one*) *which.*
[2] Translate as if indicative: *developed into.*
[3] *half an ounce.*
[4] *had begun to hold on to the rights of the husband.*
[5] *we should have.* [6] *as soon as* (with **simul**).

satis commoda omnibus est; id modo[1] quaeritur, sī maiōrī partī prōsit."[2] Tum ūnus ex tribūnīs contrā lēgem locūtus est, et lēx abrogāta est. Mulierēs vīcerant.

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 135–140.

FIG. 65. A STREET IN ANCIENT ROME
(From "Messalina.")

[1] Adverb: *only.* [2] *is beneficial;* from **prōsum.**

XIV

242. A Patriot Speaks

"Ego, Sp. Ligustīnus, ex Sabīnīs sum ortus. Pater mihi iūgerum[1] agrī relīquit et parvum tugurium[2] in quō nātus ēducātusque sum; nunc ibi habitō. Cum prīmum in[3] aetātem vēnī, pater mihi uxōrem frātris suī fīliam dedit,[4] quae sēcum nihil attulit praeter lībertātem pudīcitiamque.[5] Sex fīliōs, duās fīliās habēmus, utrāsque iam nūptās; fīliī quattuor togās virīlēs habent, duo praetextātī[6] sunt. Mīles sum factus P. Sulpiciō C. Aurēliō cōnsulibus. In eō exercitū quī in Macedoniam est trānsportātus biennium mīles fuī contrā Philippum rēgem; tertiō annō propter virtūtem mihi T. Quīnctius Flāminīnus decimum ōrdinem hastātum[7] tribuit. Victō Philippō, cum in Italiam reportātī ac dīmissī essēmus, statim mīles voluntārius cum M. Porciō cōnsule in Hispāniam sum profectus. Nēmō omnium imperātōrum ācrior virtūtis iūdex fuit. Hic mē imperātor dignum iūdicāvit cui prīmum ōrdinem hastātum priōris centuriae tribueret.[8] Iterum voluntārius mīles factus sum in eō exercitū quī contrā Antiochum rēgem est missus. Expulsō rēge Antiochō, reportātī sumus in Italiam; et deinde bis stīpendia fēcī.[9] Bis deinde in Hispāniā mīles fuī. Ā Flaccō, inter cēterōs quōs virtūtis causā sēcum ex prōvinciā ad triumphum dēdūcēbat, dēductus sum. Ā Ti. Gracchō rogātus in prō-

---

[1] *acre.* [2] *cottage.*

[3] The English idiom calls for a different preposition.

[4] How was the speaker related to the woman he married.

[5] *modesty.*

[6] *wear the toga praetexta*, i.e. *are under age.*

[7] *i.e.* made him leader of a squad of **hastātī** (*spearmen*), who fought in the front ranks.

[8] In Latin a subjunctive relative clause is used after **dignus**; in English, an infinitive: *worthy to assign to me* (**cui**).

[9] *I served in the army.* What literally?

vinciam iī. Quater[1] intrā paucōs annōs prīmum pīlum dūxī; quater et trīciēns[2] propter virtūtem dōnātus[3] ab imperātōribus sum; sex cīvicās[4] corōnās accēpī. XXII stīpendia annua in exercitū fēcī et nātus sum annōs L. Quattuor mīlitēs prō mē ūnō vōbīs dare possum. Sed haec prō causā meā dicta accipite; ipse mē, quoad quisquam mē idōneum mīlitem iūdicābit, numquam sum excūsātūrus. Nē quis mē virtūte in exercitū superet dabō operam.[5] Semper ita fēcisse mē[6] et imperātōrēs meī et eī quī mēcum stīpendia fēcērunt testēs sunt."

243. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quot līberōs habuit Ligustīnus? 2. Contrā quōs rēgēs pugnāvit? 3. In quibus terrīs pugnāvit? 4. Quī erant imperātōrēs eius? 5. Quī imperātor optimus iūdex virtūtis erat?

244. Vocabulary Drill

experior	**prōvincia**	**testis**
idōneus	**stīpendium**	**tribuō**
praeter		**uterque**

245. Written Exercises

1. After making many campaigns in the provinces, I have nothing except family and friends. 2. Do you ask how many generals assigned me first rank? 3. Is anyone a better witness than he who has tested my courage himself? 4. I am going to make other campaigns if anyone judges me fit.

---

[1] *four times.* [2] *thirty times.* [3] *rewarded.*

[4] The "civic" crown or wreath was given as a reward for saving the life of a Roman citizen. In general wreaths of various kinds served the purpose of our medals and other decorations.

[5] *I shall see to it;* the **nē** clause (volitive substantive clause, **469**) depends on it.

[6] *that I have always done so;* depends on **testēs sunt.**

246. **Word Stories**

There are many interesting derivatives of **sequor.** From it was derived **secundus,** English "second," whose first meaning then is *following.* Its use as a measure of time arose thus: **hōra** means *hour;* **hōra minūta** means a *diminished hour,* or "minute" (from **minuō,** *make less,* which comes in turn from **minus**); **hōra minūta secunda** means a *second degree minute,* or smaller division of a minute. The "sequence" of tenses refers to the way one verb *follows* another in the use of a tense. A "suit" of clothes is one in which the various pieces *follow* or match one another. A "suite" of rooms consists of several rooms *following* one another, *i.e.* one after the other. A "suitor" is one who *goes after* something.

Show how the original meaning may be traced in a number of derivatives of **dūcō.**

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

247. 14. Quotations from Cicero

1. Aliae nātiōnēs servitūtem patī possunt; populī Rōmānī rēs est propria lībertās.

2. Cavēte, patrēs cōnscrīptī, nē spē praesentis pācis perpetuam pācem āmittātis.

3. Cēdant arma togae.[1]

4. Cōnsuētūdinis magna vīs est.

5. Ego enim sīc exīstimō, in summō imperātōre quattuor hās rēs inesse oportēre, scientiam reī mīlitāris, virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlīcitātem.

6. Facile prīnceps.

7. Hominēs enim ad deōs nūllā rē propius accēdunt quam salūtem hominibus dandō.[2]

---

[1] Here represents *civil* life, as contrasted with *military.*

[2] Ablative; same construction as **rē.**

8. Maximē admīrantur eum quī pecūniā nōn movētur.
9. Nec superstitiōne tollendā religiō tollitur.
10. Ō tempora, Ō mōrēs!
11. Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur.
12. Quae domus tam stabilis, quae tam firma cīvitās est quae[1] nōn odiīs atque discidiīs[2] funditus[3] possit ēvertī?
13. Suum cuique.

International

FIG. 66. ROMAN HARBOR

Uncovered in 1924 at Leptis Magna, Northern Africa. The sea has receded at this point, leaving the stone docks buried in the sand.

---

[1] A relative clause of result; ut might have been used.
[2] *quarrels.* [3] *completely.*

XV

248. Wars in the South, East, West, and North

M. Porcius Catō semper in senātū dīcēbat, "Dēlenda est Carthāgō." Itaque tertium bellum contrā Carthāginem susceptum est.[1] Scīpiō, nepōs[2] Scīpiōnis Āfricānī illīus quī Hannibalem vīcit, prīmum tribūnus erat. Sed ita fortis erat ut cōnsul esset factus et contrā Carthāginem missus. Eam cēpit ac dēlēvit.

Fig. 67. Hannibal

Eōdem annō Corinthus, nōbilissima Graeciae urbs, capta est propter iniūriam lēgātōrum Rōmānōrum.

Posteā Scīpiō Numantiam, quae urbs in Hispāniā fuit, missus est. Haec urbs (bis) Rōmānōs superāverat. Scīpiō prīmum multās Hispāniae cīvitātēs partim cēpit, partim in dēditiōnem accēpit, tum ipsam Numantiam diū obsessam fame cōnfēcit et expugnāvit.[3]

Eōdem tempore Attalus, rēx Asiae,[4] mortuus est hērēdemque populum Rōmānum relīquit. Ita imperiō Rōmānō Asia accessit.

Posteā Iugurthae, Numidārum rēgī, bellum īllātum est,[5] quod amīcōs populī Rōmānī interfēcerat. Missus contrā eum Calpurnius Bēstia, corruptus rēgis pecūniā, pācem cum eō turpissimam fēcit, quae ā senātū nōn probāta est. Tum missus est Q. Caecilius Metellus cōnsul. Is exercitum ā prīōribus ducibus corruptum magnā sevēritāte ad disciplīnam

[1] 149–146 B.C. [2] *grandson.* [3] 133 B.C.
[4] *i.e.* Asia Minor. [5] 111–106 B.C.

Rōmānam redūxit. Iugurtham variīs proeliīs vīcit. Cum iam fīnem bellō positūrus esset, C. Marius eī successit. Is Iugurtham et Bocchum, Maurētāniae rēgem, quī auxilium Iugurthae ferre coeperat, superāvit.

Dum bellum in Numidiā contrā Iugurtham geritur, Rōmānī cōnsulēs ā Cimbrīs et Teutonibus et Tigurīnīs et Ambrōnibus, quae[1] erant Germānōrum et Gallōrum gentēs, victī sunt. Timor Rōmae[2] magnus fuit, quantus (vix) erat Hannibalis tempore, nē[3] iterum Gallī Rōmam venīrent. Tum Marius contrā eōs missus est et eōs vīcit. Alterō proeliō ā Mariō et Q. Lutātiō Catulō CXL mīlia aut in pugnā aut in fugā caesa sunt, LX mīlia capta. Rōmānī mīlitēs ex utrīusque cōnsulis exercitū CCC occīsī sunt.[4]

Kadel & Herbert

FIG. 68. CARTHAGINIAN TOMBS

Excavations in 1923–1924 revealed rock tombs of the ancient Carthaginians. Among other objects toys and milk bottles were found.

Read Tappan, Chapters VII–VIII; Guerber, Chapter XLVIII; Morris, pp. 158–164, 173–179; Haaren and Poland, Chapters XV–XVI.

---

[1] Attracted into the gender of **gentēs**.
[2] *at Rome* (**452**). [3] *lest*. [4] 101 B.C.

249. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis Carthāginem dēlēvit? 2. Quam alteram urbem cēpit? 3. Quis erat rēx Numidiae? 4. Maurētāniae? 5. Asiae? 6. Quō modō Iugurtha contrā Rōmānōs pugnāvit? 7. Quis eum vīcit? 8. Quis Cimbrōs vīcit?

FIG. 69. ARCH OF TRAJAN AT TIMGAD, NORTHERN AFRICA

250. Words Easily Confused

Look up and distinguish carefully the following sets of words which are somewhat similar in pronunciation or spelling:

alius, alter, altus	**eques, equus**	**mora, mors, mōs**
audeō, audiō	**fāma, famēs**	**morior, moror**
cadō, caedō, cēdō	**gēns, genūs**	**nē, -ne**
cīvis, cīvitās	**liber, līber, līberī**	**pēs, pedes**
dīcō, dūcō		**reddō, redeō**

251. Written Exercises

1. The Romans sent their best and bravest general to destroy Carthage (*express in three ways*). 2. Did you read why war was waged against Jugurtha? 3. Such was the discipline of the Roman army that it defeated this king. 4. When the Romans had hardly finished this war, they had to conquer certain tribes of the Germans and Gauls.

252. Radio Terms from the Latin

Many radio terms are derived from the Latin. Note the following:

alternating (**alter**)
amplifier (**amplius, faciō**)
apparatus (**parō**)
audion (**audiō**)
capacity (**capiō**)
circuit (**circum, eō**)
concurrent (**currō**)
conductor (**dūcō**)
dial (**diēs**)
emit (**mittō**)
induction (**dūcō**)
insulation (**īnsula**)
magna vox
medium (**medius**)
negative (**negō**)
neutralize (**neuter**)
occurrent (**currō**)
pulsating (**pellō**)
repellent (**pellō**)
terminal (**terminus**)
transformer (**fōrma**)
transmitter (**mittō**)
variometer (**varius**)

What other radio terms derived from the Latin can you find?

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

253. 15. Damon and Pythias[1]

Cum Dionȳsius, rēx Syrācūsārum, Pythiam philosophum interficere vellet, hic ā Dionȳsiō petīvit ut sibi licēret domum proficīscī rērum suārum dispōnendārum causā. Amīcus eius Dāmōn erat. Dāmōn et Pythias tantam inter sē amīcitiam

[1] Adapted from **Valerius Maximus**, a writer of the first century A.D., who made a collection of famous stories.

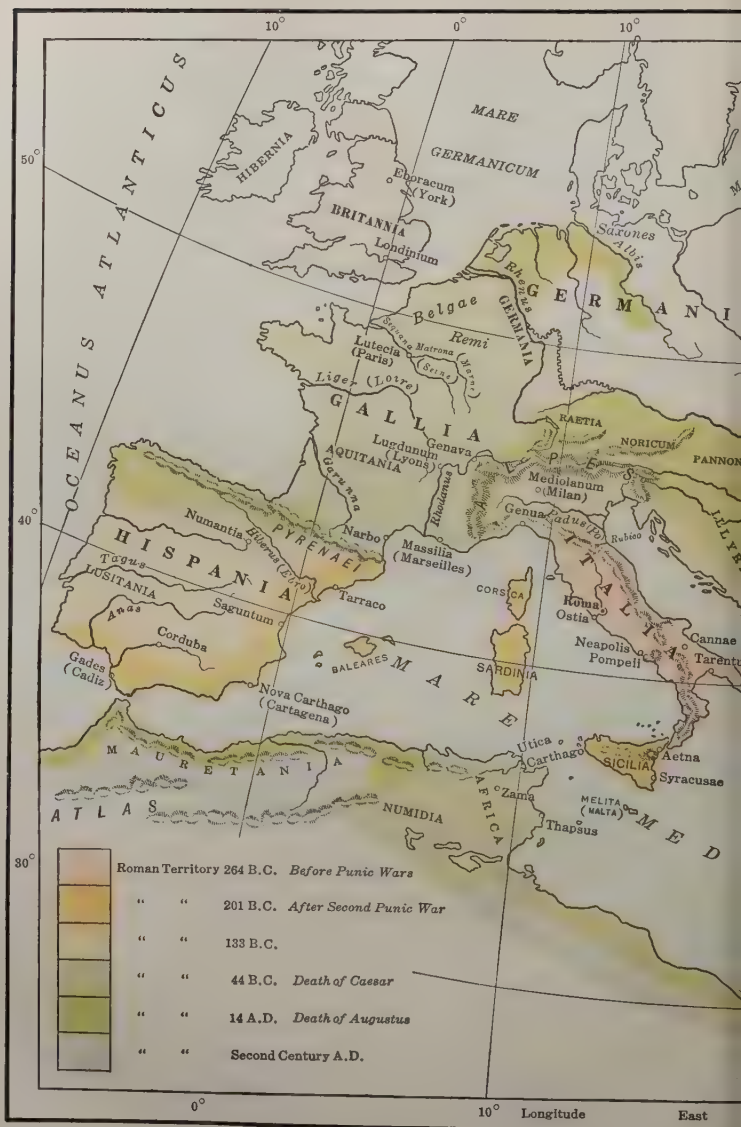
iūnxērunt ut Dāmōn sē vadem[1] prō reditū alterius rēgī dare nōn dubitāret. Appropinquante cōnstitūtō diē nec illō redeunte, ūnus quisque stultitiam[2] Dāmōnis damnāvit. At is nihil sē dē amīcī fidē timēre dīcēbat. Hōrā cōnstitūtā Pythias vēnit. Admīrātus utrīusque animum Dionȳsius supplicium remīsit et eōs rogāvit ut sē[3] socium amīcitiae reciperent.

FIG. 70. LOOKING TOWARD THE FORUM

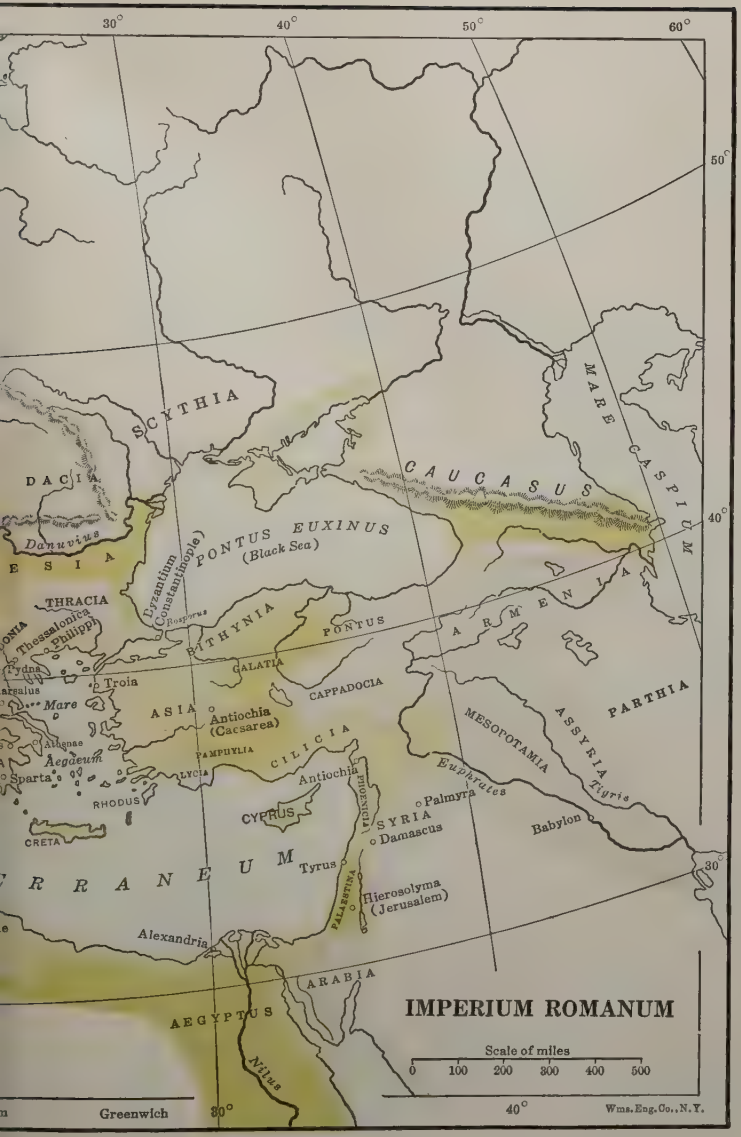
The view is from the Colosseum. In the foreground is the core of a large fountain. At the right are the remains of the temple of "Venus and Rome," part of which was later used for a church. The arch of Titus is at the left.

---

[1] (*as*) *bail.* [2] *stupidity.* [3] *i.e.* Dionysius.



OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
MARE GERMANICUM
HIBERNIA
BRITANNIA
Eboracum (York)
Londinium
Saxones
Albis
Rhenus
GERMANIA
Belgae
Remi
Sequana
Matrona (Marne)
Seine
Lutecia (Paris)
Liger (Loire)
GALLIA
Lugdunum (Lyons)
Genava
AQUITANIA
Garunna
Rhodanus
RAETIA
NORICUM
PANNON
Mediolanum (Milan)
Genua
Padus (Po)
Rubico
ITALIA
Roma
Ostia
Neapolis
Pompeii
Cannae
Tarentu
Numantia
Hiberus (Ebro)
PYRENAEI
Narbo
Massilia (Marseilles)
HISPANIA
Tagus
LUSITANIA
Anas
Saguntum
Tarraco
CORSICA
Corduba
Gades (Cadiz)
BALEARES
MARE
SARDINIA
Nova Carthago (Cartagena)
MAURETANIA
Utica
Carthago
SICILIA
Aetna
Syracusae
ATLAS
NUMIDIA
AFRICA
Zama
MELITA (MALTA)
Thapsus
MED
Roman Territory 264 B.C. Before Punic Wars
" " 201 B.C. After Second Punic War
" " 133 B.C.
" " 44 B.C. Death of Caesar
" " 14 A.D. Death of Augustus
" " Second Century A.D.
10°
0°
10°
50°
40°
30°
0°
10°
Longitude
East


30°
40°
50°
60°
50°
40°
30°
SCYTHIA
MARE CASPIUM
CAUCASUS
DACIA
Danuvius
PONTUS EUXINUS
(Black Sea)
ARMENIA
THRACIA
Byzantium
(Constantinople)
Bosporus
BITHYNIA
PONTUS
Thessalonica
Philippi
Troia
GALATIA
CAPPADOCIA
ASIA
Antiochia
(Cacsarea)
PARTHIA
MESOPOTAMIA
ASSYRIA
Tigris
Euphrates
Mare
Aegeum
PAMPHYLIA
CILICIA
Antiochia
Sparta
LYCIA
RHODUS
CYPRUS
PHOENICIA
SYRIA
Palmyra
Damascus
Babylon
CRETA
Tyrus
PALAESTINA
Hierosolyma
(Jerusalem)
Alexandria
ARABIA
AEGYPTUS
Nilus
IMPERIUM ROMANUM
Scale of miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
Greenwich
Wms. Eag. Co., N.Y.

XVI

254. Pompey, Cicero, and Caesar[1]

Bellum cīvīle inter Marium et Sullam eōdem annō commōtum est quō etiam Mithridāticum bellum. Postquam Marius fūgit, ad Asiam profectus Sulla Mithridātem vīcit, et posteā Lūcullus quoque eum superāvit.

Dum haec geruntur, pīrātae omnia maria īnfēsta[2] reddidērunt ita ut Rōmānīs, tōtō orbe[3] terrārum victōribus, sōla nāvigātiō tūta nōn esset. Quārē id bellum Cn. Pompeiō dēcrētum est. Quod intrā paucōs mēnsēs magnā fēlīcitāte et celeritāte cōnfēcit et Rōmānōs hōc timōre līberāvit. Etiam Mithridātem vīcit, quī cum uxōre fūgit et duōbus amīcīs. Uxor, tōnsīs[4] capillīs, equō sē et armīs assuēfēcerat, ut labōribus et perīculīs eius interesset. Neque multō post Mithridātēs venēnum[5] hausit. Rēgnāvit annōs LX, vīxit LXXII, contrā Rōmānōs bellum gessit XXV.

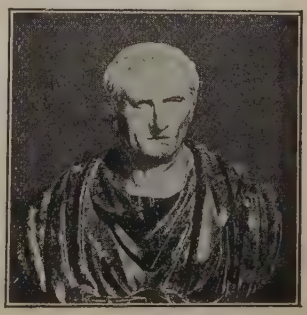


Fig. 71. Cicero

M. Tulliō Cicerōne ōrātōre et C. Antōniō cōnsulibus, L. Sergius Catilīna, nōbilissimī generis vir, ad dēlendam patriam coniūrāvit cum quibusdam clārīs quidem, sed audācibus virīs. Ā Cicerōne urbe expulsus est. Sociī eius comprehēnsī occīsī sunt. Ab Antōniō, alterō cōnsule, Catilīna ipse victus proeliō est et interfectus.

C. Iūlius Caesar, quī posteā imperāvit, cum L. Bibulō cōnsul est factus. Dēcrēta est eī Gallia et Īllyricum cum

---

[1] Mithridatic Wars 88–63 B.C.; conspiracy of Catiline, 63 B.C.; Caesar in Gaul, 58–50 B.C.

[2] *unsafe.* [3] See **446.** [4] *cut.* [5] *poison.*

legiōnibus decem. Is prīmum vīcit Helvētiōs, deinde (vincendō) per bella gravissima ad Ōceanum Britannicum prōcessit. Annīs autem novem redēgit in potestātem populī Rōmānī ferē omnem Galliam quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum, et Ōceanum est. (Britannīs mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cognitum erat. Eōs victōs, obsidibus acceptīs, stīpendium pendere coēgit. Germānōs trāns Rhēnum aggressus proeliīs vīcit. Inter tot victōriās bīs male pugnāvit, apud Arvernōs semel praesēns, et absēns semel. Nam lēgātī eius duo per īnsidiās caesī sunt.)

Read Haaren and Poland, Chapters XX–XXII; Morris, pp. 204–207; Guerber, Chapters LX–LXII; Tappan, Chapter XI; Tappan (*Heroes*), Chapters XIII–XIV.

255. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quī ducēs Rōmānī Mithridātem vīcērunt? 2. Quō modō Mithridātēs mortuus est? 3. Catilīna? 4. Quot annōs Caesar contrā Gallōs pugnāvit? 5. Quās aliās gentēs Caesar vīcit?

256. Vocabulary Drill

aggredior	**hauriō**	**legiō**
comprehendō		**obses**

257. *Etiam* and *Quoque; Quidem*

Distinguish carefully the following words: **etiam** and **quoque** both mean *also*, but **etiam** generally precedes the word it emphasizes, **quoque** always follows. The same is generally true of English *even*, like **etiam**, and *too*, like **quoque**. **Quidem** means *certainly, to be sure*, and follows the word it emphasizes. **Nē . . . quidem** means *not even*, and the emphatic word is placed between **nē** and **quidem**. **Quidem** alone never means *even*, nor is **nē . . . etiam** ever used for *not even*.

258. Ablative of Separation

Timōre līberāvit (line 10), *He freed from fear.*
Urbe expulsus est (line 23), *He was driven out of the city.*

Separation is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab, dē,** or **ex.** But with some verbs, such as **excēdō** and **līberō,** the preposition is regularly omitted; with other words it is occasionally omitted.

259. Ablative of Measure of Difference

Review the ablative of measure of difference (**444**) and find one example in the above passage.

260. Written Exercises

1. While these things were going on,[1] civil war also drained the strength of the Roman people. 2. A few years later not even the sea was safe for Romans although their legions had conquered the earth. 3. Pompey freed the seas from this danger, and Cicero drove Catiline from Rome after seizing his accomplices. 4. Having conquered Gaul, Caesar also attacked the Britons, who were much braver than the Gauls, and forced them to give hostages.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

261. 16. The "Hanging Tree"[2]

Homō quīdam flēns dīxit omnibus vīcīnīs suīs: "Heu, heu![3] Habeō in hortō[4] meō arborem īnfēlīcem, in quā uxor

---

[1] Use the present tense.

[2] Adapted from the *Gesta Romanorum*, a collection of curious stories, some gathered from ancient sources. The collection was probably made about the fourteenth century in England. Most of these stories have fanciful "morals" attached to them. Shakespeare and other modern writers made use of this collection. The present story is also told by Cicero.

[3] *alas!* [4] *garden.*

mea prīma sē suspendit, posteā secunda, nunc tertia, et dolōre afficior." Ūnus ex vīcīnīs, "Mīror," inquit, "tē in tantīs successibus lacrimās ēmīsisse. Dā mihi, rogō tē, trēs surculōs[1] illīus arboris, quod volō hōs inter vīcīnōs dīvidere ut habeāmus arborēs ad uxōrēs nostrās suspendendās."

Fig. 72. A Roman Derrick

[1] *sprouts.*

XVII

262. Civil War

Postquam M. Licinius Crassus ā Parthīs victus et interfectus est, bellum cīvīle successit, quō praeter calamitātēs quae in proeliīs accidērunt etiam populī Rōmānī fortūna mūtāta est. Caesar enim rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit poscere alterum cōnsulātum. Mārcellus cōnsul, Bibulus, Pompeius, Catō nōn probāvērunt. Caesar iussus est, dīmissō exercitū, ad urbem redīre. Propter quam iniūriam ab Arīminō contrā patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōnsulēs cum Pompeiō senātusque omnis ex urbe fūgit et in Graeciam trānsiit et bellum parāvit.

Caesar urbem ingressus dictātōrem sē fēcit. Deinde in Graeciam trānsiit et contrā Pompeium pugnāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est, ēvāsit tamen, quod, nocte intercēdente, Pompeius sequī nōluit, dīxitque Caesar Pompeium nōn scīre[1] vincere et illō diē tantum[2] sē potuisse superārī.

Deinde in Thessaliā ad Pharsālum pugnāvērunt. Numquam ante maiōrēs Rōmānae cōpiae in ūnum locum convēnerant neque meliōrēs ducēs habuerant, tōtum orbem terrārum facile superātūrae,[3] sī contrā barbarōs dūcerentur.[4] Ad extrēmum Pompeius victus est et Alexandrīam petīvit ut ā rēge Aegyptī auxilia acciperet. Sed rēx occīdit Pompeium et caput eius ad Caesarem mīsit. Quō cōnspectō, Caesar etiam lacrimās fūdisse dīcitur, tantī virī vidēns caput et generī[5] quondam suī. Caesar rēgnum Aegyptī Cleopātrae dedit.

Caesar, bellīs cīvīlibus in tōtō orbe terrārum perfectīs,

---

[1] *know how* (with infinitive). [2] *only.*

[3] Modifies **cōpiae**: (*which*) *would subdue.*

[4] *if they were led.*

[5] *son-in-law* (genitive of **gener**); Pompey had married Caesar's daughter Julia in 60 B.C. After her death in 54 B.C. Caesar and Pompey drifted apart.

Rōmam rediit. Agere coepit contrā cōnsuētūdinem Rōmānae lībertātis. Cum honorēs ex[1] suā voluntāte tribueret quī ā populō anteā dēferēbantur nec senātuī ad sē venientī assurgeret[2] aliaque rēgia[3] faceret, coniūrātum est in eum ā LX vel amplius senātōribus equitibusque Rōmānīs. Prīncipēs fuērunt duo Brūtī, ex genere eius Brūtī quī prīmus cōnsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat, et C. Cassius et Servīlius Casca. Itaque Caesar, cum Īdibus Mārtiīs[4] in senātum vēnisset, XXIII vulneribus acceptīs, mortuus est.

Read Tappan, Chapter XII; Guerber, Chapters LXIII-LXV; Morris, pp. 208–226.

263. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Cūr Caesar contrā patriam cum exercitū pugnāvit? 2. Ubi Pompeius victus est? 3. Ubi occīsus est? 4. Cūr in Caesarem posteā coniūrātum est? 5. Quō diē et quō in locō occīsus est?

264. Vocabulary Drill

amplius	**fundō**	**mūtō**
barbarus	**intercēdō**	**voluntās**

265. Written Exercises

1. Do you think that Caesar fought against his country of (**ex**) his own accord? 2. You all read in what way civil war occurred between Caesar and Pompey. 3. At that time Rome was able to rout the barbarians with her legions but her luck had changed (*passive*). 4. Caesar had not driven his personal-enemies from the city, and sixty or more of these later killed him.

---

[1] *in accordance with.*

[2] *rose up to, i.e.* he did not rise when the senators entered the room.

[3] *royal (kinglike) things.*

[4] *the Ides of March* (March 15).

266. Word Study: Spelling

In English, after the prefix *ex-*, a root word beginning with *s* drops the *s*:

Latin	English
ex-spectō	*ex-pect*
ex-sequor	*ex-ecute*
ex-sistō	*ex-ist*
ex-spīrō	*ex-pire*
ex-stō	*ex-tant*
ex-stinguō	*ex-tinguish*

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

267. 17. A Medieval Version of the Story of Caesar[1]

Erat quondam prīnceps Rōmānōrum nōmine Pompeius. Hic dūxerat[2] fīliam cuiusdam nōbilis, quī Caesar vocābātur. Hī duo cōnstituērunt ut tōtum orbem terrārum sub suum imperium redigerent. Pompeius mīsit Caesarem ad expugnanda loca dīversa, cōnstituitque tempus redeundī sub spatiō quīnque annōrum. Caesar autem exercitum collēgit et ad illās partēs prōcessit. Et inveniēns hominēs bellicōsōs, quōs nōn poterat in cōnstitūtō terminō superāre, māluit Pompeium offendere quam bellum dīmittere. Pompeius interdīxit[3] Caesarī cīvitātem Rōmānam. Caesar vērō, perfectō bellō, Rōmam iter fēcit, vēnit per quoddam flūmen cum exercitū suō, quod quidem flūmen vocābātur Rubicō, et ibi appāruit eī quaedam imāgō magna stāns in mediā aquā et loquēbātur eī dīcēns: "Caesar, sī venīs prō pāce Rōmānā,

[1] Adapted from the *Gesta Romanorum*. Only part of the allegorical moral is given. Note how much more remote and strange Caesar seemed to the writer than he does to us. We are to-day nearer the spirit of antiquity than the Middle Ages were.

[2] *had married.*

[3] *debarred from.*

licet tibi intrāre." Cui Caesar respondit: "Semper parātus sum omnēs labōrēs sustinēre prō honōre et commodō cīvitātis Rōmānae." Hīs dictīs, imāgō ē cōnspectū fūgit. Post haec statim Caesar flūmen trānsiit. Ab illō diē nōn cessāvit Pompeium prōsequī.

Carissimī,[1] per illum senem Pompeium intellegō Deum, quī semper fuit ab initiō et erit sine fīne. Per Caesarem intellegō Adam, quī fuit prīnceps omnium hominum. Deus igitur volēns probāre Adam, posuit eum in paradīsum, ut servāret illum. Quī statim ūnum praeceptum quod Deus eī dederat violābat; propter quod Deus eum expulit dē paradīsō.

FIG. 73. SERVIAN WALL, ROME

Remains of an early Roman wall, which according to ancient tradition was built by King Servius Tullius, are still to be seen in various parts of Rome.

[1] Vocative; addressed to the readers.

XVIII

268. Pax Romana[1]

Octāviānus, fīlius sorōris Caesaris, ā Caesare adoptātus erat. Hic est quī posteā Augustus est dictus. Post mortem Caesaris Octāviānō, adulēscentī xx annōrum, cōnsulātus datur. Cum M. Antōniō contrā Brūtum et Cassium, quī Caesarem interfēcerant, profectus est. Ad Philippōs, Macedoniae urbem, pugnātum est. Duōbus proeliīs Brūtus et Cassius victī et interfectī sunt. Ac sīc dīvīsa est rēs pūblica ut Augustus Hispāniās, Galliās, et Italiam tenēret, Antōnius Asiam, Pontum, Orientem.

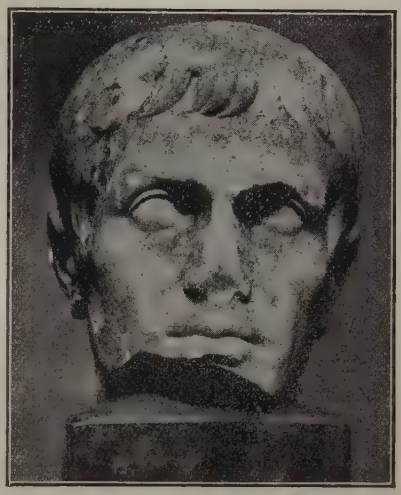


Fig. 74. Augustus

Found in 1925 imbedded in the hard clay bottom of the Hudson River. How it got there is a mystery. Whether it is modern or ancient, as is claimed, it is a good likeness.

Antōnius, repudiātā[2] sorōre Caesaris Augustī, Cleopātram, rēgīnam Aegyptī, dūxit[3] uxōrem. Tum magnum bellum cīvīle commōvit, cōgente uxōre Cleopātrā, quae cupīvit etiam in urbe[4] rēgnāre. Victus est ab Augustō nāvālī pugnā clārā apud Actium, quī locus in Ēpīrō est, ex quā fūgit in Aegyptum et, dēspērātīs suīs rēbus, ipse sē occīdit. Cleopātra sibi aspidem[5] admīsit et venēnō eius exstīncta est. Aegyptus ab Augustō imperiō Rōmānō adiecta est.

[1] Under Augustus (31 B.C.–14 A.D.) a long era of peace began.
[2] *divorced.* [3] *married.* [4] *i.e.* Rome. [5] *asp* (a kind of snake).

Ita, bellīs tōtō orbe[1] terrārum cōnfectīs, Augustus Rōmam rediit, duodecimō annō postquam cōnsul fuerat. Ex eō annō rem pūblicam per XLIIII annōs sōlus obtinuit. In campō Mārtiō sepultus est,[2] vir quī meritō deō similis est putātus. Neque enim ūllus aut in bellīs fēlīcior fuit aut in pāce moderātior. Nūllō tempore ante eum magis rēs pūblica Rōmāna flōruit.[3] Multās prōvinciās Rōmānō adiēcit imperiō. Scythae et Indī, quibus anteā Rōmānōrum nōmen nōn cognitum erat, mūnera et lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. Tantō autem amōre etiam apud barbarōs fuit ut rēgēs, populī Rōmānī amīcī, in honōrem eius cīvitātēs cōnstituerent.

Pūblica opera plūrima Rōmae[4] exstrūxit et cēterōs prīncipēs virōs saepe hortātus est ut monumentīs vel novīs vel refectīs urbem adōrnārent. Spatium urbis in regiōnēs XIV dīvīsit. Contrā incendia vigiliās īnstituit. Viās et templa refēcit. Annum[5] ā Iūliō Caesare in ōrdinem redāctum, sed posteā neglēctum, rūrsus ad prīstinam ratiōnem redēgit. Sextīlem mēnsem ē suō nōmine Augustum nōmināvit.

Read Tappan, Chapter XVIII; Tappan (*Heroes*), Chapter XV; Guerber, Chapters LXVIII–LXXI; Morris, pp. 227–235; Church, Chapter I; Haaren and Poland, Chapter XXIII.

269. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Ubi Cassius occīsus est? 2. Quis accēpit Orientem? 3. Ubi et quō modō Antōnius mortuus est?

270. Vocabulary Drill

dēspērō	**hortor**	**rūrsus**
exstruō	**neglegō**	**vel**

271. Genitive and Ablative of Description

Review the genitive and ablative of description (**414, 445**) and find one example of each in the above passage.

---

[1] See **446.** [2] *buried.* [3] *prospered.* [4] *at Rome* (**452**).
[5] *i.e.* the calendar, which was much confused before Caesar's time.

272. Written Exercises

1. After Caesar's death the Roman republic was divided between the two consuls — Antony, a man of the greatest courage, and Augustus, a youth of twenty years. 2. Cleopatra urged Antony to neglect his own interests ("things"). 3. Despairing of victory, Antony killed himself, and later all-other enemies were defeated, and there was peace again. 4. Augustus erected monuments and temples of the greatest size in all parts of the Roman Empire.

273. Word Study: Suffixes

The suffix **-ārium** (English *-arium, -ary*) is added chiefly to noun stems. The suffix **-ōrium** (English *-orium, -ory, -or*) is added chiefly to participial stems and hence is usually preceded by **-t-**. Both suffixes mean a *place where:* granary, a *place where grain* (**grānum**) is kept. The plurals of *-ary* and *-ory* are *-aries* and *-ories*.

Exercise. — Define the following according to their derivation and give the Latin words from which they come: *aquarium, itinerary, library, laboratory, mirror* (**mīror**), *auditorium, factory, observatory, armory.*

Caution. — Other Latin suffixes besides **-ārium** and **-ōrium** sometimes take the English forms mentioned above; *e.g. primary* from **prīmārius**, *honor* from **honor**.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

274. 18. The Reward of Loyalty[1]

Maevius, centuriō Augustī, cum contrā Antōnium saepe fortiter pugnāvisset, imprōvīsīs hostium īnsidiīs circumventus est. Ad Antōnium perductus, rogātus est quid dē sē statuī dēbēret. "Iugulārī[2] mē," inquit, "iubē, quod nōn salūtis beneficiō neque mortis suppliciō addūcī possum ut aut Caesaris mīles dēsinam aut tuus esse incipiam." Itaque, quod vītam contempsit, Antōnius eum incolumem esse iussit.

[1] From **Valerius Maximus.** [2] *to be executed.*

XIX

275. From Tiberius to Nero[1]

Augustus rem pūblicam beātissimam[2] Tiberiō relīquit, quī fīlius adoptātus erat. Sed Tiberius magnā crūdēlitāte imperium gessit. Successit eī C. Caesar, quī Caligula appellātus est. Hic quoque crūdēlis erat. Post hunc Claudius fuit prīnceps. Hic multa gessit cum clēmentiā, quaedam cum crūdēlitāte. Britanniae bellum intulit, quam nēmō Rōmānus post C. Caesarem attigerat, eaque victa est. Quāsdam īnsulās etiam ultrā Britanniam in Ōceanō positās imperiō Rōmānō addidit, quae appellantur Orchadēs.

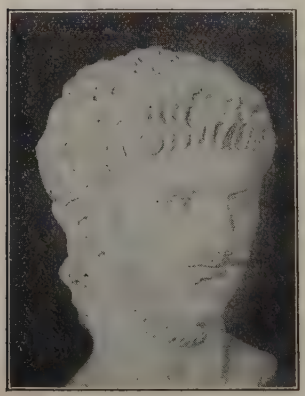


Fig. 75. Nero

Successit huic Nerō, vir inūsitātae lūxuriae, ita ut unguentīs lavāret et rētibus[3] aureīs piscārētur. Nūllam vestem bis gessit. Semper mīlle carrīs vel amplius fēcit iter. Soleae mūlārum eius ex argentō factae sunt. Domum ā Palātiō ad Ēsquiliās exstrūxit, quam auream nōmināvit. In cius vēstibulō erat imāgō Nerōnis CXX pedēs alta. Erant lacūs, aedificia, agrī, silvae, cum multitūdine omnis generis animālium. In cēterīs partibus omnia aurō tēcta, ōrnāta gemmīs erant. Cum hanc domum dēdicāret, dīxit: "Tandem quasi homō habitāre coepī."

Etiam saltāvit et cantāvit in scaenā. In Graeciam profectus est ut ibi cantāret. Cantante eō, nē necessāriā

[1] Tiberius, 14–37 A.D.; Caligula, 37–41 A.D.; Claudius, 41–54 A.D.; Nero, 54–68 A.D.

[2] *very prosperous.*

[3] *nets.*

quidem causā excēdere theātrō licitum est. Multī, dēfessī audiendō laudandōque, clausīs oppidōrum portīs, aut fūrtim[1] dēsiluērunt dē mūrō aut, morte simulātā,[2] fūnere ēlātī sunt. In Italiam reversus studium nōn remīsit. Cōnservandae vōcis grātiā neque mīlitēs umquam appellāvit neque quicquam ēgit nisi prope stante phōnascō[3] quī monēret ut parceret sibi ac sūdārium[4] ad ōs applicāret.

Fig. 76. A Roman Lady
Thought to be Agrippina, wife of Claudius and mother of Nero.

Frātrem, uxōrem, sorōrem, mātrem interfēcit. Urbem Rōmam incendit[5] ut spectāculum simile incendiō Trōiae antīquae cerneret. Magnam senātūs partem interfēcisse dīcitur.

Tandem ā senātū hostis iūdicātus est. Cum quaererētur ad poenam, fūgit et sē interfēcit. In eō omnis Augustī familia cōnsūmpta est.

Read Morris, pp. 242-271; Church, pp. 72-83, 108-116, 136-147; Guerber, pp. 208-227.

---

[1] *by stealth.*
[2] *feigned.*
[3] *singing teacher.*
[4] *handkerchief.*
[5] This was a false charge, as Nero was not in Rome when the fire started, but at Antium. It burned six days and seven nights continuously and then started again.

276. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis successit Augustō? 2. Cui successit Caligula? 3. Cui successit Nerō? 4. Quī prīncipēs fuērunt crūdēlēs? 5. Cūr Nerō vōcem cōnservābat? 6. Quōs Nerō occīdit? 7. Quis Nerōnem occīdit?

277. Vocabulary Drill

cōnsūmō	**incendō**	**revertor**
dēsiliō	**necessārius**	**tegō**
	ōrnō	

278. Relative Purpose Clauses

prope stante phōnascō quī monēret (line 37), *a singing teacher standing near to warn.*

Note that a relative may be used instead of **ut** to introduce a purpose clause when there is an antecedent (**467**).

279. Written Exercises

1. The Romans, many years after Caesar, sent an army which was to conquer Britain. 2. Nero built a house covered and adorned with gold in which to live. 3. He led a life of great luxury and cruelty and wasted his time in singing after he returned from Greece. 4. He is said to have burned Rome to furnish a spectacle for himself.

280. Word Study: Prefixes

The prefix **sē-** means *apart from* in Latin and English: **sēparō,** *separate.* Define according to the prefix: *secret* (**cernō**), *secede, seclude, secure* (**cūra**).

The Latin adverb **nōn**, meaning *not,* is freely used as a prefix in English: *nonsense, noncommittal, nonpartisan.* Give three other examples.

The preposition **ultrā** is used as a prefix in English with the meaning *extremely: ultrafashionable.* Give two other examples.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

281. 19. Androclus and the Lion[1]

In Circō Maximō vēnātiō[2] populō dabātur. Multae ibi ferae erant, sed praeter aliās omnēs ūnus leō magnitūdine corporis animōs oculōsque omnium in sē converterat.

Inductus erat servus virī cōnsulāris[3] inter complūrēs aliōs ad pugnam ferārum. Eī servō[4] Androclus nōmen fuit. Hunc ille leō ubi vīdit procul, statim quasi admīrans stetit ac deinde lēniter, quasi cognōscēns, ad hominem accēdit. Tum caudam mōre canum[5] movet hominisque manūs linguā lēniter dēmulcet. Androclus, prīmum territus, nunc leōnem spectat. Tum quasi leōne cognitō, homō gaudēre vīsus est.

Eā rē tam mīrā maximī clāmōrēs populī excitātī sunt. Caesar[6] Androclum vocāvit et quaesīvit causam cūr illī ūnī ferōcissimus leō pepercisset. Tum Androclus rem mīrandam nārrat.

"Cum prōvinciae," inquit, "Āfricae dominus meus imperāret, ego iniūstē verberātus fugere coāctus sum. Specum[7] quendam remōtum inveniō et eum ingredior. Neque multō post ad eundem specum venit hic leō, vulnerātō ūnō pede, gemitūs ob dolōrem ēdēns. Prīmō quidem cōnspectū leōnis territus sum. Sed postquam leō ingressus mē vīdit, lēnis accessit et pedem ostendere mihi quasi opis petendae grātiā vīsus est. Ibi ego spīnam magnam, pedī eius haerentem, ēripuī et saniem[8] expressī. Ille tum, pede in manibus meīs positō, quiētem cēpit. Ex eō diē trēs annōs ego et leō in eōdem specū vīximus. Membra ferārum leō mihi ferēbat, quae ego, ignis cōpiam nōn habēns, sōle torrēbam. Sed tandem specum relīquī et ā mīlitibus prehēnsus ad dominum

---

[1] Adapted from **Aulus Gellius.**
[2] *i.e.* a fight between men and wild beasts.
[3] *ex-consul.* [4] See **424.** [5] English derivative: *canine.*
[6] Probably Tiberius. [7] *cave.* [8] *matter.*

ex Āfricā Rōmam dēductus sum. Is mē statim ad ferās mīsit. Intellegō autem hunc quoque leōnem, posteā captum, grātiam mihi referre."

Haec dīxit Androclus. Omnibus petentibus, dīmissus est et leō eī dōnātus. Posteā Androclus et leō, lōrō[1] ligātus, circum tabernās ībant. Androclus pecūniam accipiēbat, leō flōrēs. Omnēs dīcēbant: "Hic est leō hospes hominis; hic est homō medicus leōnis."

Read Morris, pp. 272–279.

FIG. 77. THROWN TO THE LIONS
(From "Spartacus.")

[1] *strap.*

XX

282. From Vespasian to Aurelius[1]

Post brevissimum imperium Galbae et Othōnis et Vitellī Vespasiānus prīnceps erat. Hic fēlīciter in Britanniā pugnāverat. Iūstus et lēnis erat. Sub hōc Iūdaea Rōmānō accessit imperiō et Hierosolyma, quae fuit urbs nōbilissima Palaestīnae. Huic successit Titus fīlius, vir omnibus virtūtibus praestantissimus. Causās Latīnē ēgit, poēmata Graecē scrīpsit. Hierosolyma cum patre oppugnāns duodecim ex hostibus duodecim sagittīs occīdit. In imperiō nēminem poenā afficiēbat. Nēminī quicquam negābat. Cum ob hoc ab amīcīs reprehenderētur, respondit nēminem trīstem dēbēre ab imperātōre discēdere. Cum quōdam diē recordātus[2] esset nihil sē illō diē cuiquam dedisse, dīxit: "Amīcī, diem perdidī." Hic amphitheātrum[3] aedificāvit. Quīnque mīlia ferārum in dēdicātiōne eius occīsa sunt.

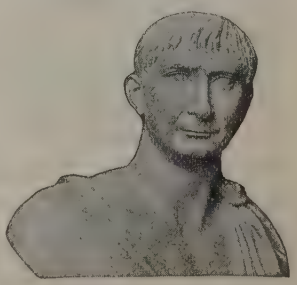


Fig. 78. Trajan.

Post mortem Titī, Domitiānus, frāter eius, accēpit imperium, Nerōnī aut Caligulae aut Tiberiō similior quam patrī vel frātrī suō. Huic successit Nerva, prīnceps aequissimus. Nervae successit Trāiānus, nātus in Hispāniā. Rem pūblicam ita administrāvit ut omnibus prīncipibus[4] praestāret. Fīnēs Rōmānī imperī, quod post Augustum dēfēnsum magis

[1] Galba, Otho, Vitellius, 68–69 A.D.; Vespasian, 69–79 A.D.; Titus, 79–81 A.D.; Domitian, 81–96 A.D.; Nerva, 96–98 A.D.; Trajan, 98–117 A.D.; Hadrian, 117–138 A.D.; Antoninus Pius, 138–161 A.D.; Marcus Aurelius, 161–180 A.D.

[2] *he recollected* (deponent).

[3] This was the Colosseum, begun by Vespasian and completed by Titus.

[4] See **422**.

erat quam auctum, longē lātēque diffūdit. Glōriam tamen mīlitārem moderātiōne superāvit.

Inter alia dicta eius hoc est ēgregium. Amīcō cuidam reprehendentī quod nimium[1] omnibus commūnis esset[2] respondit: "Ego, optime amīce, imperātor sum prīvātīs quālēs esse mihi imperātōrēs prīvātus ipse voluī."[3] Multōs annōs post eius mortem, cum senātus prīncipibus honōrem tribuere vellet, clāmāre solēbat: "Fēlīcior Augustō,[4] melior Trāiānō."

FIG. 79. PLOTINA, WIFE OF TRAJAN

Trāiānō mortuō, Hadriānus creātus est prīnceps. Pācem omnī imperī suī tempore habuit. Multa aedificāvit. Post eum et Antōnīnum Pium M. Aurēlius imperāvit. Hic philosophiae Stoicae dēditus est. Tam tranquillus erat ut vultum nec ex gaudiō nec ex dolōre mūtāret. Sub hōc tanta pestilentia fuit ut post bellum Persicum per Italiam prōvinciāsque maxima hominum pars, omnēs ferē mīlitēs mortuī sunt.

Read Tappan, pp. 200–208; Morris, pp. 293–300; Guerber, pp. 228–231, 239–251; Church, pp. 335–344.

283. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quis erat pater Domitiānī? 2. Ubi erant Hierosolyma? 3. Quī trēs prīncipēs erant ante M. Aurēlium? 4. Quī prīnceps poēmata scrīpsit? 5. Quī prīnceps philosophus fuit?

[1] *too* (with **commūnis**). [2] Translate as if indicative (**482**).
[3] (*of such a kind*) *as I . . . wished the emperors to be to me.*
[4] Ablative of comparison (**437**).

284. Vocabulary Drill

administrō	**lātus** (*adj.*)	**prīvātus**
dolor	**lēnis**	**soleō**

285. Synonyms

Distinguish carefully the following words which have much the same meaning. Such words are called *synonyms*.

1. **timeō,** *fear, be afraid of.*
   vereor, *fear, respect, revere.*
2. **urbs,** *city,* especially Rome.
   oppidum, *town,* especially a *fortified town.*
3. **auctōritās,** *influence.*
   potestās, *power* in general, *opportunity.*
   rēgnum, *royal power.*
   imperium, *military power, power of the* **imperātor** (*general, emperor*).
   grātia, *personal influence,* "pull."
4. **interficiō,** *kill* (general word).
   caedō, *cut, cut to pieces.*
   occīdō, *kill* with a weapon, as in battle.
5. **cōpiae,** *forces, troops.*
   exercitus, *army,* consisting of *trained* men.
   agmen [**agō**], *army on the march, column.*
   aciēs, *battle line, army in fighting formation.*

286. Vocative Case

The case of address (vocative) has the same form as the nominative in Latin (as in English) except in the singular of nouns and adjectives of the second declension ending in **-us** and **-ius.** These have **-e,** except **fīlius** and proper names in **-ius,** which have **-ī** (for **-ie**): **optime amīce** (line 30), **fīlī, Aurēlī.**

Fig. 80. Marcus Aurelius

The vocative is not put first in the sentence except when emphatic.

287. Written Exercises

1. "Dear friends," said the gentle Titus, "I wish no private citizen to go away from the emperor sad and afflicted with grief." 2. Do you know who was accustomed to say that he had lost a day? 3. Titus wrote poems which were for his own enjoyment. 4. From you, Marcus Aurelius, we can learn how to bear the cares of life.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

288. 20. Quotations from Virgil[1]

1. Arma virumque canō.
2. Expertō crēdite.
3. Facilis dēscēnsus Avernō.[2]
4. Fāta obstant.
5. Fit via vī.
6. Forsan et[3] haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit.
7. Hīc domus, haec patria est.
8. Mēns cōnscia rēctī.[4]
9. Nōn omnia possumus omnēs.
10. Pedibus timor addidit ālās.
11. Quōrum[5] pars magna fuī.

---

[1] **Virgil** was one of Rome's most famous poets. His chief work was the *Æneid*, an epic poem dealing with the wanderings of Aeneas after the Trojan War and with his arrival in Italy. His descendants were supposed to have founded Rome. The first quotation gives the opening words of the poem and refers to Aeneas.

[2] *to Avernus*, used here for the lower world. The implication is that it is harder to get out.

[3] *even*. **Haec** refers to the misfortunes of Aeneas.

[4] *right*, with **cōnscia**. This quotation plays a part in a famous story of two rival English shoemakers whose shops adjoined each other. One of them put out a sign with the Virgilian quotation on it. Not to be outdone, his rival, who was innocent of Latin, promptly hung out a sign reading "Mens and Womens Conscia Recti."

[5] Neuter, referring to the destruction of Troy, as seen by Aeneas.

FIG. 81. VIRGIL, HORACE, VARIUS, AND MAECENAS

Virgil is reading his *Æneid* at the home of his patron Maecenas.

12. Steteruntque comae[1] et vōx faucibus[2] haesit.
13. Tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō.[3]
    (Hae tibi erunt artēs) pācisque impōnere mōrem,
    Parcere subiectīs et dēbellāre superbōs.
14. Ūna salūs victīs, nūllam spērāre salūtem.
15. Varium et mūtābile semper fēmina.[4]

FIG. 82. LAKE AVERNUS

This lake, near Naples, was supposed to be an entrance to Hades, the home of the dead.

---

[1] *hair.*

[2] *throat.*

[3] *remember;* imperative. A prophecy of Rome's future greatness.

[4] Supply **est.** **Varium** and **mūtābile** are used substantively as predicate nominatives.

XXI

289. I. The Eruption of Mount Vesuvius[1]

Petis ut tibi dē avunculī meī morte scrībam ut hoc trādere posterīs possīs. Grātiās agō; nam videō mortī eius immortālem glōriam esse prōpositam. Quamquam ipse opera plūrima et mānsūra scrīpsit, multum tamen eius librōrum aeternitātī tuōrum aeternitās addet. Beātōs eōs putō quibus deōrum mūnere datum est aut facere scrībenda[2] aut scrībere legenda,[2] beātissimōs vērō eōs quibus utrumque.[3] Hōrum in numerō avunculus meus et suīs librīs et tuīs erit.

Erat Mīsēnī.[4] Hōrā ferē septimā māter mea ostendit eī nūbem inūsitātā et magnitūdine et speciē. Ille ascendit locum ex quō maximē mīrāculum illud cōnspicī poterat. Nūbēs ex monte Vesuviō oriēbātur. Fōrmam pīnūs[5] habēbat.

Iubet nāvēs parārī; mihi cōpiam eundī[6] facit. Respondī studēre mē mālle. Tum accipit litterās cuiusdam mulieris perīculō territae. Nāvem ascendit ut nōn illī mulierī modo sed multīs auxilium ferret. Properat illūc unde aliī fugiunt rēctumque cursum in perīculum tenet, tam solūtus timōre ut omnia vīsa ēnotāret.[7]

Iam nāvibus cinis dēnsior incidēbat, iam pūmicēs[8] etiam nigrīque lapidēs. Cum gubernātor monēret ut retrō flec-

---

[1] From the letters of **Pliny the Younger,** who lived on into the reign of Trajan. His letters are full of interesting things. His uncle, Pliny the Elder, was a voluminous writer on history and other subjects. One work of his is extant, the *Natural History,* a scientific encyclopedia. The famous eruption took place in 79 A.D., when Pliny the Younger was seventeen years old. This letter was written many years later to the historian Tacitus. Nos. XXII and 22–38 are also taken from Pliny.

[2] Substantive: (*things*) *to be* (i.e. *worthy of being*), etc.

[3] Supply **datum est.**

[4] *at Misenum* (a promontory near Naples), as admiral of the fleet.

[5] (the "umbrella") *pine;* see Fig. 85.

[6] *i.e.* with him. [7] *took notes on.*

[8] *pumice stones.*

teret, "Fortēs," inquit, "fortūna iuvat." Ubi ad lītus vēnit, amīcum vīdit. Eum territum hortātur. Tum in balneum it et posteā ad cēnam, aut hilaris aut similis hilarī.

Interim ē Vesuviō monte lātissimās flammās altaque incendia vīdērunt. Ille, nē cēterī timērent, dīcēbat ignēs ab agricolīs relīctōs esse. Tum sē quiētī dedit. Sed nōn multō post servī eum excitāvērunt nē exitus ob cinerem negārētur. Domus crēbrīs tremōribus nunc hūc nunc illūc movērī vidēbātur. Itaque placuit ēgredī in lītus. Cervīcālia[1] capitibus impōnunt. Sed ille recubāns[2] aquam poposcit et hausit. Tum surrēxit et statim concidit. Cēterī fugiunt. Posterō diē corpus inventum est integrum. Similior erat dormientī quam mortuō.

Read Hall, pp. 1–93; Guerber, pp. 231–234; Morris, pp. 301–308; Church, Chapter XXIII.

FIG. 83. MISENUM

[1] *cushions*, as a protection against falling stones.

[2] *lying down*. His death was evidently due to some such cause as heart disease rather than to the eruption itself.

290. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Cūr erat avunculus Plīnī beātissimus? 2. Quis avunculō nūbem ostendit? 3. Cūr Plīnius nōn cum avunculō iit? 4. Cūr avunculus in perīculum cursum tenuit?

Fig. 84. Vesuvius in Action

Vesuvius now has rather frequent but relatively mild eruptions. This one took place in 1924 and was the most violent since 1906.

291. Vocabulary Drill

cursus	**incidō**	**mālō**
flectō	**līmus**	**speciēs**
hōra		**timor**

292. Conjugation of *Mālō*

Learn the conjugation of **mālō** (**401**).

293. **Written Exercises**

1. "I prefer, Uncle, to study," said Pliny when the former urged him to go out to the beach to look-at the strange sight. 2. About the seventh hour the elder (**maior**) Pliny turned his ship's course toward Vesuvius. 3. Such great fear had fallen upon the people that they were fleeing, some in one direction, others in another. 4. When they urged him to turn back, he said, "My friends, I prefer to go on, for we all know that fortune aids the brave."

294. **Word Study: Spelling**

Many English words containing *c*, *g*, or *s* sounds are often misspelled. When these are derived from Latin, it will be helpful to think of the Latin original: *circumstance, voice, concern, suggest, legislation, origin, cordial, graduate, presume, vision, decision.*

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

295. 21. A Costly Joke[1]

P. Scīpiō Nāsīca, cum aedīlitātem[2] adulēscēns peteret manumque cuiusdam agricolae rūsticō opere dūrātam mōre candidātōrum prehendisset, iocī causā rogāvit eum num manibus solitus esset ambulāre. Quod[3] dictum ā circumstantibus audītum ad populum allātum est causaque fuit repulsae[4] Scīpiōnis. Nam omnēs agricolae paupertātem suam ab eō rīdērī iūdicantēs īram[5] suam contrā eius iocum ostendērunt.

---

[1] From **Valerius Maximus.**
[2] *aedileship*, a public office.
[3] See **409.** [4] *defeat.* [5] *anger.*

XXII

296. II. The Eruption of Mount Vesuvius

Dīcis tē adductum litterīs quās tibi dē morte avunculī meī scrīpsī cupere cognōscere quōs timōrēs et cāsūs ego pertulerim. "Quamquam animus meminisse horret, incipiam."[1]

Profectō avunculō, ipse reliquum tempus studiīs dedī. Tum balneum, cēna, somnus brevis. Praecesserat per multōs diēs tremor terrae. Illā vērō nocte ita crēvit[2] ut nōn movērī omnia sed vertī crēderentur. Māter et ego in āream domūs iimus et cōnsēdimus. Dubitō utrum cōnstantiam vocāre an imprūdentiam dēbeam (nātus enim eram XVII annōs), sed poscō librum T. Līvī et legō.

Iam hōra diēī prīma erat. Magnus et certus erat ruīnae timor. Tum dēmum excēdere oppidō placuit. Multī nōs sequuntur. Ēgressī cōnsistimus. Multa ibi mīranda, multōs timōrēs patimur. Nam carrī quōs prōdūcī iusserāmus, quamquam in plānissimō campō, in contrāriās partēs agēbantur. Lītus prōcesserat multaque animālia maris arēnīs dētinēbat. Ab alterō latere nūbēs ātra[3] et horrenda appārēbat. Paulō post illa nūbēs dēscendit in terrās. Tum māter ōrat, hortātur, iubet mē fugere. "Tū potes," inquit; "ego et annīs et corpore gravis bene moriar sī tibi causa mortis nōn erō." Ego vērō dīcō mē nōn incolumem nisi cum eā futūrum esse. Deinde eam prōcēdere cōgō. Pāret aegrē. Iam cinis cadit. Tum nox, nōn quālis sine lūnā est, sed quālis in locīs clausīs, lūmine exstīnctō. Audiuntur ululātūs[4] fēminārum, īnfantium quirītātūs,[5] clāmōrēs virōrum. Aliī parentēs, aliī līberōs, aliī coniugēs vōcibus quaerēbant, vōcibus nōscēbant. Quīdam timōre mortis mortem ōrābant.

---

[1] A quotation from Virgil. [2] From crēscō.
[3] *black.* [4] *shrieks.* [5] *wails.*

Multī ad deōs manūs tollēbant, plūrēs nōn iam deōs ūllōs esse aeternamque illam et ultimam noctem dīcēbant. Cinis multus et gravis. Hunc identidem surgentēs excutiēbāmus[1]

FIG. 85. A STREET IN POMPEII

Pompeii was entirely destroyed by the eruption of Vesuvius of which Pliny writes. It has been partly excavated during the last century and has given us an excellent idea of Roman life. Note the "umbrella" pine in the distance. In the street are stepping stones for the convenience of persons crossing from one side to the other.

nē pondus nōbīs nocēret. Possum dīcere mē nōn gemitum in tantīs perīculīs ēdidisse. Tandem nūbēs discessit. Tum diēs vērus. Omnia mūtāta erant altōque cinere tamquam nive[2] tēcta.

Read Bulwer-Lytton, Book Fifth, Chapters VII–IX.

---

[1] *shook off.* [2] *snow.*

297. Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Quid fēcit Plīnius postquam avunculus profectus est? 2. Quid nocte accidit? 3. Quid posterō diē Plīnius in lītore vīdit?

298. Vocabulary Drill

aeger	**latus** (*noun*)	**pāreō** (*w. dat.*)
crēscō	**lūmen**	**patior**
dubitō	**nox**	**paulum**

299. Written Exercises

1. You ask me to tell you what I suffered at that time, but I doubt whether I can or not (**annōn**). 2. Although I prefer to remember other (things), I shall reluctantly obey you. 3. For many days there had been a trembling of the earth, and it had now grown to-such-an-extent that all (things) seemed to be turning. 4. A little later night appeared far and wide, so that we could not see the side of a house.

300. Terms Used in Geometry Derived from Latin

Many technical terms used in geometry are derived from Latin. Note the following:

acute (**ācer**)	locus (**locus**)
adjacent (**ad, iaceō**)	median (**medius**)
circumscribe (**circum, scrībō**)	plane (**plānus**)
coincide (**co–, incidō**)	quadrilateral (**quattuor, latus**)
complementary (**compleō**)	Q. E. D. (**quod erat dēmōnstrandum**)
concurrent (**con–, currō**)	Q. E. F. (**quod erat faciendum**)
equidistant (**aequus, di–, stō**)	subtend (**sub, tendō**)
equilateral (**aequus, latus**)	tangent (**tangō**)
inscribe (**in, scrībō**)	transversal (**trāns, vertō**)

Define the above and find other geometrical terms derived from Latin.

SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

301. 22. A Model Wife[1]

Cum frātrem optimum tuum amāverīs fīliamque eius ut tuam amēs et eī[2] patris āmissī amōrem tribuās, cōnfīdō maximō tibi gaudiō futūrum esse cum cognōveris dignam patre,[3] dignam tē, dignam avō esse. Summum est acūmen, summa frūgālitās. Accēdit hīs studium litterārum, quod ex amōre meī[4] concēpit. Meōs librōs habet, legit, discit etiam. Quā cūrā illa afficitur cum causam āctūrus sum, quantō gaudiō cum ēgī! Mittit quī nūntient sibi quōs clāmōrēs excitāverim. Poēmata quidem mea cantat, nōn artifice[5] aliquō docente, sed amōre, quī magister est optimus.

Fig. 86. A House in Pompeii
Few houses have been found with the second story standing.

Hīs ex causīs in spem certissimam addūcor perpetuam nōbīs maiōremque semper futūram esse concordiam. Ea tuīs manibus ēducāta est, tuīs praeceptīs īnstitūta. Ex tuā laude amāre mē coepit. Tibi grātiās agimus, ego quod illam mihi dedistī, illa quod mē sibi. Valē.

---

[1] From a letter of **Pliny** written to the aunt of his third wife, who was much younger than he.

[2] *to her.* [3] Ablative with **dignam.** We say *worthy of.*

[4] *for me.* [5] *artist.*

ADDITIONAL SELECTIONS FOR SUPPLEMENTARY OR SIGHT READING

302. 23. A Fish Story

Est in Āfricā colōnia marī proxima. Hīc omnis aetās piscandī, nāvigandī, atque etiam natandī studiō tenētur, maximē puerī, quī ōtium habent et lūdere cupiunt. Hīs glōria et virtūs est longissimē natāre; victor ille est quī longissimē lītus et aliōs natantēs relīquit. Puer quīdam audācior in ulteriōra tendēbat.[1] Delphīnus[2] occurrit et nunc praecēdit puerum, nunc sequitur, tum subit,[3] dēpōnit, iterum subit territumque puerum perfert prīmum in altum, deinde flectit ad lītus redditque terrae.

Fig. 87. Delphīnus

From a relief found at Antioch, Pisidia, in 1924. (Courtesy of D. M. Robinson.)

Concurrunt omnēs, ipsum puerum tamquam mīrāculum spectant, rogant, audiunt. Posterō diē rūrsus natant puerī, rūrsus delphīnus ad puerum venit. Fugit ille cum cēterīs. Delphīnus, quasi revocāns, exsilit et mergitur.[4] Hoc plūribus diēbus facit. Tandem puerī accēdunt, appellant, tangunt etiam. Crēscit audācia. Maximē puer quī prīmus expertus est natat ad eum, īnsilit tergō, fertur referturque.[5] Amārī sē putat, amat ipse. Neuter timet, neuter timētur. Ībat ūnā (id quoque mīrum) delphīnus alius, sed nihil simile aut faciēbat aut patiēbātur.

---

[1] *made for.* [2] *dolphin.*
[3] *goes up from under, i.e.* takes the boy on its back.
[4] *leaps up and dives.* [5] *is carried (out) and back.*

Octāvius Avītus, lēgātus, delphīnō in lītus ēductō superfūdit unguentum.[1] Huius odōrem ille fūgit nec nisi post multōs diēs vīsus est. Veniēbant omnēs magistrātūs ad spectāculum, quōrum adventū et morā parva rēs pūblica novīs sūmptibus[2] cōnficitur. Posteā locus ipse quiētem suam āmittēbat. Placuit occultē delphīnum interficī ad quem videndum omnēs veniēbant.

FIG. 88. THE CAPITOL, DOUGGA, NORTHERN AFRICA

303. 24. TWO LOVE LETTERS[3]

Numquam magis dē occupātiōnibus meīs sum questus, quae mē nōn sunt passae sequī tē proficīscentem in Campāniam valētūdinis causā. Nunc enim maximē tēcum esse cupiō ut oculīs meīs videam quid vīrium cōnsecūta sīs. Et absentia et īnfirmitās tua mē terrent. Vereor omnia, fingō omnia, ea maximē quae maximē timeō. Itaque rogō ut cotīdiē singulās vel etiam bīnās[4] epistulās scrībās. Sine cūrā erō dum legō statimque timēbō cum lēgerō. Valē.

---

[1] *perfume.* The act was a religious one.

[2] The town had to pay for the entertainment of the visiting officials. An enterprising showman of to-day would charge admission and make a fortune.

[3] Written by **Pliny** to his third wife.

[4] *two each.*

Scrībis tē absentiā meā magnopere afficī ūnumque habēre sōlācium, quod prō mē librōs meōs teneās.[1] Grātum est quod mē requīris. Ego epistulās tuās legō atque identidem in manūs quasi novās sūmō. Tū quam frequentissimē scrībe. Valē.

304. 25. A Ghost Story

Erat Athēnīs[2] magna domus sed īnfāmis.[3] Per silentium noctis sonus vinculōrum, longius prīmō, deinde ē proximō audiēbātur. Tum appārēbat lārva, senex horrentī capillō. Vincula gerēbat. Deinde malae noctēs erant eīs quī ibi habitābant; mors sequēbātur. Dēserta domus est et illī lārvae relicta. Prōscrībēbātur[4] tamen, sed nēmō vel emere vel condūcere[5] voluit.

Vēnit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodōrus, lēgit titulum,[6] audītōque pretiō, quaesīvit cūr tam vīlis esset. Omnia cognōscit sed tamen condūcit. Ubi nox vēnit, poposcit tabulās, stilum, lūmen; servōs suōs omnēs dīmīsit, ipse ad scrībendum animum, oculōs, manum intendit nē mēns timōrēs fingeret. Prīmō silentium, deinde vincula audiuntur. Ille nōn tollit oculōs. Tum sonus vinculōrum crēscit, propius venit. Iam in līmine,[7] iam intrā līmen audītur. Ille respicit, videt lārvam. Stābat innuēbatque[8] digitō similis vocantī. Sed philosophus rūrsus studiīs sē dat. Iterum sonus vinculōrum audītur. Ille rūrsus respicit lārvam innuentem. Nōn morātus tollit lūmen et sequitur. Postquam lārva dēflexit in āream domūs, eum dēserit; is signum in locō pōnit. Posterō diē philosophus adit magistrātūs et monet ut illum locum effodī iubeant. Inveniuntur ossa[9] et vincula. Haec collēcta sepeliuntur. In eō aedificiō numquam posteā lārva vīsa est.

---

[1] Translate as if indicative (**482**). [2] *at Athens* (**452**).
[3] *with a bad reputation.* [4] *advertised.* What literally?
[5] *rent.* [6] *sign.* [7] *threshold.* [8] *beckoned.* [9] *bones.*

305. 26. A Happy Marriage

Grave vulnus Macrīnus noster accēpit: āmīsit uxōrem singulāris exemplī.[1] Vīxit cum hāc XXXVIIII annōs sine iūrgiō.[2] Quam illa reverentiam eī adhibuit, cum ipsa summam merēret! Quot quantāsque virtūtēs illa habuit! Habet quidem Macrīnus magnum sōlācium quod tantum bonum tam diū tenuit; sed maior dolor quod āmīsit.

Fig. 89. A Family Group

This tomb relief was found by the Germans while digging trenches near Verdun, France, during the World War.

306. 27. A Lax Letter Writer

Graviter īrāscor[3] quod ā tē tam diū litterae nūllae. Exōrāre[4] mē potes ūnō modō, sī nunc plūrimās et longissimās mīseris. Haec mihi sōla excūsātiō vēra, cēterae falsae vidēbuntur. Nōn sum audītūrus "nōn enim Rōmae"[5] vel "occupātior eram." Valē.

307. 28. Advice to a Provincial Governor

Cōgitā tē missum in prōvinciam Achāiam, illam vēram Graeciam, in quā prīmum hūmānitās, litterae, etiam frūgēs inventae esse crēduntur; missum ad hominēs vērē hominēs, ad

---

[1] *an exemplary wife.* What literally?
[2] *quarrel.*
[3] *I am getting angry.*
[4] *calm.*
[5] *at Rome* (**452**); supply **eram.**

līberōs[1] vērē līberōs, quī iūs ā nātūrā datum virtūte et meritīs tenuērunt. Reverēre glōriam veterem. Sint antīquitās et magna facta in magnō honōre apud tē. Habē ante oculōs hanc esse terram quae nōbīs mīserit[2] iūra, quae lēgēs nōn victīs sed petentibus dederit, Athēnās esse quās adeās, Lacedaemonem esse quam regās. Plūs potest amor ad obtinendum quod velīs[3] quam timor.

308. 29. Snobbishness

Longum est dīcere quō modō acciderit ut ego, homō minimē familiāris, cēnārem apud quendam. Hic sibi et paucīs cārum cibum, cēterīs vīlem pōnēbat. Vīnum in tria genera dīvīserat, aliud sibi et nōbīs, aliud minōribus amīcīs (nam gradātim amīcōs habet), aliud suīs nostrīsque lībertīs. Hoc animadvertit ille quī mihi proximus accumbēbat[4] et mē interrogāvit: "Probāsne?" Negāvī. "Tū," inquit, "quam cōnsuētūdinem sequeris?" "Eadem omnibus pōnō"; inquam, "nam omnibus rēbus aequō eōs quōs mēnsā aequāvī." "Etiamne lībertōs?" "Etiam; amīcōs enim tum, nōn lībertōs eōs putō." Et ille, "Cārum tibi est." "Minimē. Nam lībertī meī nōn idem quod ego bibunt, sed idem ego bibō quod lībertī."

Cūr haec scrībō? Nē tē, optimum iuvenem, quōrundam in mēnsā lūxuria speciē frūgālitātis dēcipiat. Exemplō volō tē monēre quid dēbeās fugere. Valē.

309. 30. Wanted, a Teacher

Quid ā mē grātius potuistī petere quam ut magistrum frātris tuī līberīs quaererem? Nam beneficiō tuō in scholam redeō et illam dulcissimam aetātem quasi[5] resūmam. Sedeō

---

[1] From **līber**, not **līberī**. He means that true manhood and true freedom had their beginnings in Greece.

[2] Translate this and the following subjunctives as if they were indicatives (**480**). For the allusion see **188.**

[3] Translate as if indicative (**474**).

[4] It was the Roman custom to recline on couches at dinner.

[5] *as it were,*

inter iuvenēs, ut solēbam, atque etiam experior quantum apud illōs auctōritātis ex studiīs meīs habeam. Nam proximē inter sē iocābantur: intrāvī, silentium factum est. Hoc ad illōrum laudem magis quam ad meam pertinet.

Cum omnēs prōfessōrēs audīverō, quid dē quōque sentiam scrībam. Dēbeō enim tibi, dēbeō memoriae frātris tuī hanc fidem, hoc studium, praesertim in tantā rē.

310. 31. The Secret of Success

Mīrāris quō modō tot librōs avunculus meus, homō occupātus, scrībere potuerit. Magis mīrāberis sī scīveris illum causās ēgisse, vīxisse LV annōs, medium[1] tempus impedītum esse officiīs maximīs et amīcitiā prīncipum. Sed erat ācre ingenium, incrēdibile studium. Studēre incipiēbat hieme ab hōrā septimā noctis. Erat somnī[2] parātissimī, nōn numquam[3] etiam inter ipsa studia īnstantis[4] et dēserentis.[4] Ante lūcem ībat ad Vespasiānum imperātōrem (nam ille quoque noctibus ūtēbātur), inde ad officium datum. Reversus domum, reliquum tempus studiīs reddēbat. Post levem cibum saepe aestāte iacēbat in sōle, liber legēbātur, ille ēnotābat.[5] Dīcere solēbat nūllum esse librum tam malum ut nōn aliquā parte ūtilis esset. Post sōlem plērumque frīgidā aquā lavābātur;[6] deinde dormiēbat minimum. Tum quasi aliō diē studēbat in cēnae tempus.

Meminī quendam ex amīcīs, cum lēctor quaedam verba male prōnūntiāvisset, eum revocāvisse et iterum prōnūntiāre coēgisse. Huic avunculus meus dīxit: "Nōnne intellēxerās?" Cum ille nōn negāret, "Cūr revocābās? Decem versūs hōc modō perdidimus."

---

[1] *time in between.*

[2] (*a man*) *of.* Napoleon also had the habit of taking short naps at any time or place.

[3] *not never*, i.e. *sometimes.*

[4] Modifies **somnī.** [5] *took notes.*

[6] *bathed* (*himself*). The passive is here used reflexively ("middle" voice)

FIG. 90. ANCIENT ROME

The Forum is in the foreground. The Arch of Septimius Severus is immediately in front. The Colosseum and, at the extreme right, part of the buildings of the Palatine Hill are in the background.

Etiam dum lavātur audiēbat servum legentem. In itinere, quasi solūtus cēterīs cūrīs, huic ūnī reī vacābat; ad latus servus erat cum librō et tabulīs, cuius manūs hieme manicīs[1] mūniēbantur, nē ūllum tempus studī āmitterētur. Perīre omne tempus nōn studiīs datum arbitrābātur.

Read Church, Chapter XXIII.

311. 32. THE GOOD DIE YOUNG

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostrī fīliā minōre mortuā. Nihil umquam fēstīvius[2] aut amābilius quam illam puellam vīdī. Nōndum annōs XIII complēverat, et iam

[1] *gloves.* [2] *more charming.*

FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL

In the foreground is the Hall of Records. In the left background is the rest of the Palatine Hill. The extension of this panorama to the right is found in Figs. 18, 97, 42.

illī[1] anūs[2] prūdentia, mātrōnae gravitās erat et tamen suāvitās puellae. Ut[3] illa patris cervīcibus[4] haerēbat! Ut nōs, amīcōs patris, et amanter et modestē complectēbātur![5] Ut magistrōs amābat! Quam studiōsē, quam intellegenter legēbat! Ut parcē lūdēbat! Quā patientiā, quā etiam cōnstantiā ultimam valētūdinem tulit! Medicīs[6] pārēbat, sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur, ipsamque sē vīribus animī sustinēbat. Hae vīrēs nec spatiō valētūdinis nec timōre mortis frāctae sunt. Itaque plūrēs graviōrēsque causās

---

[1] Dative of possessor (**424**). [2] *of an old woman.*
[3] *how.* [4] *neck.*
[5] *embraced.* [6] See **421**.

dolōris nōbīs relīquit. Iam spōnsa erat ēgregiō iuvenī, iam ēlēctus nūptiārum diēs, iam nōs vocātī.

Nōn possum exprimere verbīs quantum animō vulnus accēperim, cum audīvī Fundānum ipsum imperantem ut illa pecunia quam in vestēs et gemmās impēnsūrus esset[1] in unguenta et odōrēs[2] impenderētur. Āmīsit fīliam quae nōn minus mōrēs eius quam vultum referēbat.[3]

312. 33. A Devoted Wife

Aeger erat Paetus, marītus Arriae, aeger etiam fīlius. Fīlius dēcessit. Huic illa ita fūnus parāvit ut ignōrāret marītus. Cum cubiculum eius intrāret, vīvere fīlium atque etiam commodiōrem esse dīcēbat, ac saepe marītō interrogantī quid ageret puer respondēbat, "Bene quiētem cēpit et cibum sūmpsit." Deinde, cum lacrimae vincerent, ēgrediēbātur. Tum sē dolōrī dabat. Compositō vultū redībat.

Paetus cum Scrībōniānō arma in Īllyricō contrā Claudium mōverat. Occīsō Scrībōniānō, Rōmam Paetus trahēbātur. Erat ascēnsūrus nāvem; Arria mīlitēs ōrābat ut simul impōnerētur. "Datūrī estis," inquit, "marītō meō, cōnsulārī virō, servōs aliquōs quōrum ē manū cibum capiat[4] et vestem et calceōs.[5] Omnia haec ego sōla faciam." Hōc negātō, illa condūxit parvum nāvigium et magnam nāvem secūta est.

Postquam Rōmam pervēnērunt, illa gladium strīnxit, in corde suō dēfīxit, extrāxit, marītō dedit, addidit vōcem immortālem ac paene dīvīnam: "Paete, nōn dolet."[6]

---

[1] Translate as if indicative.

[2] *perfumes*, for the funeral.

[3] The urn containing the girl's ashes was actually found in 1881 in the family tomb three miles north of Rome. The inscription on it reads: **d**(īs) **m**(ānibus) **Miniciae Mārcellae Fundānī fīliae. V**(īxit) **a**(nnīs) **xii, m**(ēnsibus) **xi, d**(iēbus) **vii.** The parts in parentheses complete the abbreviation found in the inscription. The first two words mean "To the deified shades (of)."

[4] *he may take.* [5] *shoes.* [6] *it does not hurt.*

313. 34. A Busy Holiday

Omne hoc tempus inter tabulās ac librōs grātissimā quiēte ēgī. "Quō modō," inquis, "in urbe potuistī?" Circēnsēs lūdī erant, quō genere spectāculī minimē teneor. Nihil novum, nihil varium, nihil quod nōn semel spectāvisse sufficiat.[1] Mīror tot mīlia virōrum tam puerīliter cupere identidem vidēre currentēs equōs, īnsistentēs curribus[2] hominēs. Nōn vēlōcitāte equōrum aut hominum arte trahuntur.[3] Favent pannō,[4] pannum amant. Sī in ipsō cursū hic color illūc, ille hūc trānsferātur,[5] studium favorque trānsferētur,[6] et statim aurīgās illōs, equōs illōs quōs procul nōscunt, quōrum clāmant nōmina, relinquent. Tanta grātia, tanta auctōritās in ūnā vīlissimā tunicā, nōn modo apud vulgus sed apud quōsdam gravēs hominēs. Capiō aliquam

Fig. 91. At the Circus

Music furnished by a horn and an organ during the Circus games. From a mosaic found at Trèves, Germany.

---

[1] Translate as if indicative (**474**). The subject is **spectāvisse**.

[2] *standing in chariots.* [3] *they are attracted.*

[4] *the cloth*, referring to the different colors worn by the drivers of the various racing clubs (*cf.* **tunicā** below); we may compare the colors of college athletic teams and of the professional baseball teams ("Red Sox," "White Sox"). The point is that the spectators are interested, not in the skill of the drivers, but in the side they represent.

[5] *should be transferred.*

[6] Singular because the two subjects represent one idea.

voluptātem quod hāc voluptāte nōn capior. Et ōtium meum in litterīs per hōs diēs collocō, quōs aliī perdunt. Valē.

314. 35. Pliny and Tacitus[1]

Saepe mihi causam agentī accidit ut iūdicēs, cum diū sē intrā iūdicum auctōritātem gravitātemque tenuissent, omnēs subitō quasi victī coāctīque cōnsurgerent mēque laudārent. Saepe ē senātū fāmam rettulī. Numquam tamen maiōrem cēpī voluptātem quam nūper ex sermōne Cornēlī Tacitī. Nārrābat sēdisse sēcum lūdīs circēnsibus proximīs equitem Rōmānum. Hic post variōs sermōnēs quaesīvit: "Italicus es an prōvinciālis?" Tacitus respondit: "Nōvistī mē, et quidem ex studiīs meīs." Tum ille dīxit: "Tacitus es an Plīnius?" Exprimere nōn possum quam sit grātum mihi quod uterque nostrum[2] ex studiīs nōtus est hīs quibus aliter ignōtus est.

Accidit aliud ante paucōs diēs simile. Accumbēbat mēcum in cēnā Rūfīnus. Eī proximus erat mūniceps[3] ipsīus, quī illō diē prīmum vēnerat in urbem. Cui Rūfīnus dēmōnstrans mē dīxit: "Vidēs hunc?" Multa deinde dē studiīs meīs dīxit. Et ille, "Plīnius est," inquit.

Vērum fatēbor, capiō magnum labōris meī frūctum. Sī Dēmosthenēs iūre gaudiō affectus est quod illum anus[4] Attica ita nōvit, ego fāmā meā gaudēre nōn dēbeō? Ego vērō et gaudeō et gaudēre mē dīcō.

315. 36. A Humane Master

Cōnfēcērunt mē īnfirmitātēs servōrum meōrum, mortēs etiam. Sōlācia duo sunt, nōn paria tantō dolōrī: ūnum, cōpia manūmittendī (videor enim nōn omnīnō perdidisse

---

[1] For Tacitus see p. 160, footnote 1.

[2] From **nōs**, not **noster**.

[3] *fellow townsman.*

[4] *old woman.* She recognized him and pointed him out, saying "That is Demosthenes."

quōs iam līberōs[1] perdidī); alterum, quod permittō servīs quoque quasi testāmenta facere.[2] Mandant rogantque in hīs id quod volunt; pāreō ut[3] iussus. Dīvidunt, dōnant, relinquunt, dumtaxat[4] intrā domum; nam servīs rēs pūblica quaedam et quasi cīvitās domus est.

Nōn ignōrō aliōs[5] eius modī cāsūs nihil amplius vocāre quam damnum.[6] Fortasse[7] sunt magnī sapientēsque, ut[3]

Fig. 92. The Forum of Trajan

The column, 100 feet high, has a series of reliefs on it showing Trajan's military exploits.

---

[1] From **līber**.

[2] As slaves were by law merely so much property, they could not legally own money or make wills. But in actual practice most slaves had these and other privileges.

[3] *as.* [4] *only.*

[5] Does not modify **cāsūs** but is subject of **vocāre**.

[6] *loss* (of property). [7] *perhaps.*

sibi videntur; hominēs nōn sunt. Homō enim dēbet afficī dolōre.

Dīxī dē hīs plūra fortasse[1] quam dēbuī, sed pauciōra quam voluī. Est enim quaedam etiam dolendī voluptās.

316. 37. You Were a Boy Once

Castigābat[2] quīdam fīlium suum quod paulō sūmptuōsius[3] equōs et canēs emeret.[4] Huic ego, "Heus tū," inquam, "numquamne fēcistī quod ā patre reprehendī posset?[5] Nōnne etiam nunc facis quod reprehendī possit?[5] Nōnne omnēs hominēs aliquō errōre dūcuntur?" Admonitus hōc exemplō sevēritātis haec tibi prō amōre nostrō scrīpsī nē tū

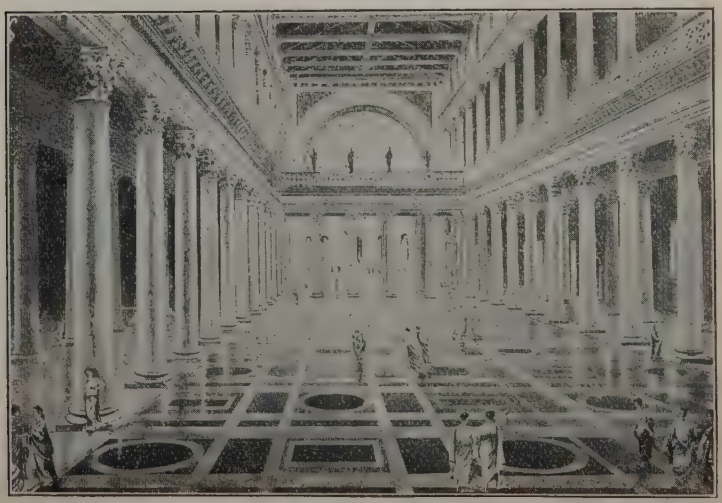


Fig. 93. Basilica Ulpia as It Was

A magnificent court house, built by Trajan as part of his forum. The court houses in the Roman Forum and the Forum itself were no longer sufficiently large to care for the needs of the city.

---

[1] *perhaps.* [2] *was scolding.* [3] *too extravagantly.*
[4] See **482.** [5] Translate as if indicative (**474**).

quoque fīlium tuum dūrius tractārēs.[1] Cōgitā et illum puerum esse et tē fuisse, atque tē hominem esse et hominis patrem. Valē.

317. 38. How to Keep Young

Spūrinna senex omnia ōrdine agit. Hōrā secundā calceōs[2] poscit, ambulat mīlia passuum tria nec minus animum quam corpus exercet. Sī adsunt amīcī, sermōnēs explicantur; sī nōn, liber legitur dum ambulat. Deinde cōnsīdit et liber rūrsus aut sermō. Tum vehiculum ascendit cum uxōre vel aliquō amīcō. Cōnfectīs septem mīlibus passuum iterum ambulat mīlle, iterum cōnsīdit. Ubi hōra balneī nūntiāta est (est autem hieme nōna, aestāte octāva), in sōle ambulat. Deinde pilā[3] lūdit vehementer et diū; nam hōc quoque exercitātiōnis genere pugnat cum senectūte. LXXVII annōs ēgit sed aurium et oculōrum et corporis vigor adhūc est integer.

Read Church, Chapter XXV.

318. 39. The Two Lovers[4]

Cum M. Plautius imperiō senātūs classem LX nāvium in Asiam redūceret Tarentumque pervēnisset atque ibi uxor eius Orestilla, quae eum secūta erat, morbō oppressa dēcessisset, is, strictō gladiō, in rogō eius sē occīdit. Quem amīcī, sīcut erat, togam gerentem corporī uxōris iūnxērunt. Quōrum sepulchrum, quod etiam nunc cōnspicitur, vocātur Graecā linguā "duōrum amantium." Crēdō, sī mortuī sentīre possunt, Plautium et Orestillam gaudentēs ad tenebrās[5] iisse. Ubi maximus amor est, melius est morte iungī quam distrahī vītā.

---

[1] *treat.* [2] *shoes.* [3] *ball.*
[4] From **Valerius Maximus.**
[5] *darkness* (of the lower world).

319. 40. Quotations from Plautus and Terence[1]

1. Aquam plōrat,[2] cum lavat, prōfundere.
2. Dictum sapientī sat est.
3. Nūllī est hominī perpetuum bonum.
4. Dāvus sum, nōn Oedipūs.[3]
5. Hinc illae lacrimae.[4]
6. Nē quid[5] nimis.
7. Nūllum[6] est iam dictum quod nōn dictum sit prius.
8. Quid fors feret, ferēmus aequō animō.
9. Quot hominēs, tot sententiae; suus cuique mōs.

320. 41. Quotations from Juvenal[7]

1. Probitās laudātur et alget.[8]
2. Pānem et circēnsēs.[9]
3. Nēmō malus fēlix.
4. Quis custōdiet ipsōs custōdēs?
5. Mēns sāna in corpore sānō.

---

[1] These writers of comedy lived in the second century B.C. Their plays have greatly influenced the modern drama. The first three quotations are from **Plautus**; the rest from **Terence.** The plays of the former display a more rollicking humor; of the latter, a more refined style.

[2] *weeps;* **prōfundere** depends on it. The line describes a miser.

[3] The slave Davus says he is no guesser of riddles, as was Oedipus, who guessed the riddle of the Sphinx.

[4] The phrase came to be proverbial, applied to the explanation of anything requiring explanation.

[5] *anything* (**390, Note**).

[6] For **nihil.** Translate **sit** as if indicative (**474**).

[7] **Juvenal** was a writer of satire who lived at the beginning of the second century A.D. He was a contemporary of Pliny and Tacitus. The vices of his age are the theme of his poems.

[8] *shivers.* The honest man is usually poor — too poor to buy warm clothing for himself.

[9] *bread and circus games* — all that the degenerate Romans of his day are interested in, according to Juvenal.

321. 42. Miscellaneous Quotations[1]

1. Dīvīna nātūra dedit agrōs, ars hūmāna aedificāvit urbēs.

2. Concordiā parvae rēs[2] crēscunt, discordiā maximae dīlābuntur.[3]

3. Est deus in nōbīs.

4. Fās[4] est et[5] ab hoste docērī.

5. Mediō[6] tūtissimus ībis.

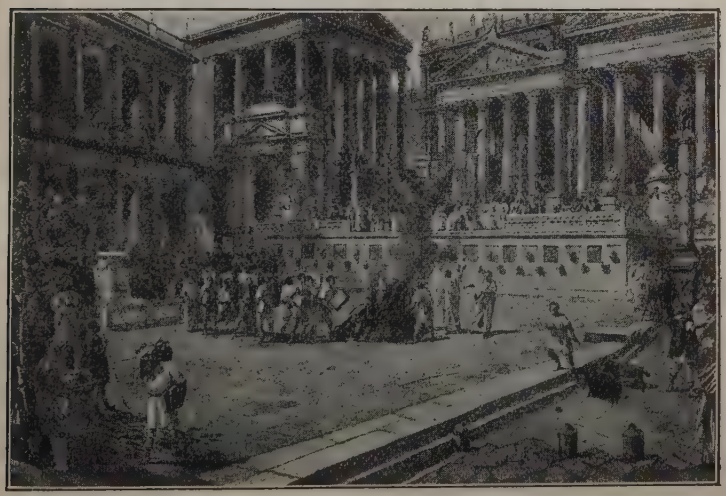


Fig. 94. The Roman Forum as It Was

The emperor Trajan cancelled the unpaid taxes of many people, and the scene shows the public ceremony of burning the tax records.

---

[1] No. 1 is from a treatise on farming written by **Varro,** a contemporary of Cicero. No. 2 is from **Sallust,** a historian of the same period. Nos. 3, 4, and 5 are from **Ovid** (see **322**). No. 7 is attributed to the emperor **Tiberius.** Nos. 8 and 9 are from the work on oratory written by **Quintilian,** Rome's greatest school-teacher, among whose pupils were Pliny and Tacitus. Nos. 10 and 11 are from **Tacitus.**

[2] Supply **pūblicae.** [3] *fall.* [4] *right* (indeclinable).

[5] *even.* [6] Supply **itinere.**

6. Ratiō omnia vincit.

7. In cīvitāte līberā linguam mentemque līberās esse (dīcēbat).

8. Deus nūllō[1] magis hominem sēparāvit ā cēterīs[2] quam dīcendī facultāte.

9. Damnant quod nōn intellegunt.

10. Auferre, trucīdāre,[3] rapere falsīs nōminibus imperium, atque ubi sōlitūdinem faciunt pācem appellant.

11. Omne ignōtum prō magnificō.[4]

12. Neque laus in cōpiā neque culpa in pēnūriā cōnsistit.

322. 43. Orpheus and Eurydice[5]

"Omnia dēbēmus vōbīs,[6] paulumque morātī
Sērius aut citius sēdem properāmus ad ūnam.
Tendimus hūc omnēs, haec est domus ultima, vōsque
Hūmānī generis longissima rēgna tenētis.
Haec[7] quoque, cum iūstōs mātūra perēgerit annōs,
Iūris erit vestrī; prō mūnere poscimus ūsum.[8]
Quod[9] sī fāta negant veniam[10] prō coniuge, certum est

---

[1] *in no way.*

[2] i.e. *all other creatures.*

[3] *murder.* The infinitives are the objects of **appellant:** *to . . . they call* **imperium** *and . . . they call (it)* **pācem.**

[4] *i.e.* people think so. Supply **est.**

[5] From Ovid's ***Metamorphoses,*** a poem containing many fascinating myths. Ovid was a born story-teller. He lived in the age of Augustus.

Orpheus was such a fine musician that he could make even the trees and stones listen to and follow him. When his wife Eurydice died, he followed her to Hades and by his wonderful singing persuaded Pluto, king of Hades, to let her go back to the land of the living. But there was one condition that Orpheus should not look back until he had come out of Hades. At the last moment Orpheus looked back to see whether Eurydice was following, and she disappeared forever.

[6] Pluto and Proserpina, king and queen of Hades. Orpheus is speaking.

[7] Eurydice.

[8] *i.e.* not for a permanent gift but as a temporary loan.

[9] *but.* [10] *boon,* of longer life.

Nōlle[1] redīre mihī; lētō[2] gaudēte duōrum."
Tālia dīcentem[3] nervōsque[4] ad verba moventem
Exsanguēs flēbant animae.

Nec rēgia coniūnx
Sustinet ōrantī, nec quī[5] regit īma, negāre;

FIG. 95. MERCURY, EURYDICE, AND ORPHEUS

Eurydicemque vocant. Umbrās erat illa recentēs
Inter[6] et incessit passū dē vulnere tardō.
Hanc simul et lēgem[7] Rhodopēius accipit Orpheus,

---

[1] Supply the subject from **mihī**: *I have resolved that I*, etc.

[2] *death* (**443**).

[3] Modifies **eum** understood, which is the object of **flēbant.**

[4] *strings* (of the lyre).

[5] Pluto. The antecedent of the clause is a second subject of **sustinet; ōrantī** refers to Orpheus and depends on **negāre.**

[6] Governs **umbrās; tardō** modifies **passū.**

[7] *condition;* the **nē** clause is in apposition with **lēgem.**

Nē flectat retrō sua lūmina, dōnec Avernās[1]
Exierit vallēs; aut irrita[2] dōna futūra.
Carpitur acclīvis per mūta silentia trāmes,[3]
Arduus, obscūrus, cālīgine[4] dēnsus opācā.
Nec procul āfuerunt tellūris[5] margine summae.
Hic, nē[6] dēficeret, metuēns, avidusque videndī,
Flexit amāns oculōs; et prōtinus illa relāpsa est,
Bracchiaque intendēns prēndīque et prēndere captāns
Nīl nisi cēdentēs īnfēlīx arripit aurās.

323. 44. Miscellaneous Quotations[7]

1. Ipsa quidem virtūs pretium sibi.
2. Omnia mors aequat.
3. Facis dē necessitāte virtūtem.
4. Magna est vēritās et praevalet.
5. Quī dēsīderat pācem praeparet bellum.
6. Cōgitātiōnis poenam nēmō patitur.
7. Iūris praecepta sunt haec: honestē vīvere, alterum nōn laedere, suum cuique tribuere.
8. Necessitās nōn habet lēgem.
9. Dē duōbus malīs, minus est semper ēligendum.
10. Ō quam cito trānsit glōria mundī!
11. Ipsa scientia potestās est.
12. Ego cōgitō, ergō sum.

---

[1] Adjective modifying **vallēs**. See Fig. 82.
[2] *void*.
[3] *path* (to the upper world).
[4] *mist*.
[5] *earth*.
[6] *lest*, with **metuēns**, *fearing*.
[7] Nos. 1 and 2 are quoted from the poet **Claudian** (about 400 A.D.). No. 3 is from **St. Jerome**, who translated the Bible. No. 4 is from the *Vulgate* (Jerome's translation of the Bible). Nos. 6 and 7 are from the *Corpus Iuris Civilis*, the great law code compiled in the sixth century, the basis of modern law in many countries. Nos. 9 and 10 are from **Thomas à Kempis**, the great theologian of the Middle Ages. Nos. 11 and 12 are from two modern philosophers, **Francis Bacon** and **Descartes**. No. 13 was applied to Benjamin Franklin.

13. Ēripuit caelō fulmen,[1] mox scēptra tyrannīs.
14. Crocodīlī lacrimae.
15. Tempora mūtantur[2] et nōs mūtāmur[2] in illīs.
16. Vestis virum facit.
17. Proximus ille deō est quī scit ratiōne tacēre.
18. Festīnā lentē.[3]

324. 45. "Poor Little Sparrow"[4]

Lūgēte,[5] Ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque[6]
Et quantum est hominum venustiōrum![7]
Passer mortuus est meae puellae,
Passer, dēliciae[8] meae puellae,
Quem plūs illa oculīs[9] suīs amābat;
Nam mellītus[10] erat, suamque nōrat[11]
Ipsa tam bene quam puella mātrem,
Nec sēsē ā gremiō[12] illius movēbat,
Sed circumsiliēns modo[13] hūc modo illūc
Ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat.[14]
Quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum[15]
Illūc unde negant redīre quemquam.

---

[1] *lightning.*

[2] Use the active voice in translating into English.

[3] *Make haste slowly.*

[4] The author of this charming poem, **Catullus,** a younger contemporary of Caesar and Cicero, was one of Rome's greatest geniuses. In this poem he mourns the death of the pet sparrow (**passer**) of his sweetheart Lesbia, as he calls her. Her real name was Clodia.

[5] *mourn.*

[6] *i.e.* all the gods of love and beauty.

[7] *all the handsome men there are.* What literally?

[8] *pet;* nominative.

[9] Ablative of comparison (**437**).

[10] *sweet as honey.*

[11] For **nōverat.** With **suam** supply **dominam** (Lesbia). **Ipsa** modifies **puella.**

[12] *lap.* [13] *now . . . now.*

[14] *chirped.* The word imitates the sound ("peep") made by the bird.

[15] *shadowy;* to Hades. See **tenebrae,** *darkness* (line 13).

At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae
Orcī, quae omnia bella[1] dēvorātis;
Tam bellum mihi passerem abstulistis.
Ō factum male! Iō miselle[2] passer!
Tuā nunc operā meae puellae
Flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī.[3]

325. 46. Proverbs of Publilius Syrus[4]

1. Aut amat aut ōdit mulier; nihil est tertium.
2. Avārus ipse miseriae causa est suae.
3. Avārus, nisi cum moritur, nihil rēctē facit.

Fig. 96. The Court House at Pompeii

[1] Adjective, from **bellus,** *beautiful; cf.* English *belle.*

[2] Diminutive of **miser:** *poor little.*

[3] The diminutives (**ocellus** from **oculus, turgidulus** from **turgidus,** *swollen*) are used, like **miselle** above, for pathetic effect, as they heighten the tenderness and affection of the expression. **Rubent** means *are red.*

[4] See **179.**

4. Cuivīs[1] dolōrī remedium est patientia.
5. Comes[2] fācundus[3] in viā prō vehiculō est.
6. Dolor animī gravior multō est quam corporis.
7. Effugere cupiditātem rēgnum est vincere.
8. Etiam capillus ūnus habet umbram suam.
9. Inopī bis dat quī cito dat.
10. Male imperandō summum imperium āmittitur.
11. Necesse est minima maximōrum esse initia.
12. Perīcula timidus etiam quae nōn sunt videt.
13. Paucōrum improbitās est multōrum calamitās.
14. Quicquid fit cum virtūte fit cum glōriā.
15. Stultī timent fortūnam, sapientēs ferunt.
16. Stultum facit fortūna quem vult perdere.
17. Taciturnitās stultō hominī prō sapientiā est.

326. 47. Roman Wit[4]

An Unfair Exchange

1. Cūr nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?
   Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs.

A Friend and His Faults

2. Difficilis, facilis, iūcundus, acerbus es īdem.
   Nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē.

"Fifty-Fifty"

3. Nūbere[5] vīs Prīscō: nōn mīror, Paula; sapīstī.[6]
   Dūcere[5] tē nōn vult Prīscus: et[7] ille sapit.

---

[1] Dative: *any at all* (modifies **dolōrī**).

[2] *companion.*

[3] *eloquent, interesting.*

[4] From the epigrams of **Martial,** a poet who lived toward the end of the first century A.D.

[5] Lit., *take the veil for,* used of a woman marrying, whereas the word used of a man is **dūcere (domum).**

[6] Contracted form of **sapīvistī:** *you are wise.*

[7] *also.*

Rich Wives

4. Uxōrem quārē locuplētem[1] dūcere nōlim
Quaeritis? Uxōrī nūbere[2] nōlo meae.
Īnferior mātrōna suō sit, Prīsce, marītō;
Nōn aliter fīunt fēmina virque parēs.

The Plagiarist

5. Quem recitās meus est, ō Fīdentīne, libellus,
Sed, male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus.

A Good Match

6. Cum sītis similēs parēsque vītā,
Uxor pessima, pessimus marītus,
Mīror nōn bene convenīre[3] vōbīs.

327. 48. A Bit of Medieval Fiction[4]

Cornēlius Nepōs Sallustiō Crīspō suō salūtem.[5]

Dum multa agō Athēnīs,[6] invēnī historiam Darētis Phrygiī ipsīus manū scrīptam, ut[7] titulus indicat, quam dē Graecīs et Trōiānīs mandāvit posterīs. Quam ego summō amōre complexus statim trānstulī. Cui nihil adiciendum vel dēmi-

---

[1] *rich.*

[2] See p. 189, footnote 5. A man who marries a rich wife becomes the lady of the house.

[3] Impersonal: *that you are not well suited.*

[4] From the introduction of a medieval form of the story of the fall of Troy, ostensibly written by the Trojan Dares, supposed to be one of those who took part in the Trojan War. It was probably written in the fifth century A.D. The introduction purports to be a letter written by the Roman historian Nepos to the historian Sallust, in which he tells of the finding of the original manuscript. Of course, the whole story is made up. This version of the story of Troy was very popular in the Middle Ages, and many stories were based on it.

[5] Supply **dīcit,** *sends greetings.*

[6] *at Athens* (**452**).

[7] With the indicative; therefore *as.*

nuendum putāvī. Optimum putāvī, ut[1] fuit vērē et simpliciter perscrīpta, sīc eam in Latīnam linguam vertere, ut omnēs cognōscere possent quō modō rēs essent gestae quās Darēs Phrygius posterīs mandāvit. Hic ipse per id tempus vīxit et mīles fuit cum Graecī Trōiānōs oppugnārent. Minimē Homērō crēdendum, quī multīs annīs nātus est postquam bellum hoc gestum est.

328. 49. Petrarch and Cicero[2]

Ab ipsā pueritiā, ubi cēterī Aesōpō sē dant, ego librōs Cicerōnis lēgī. Et illā quidem aetāte nihil intellegere poteram, sōla dulcia quaedam verba mē dētinēbant.

Posteā variās amīcitiās contrāxī, quod concursus ex omnī regiōne factus est in locō in quō eram. Amīcīs abeuntibus et petentibus quid vellem ē patriā suā mittī, respondēbam nihil praeter librōs Cicerōnis. Et saepe litterās, saepe pecūniam mīsī, nōn per Italiam modo, ubi eram nōtior, sed per Galliās atque Germāniam et ūsque ad Hispāniās atque Britanniam. Etiam in Graeciam mīsī, et ē locō ē quō Cicerōnem exspectābam habuī Homērum. "Labor omnia vincit," inquit Vergilius. Multō studiō multāque cūrā multōs librōs collēgī. Sōlus Cicerō mihi[3] sapiēns erat. Dē quō Quīntiliānus dīxit: "Bene dē sē spēret[4] cui Cicerō placēbit."

Posteā, cum Leodium[5] pervēnissem, invēnī duās ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis; ūnam meā manū scrīpsī, alteram amīcus scrīpsit. Et, ut rīdeās, in tam bonā urbe aliquid ātrāmentī[6] (et id crocō[7] simillimum) reperīre difficillimum erat.

---

[1] *as.*

[2] **Petrarch** (1304–1374) has been called the first modern man. He was largely responsible for initiating the movement known as the *Renaissance*, or *Revival of Learning*. He had an intense interest in the ancient classics, especially in Cicero. This letter tells of his attempts to secure Cicero's works. If it had not been for the activity of Petrarch and some of his friends and followers, many ancient works would have been lost to us.

[3] *in my eyes* (**419**).

[4] *let him hope.* The subject is to be supplied by the antecedent of **cui.**

[5] *Liège*, in Belgium. [6] *ink.* [7] *saffron, yellow.*

FIG. 97. ANCIENT ROME
Looking across the Campus Martius.

Et dē librīs quidem *Reī Pūblicae* iam dēspērāns, librum *Dē Cōnsōlātiōne*[1] quaesīvī, nec invēnī. Magnum librum epistulārum[2] manū propriā scrīpsī, adversā tum valētūdine; sed valētūdinem magnus amor operis et gaudium et habendī cupiditās vincēbant. Hunc librum, ut mihi semper ad manum esset, ad iānuam pōnere solēbam.

329. 50. THE SPIRIT OF FORGIVENESS[3]

Hodiē maximē placuit mihi legentī tam Christiāna sententia in homine non Christiānō. Phōciōn enim Athēniēnsis,

[1] This treatise, "On Consolation," has never been found.

[2] Cicero's letters to his friend Atticus.

[3] From the *Colloquies* ("Conversations") of **Erasmus** (1467–1536), one of the greatest scholars of the later Renaissance. He habitually wrote and spoke Latin.

FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL

The tomb of Hadrian is in the background. See Fig. 90.

cum iniūstē damnātus esset, rogātus ab amīcīs quid vellet mandārī fīliīs suīs, "Nē hanc," inquit, "iniūriam velint umquam memoriā tenēre."

Aristīdēs Phōciōnī simillimus erat, mōribus optimīs, adeō ut populus illī tribueret nōmen "Iūstī." Ob huius nōminis invidiam hic vir, optimē dē rē pūblicā meritus, iussus est in exsilium īre. Postquam intellēxit populum nōn aliā rē offēnsum quam "Iūstī" nōmine, pāruit aequō animō. In exsiliō rogātus ab amīcīs quid precārētur ingrātissimae cīvitātī, "nihil aliud," inquit, "nisi tantam prōsperitātem ut illīs numquam in mentem veniat Aristīdēs."

330. A LATIN PLAY

SABĪNAE

Persōnae

Rōmulus, *dux Rōmānōrum*
Talassius
Tarpeius
Hostīlius
Celer
} *Rōmānī*

Aliī Rōmānī

Tatius, *dux Sabīnōrum*
Amiternus
Frentānus
Mettius
Proculus
} *Sabīnī*

Aliī Sabīnī

Tatia, *fīlia Tatī*
Amiterna, *fīlia Amiternī*
Frentāna, *fīlia Frentānī*
Mettia, *fīlia Mettī*
Procula, *fīlia Proculī*
} *Sabīnae*

Aliae Sabīnae

Locus: silva inter Rōmam (ā sinistrā parte) et oppidum Sabīnōrum (ā dextrā parte). Flūmen parvum in silvā est.

Tempus: annō DCCXLVI ante Christum.

(*Ā sinistrā parte prōcēdit Talassius. Urnam portat. In dextram partem spectat.*)

℟ **Talassius.** Āh! Illam videō! Quam pulchra est —— mea puella, mea lūx! (*Ā sinistrā parte prōcēdit Tarpeius. Urnam portat. In dextram partem spectat.*)

℟ **Tarpeius.** Ubi est vīta mea! Prōcēdetne? Āh! Fortūna discessit —— puella mea abest. Nōn prōcēdit.

℟ **Talassius.** Puella mea, nōnne Talassium vidēs? Adsum, et tē amō!

℟ **Tarpeius.** Ipsa prōcēdit! Āh, rēgīna animī meī es! —— sed nōmen tuum cognōscere nōn potuī! Āh, vīta mea!

(*Ā sinistrā parte prōcēdit Hostīlius, tum reliquī Rōmānī. Urnās portant.*)

℟ **Hostīlius.** Ubi est Sabīna mea?

℟ **Aliī Rōmānī.** Puellam meam videō!

℟ **Hostīlius** (*Tarpeiō*). Nōnne illam puellam vidēs? Mea est. Nōnne pulchra est?

℟ **Tarpeius.** Sed illa pulchrior est —— mea est!

℟ **Talassius.** Mea pulcherrima est!

(*Prōcēdit Celer. Urnam portat. Properat.*)

Celer. Cavēte! Rōmulus adest! Et nōs oppidum relīquimus! Tardī estis! Nōnne properāre potestis?

Rōmānī. Ōh! Quō properābimus? Ubi est salūs?

Celer. In silvā! (*In silvam properant Rōmānī. Ā sinistrā parte prōcēdit Rōmulus.*)

Rōmulus. Rēx sum. Oppidum magnum et pulchrum meum est. Populus ex nōmine meō Rōmānus appellātur. Lēgēs et iūdicia dō. Bellum gerere possum. Etiam nunc clārus sum. Cūr nōn satis est? Cūr, Rōmānīs absentibus, hunc locum petō? Cūr Sabīnam amō —— fīliam rēgis Tatī? (*Talassius sē movet.*) Quid est hoc? Quis adest? (*Caput Hostīlī videt.*) Ahā! (*In silvam prōcēdit, Rōmānōs ēdūcit.*) Quid in hōc locō agitis? Cūr oppidum relīquistis? Nōnne respondēre potestis —— stultī!

Tarpeius. A —— a ——

Hostīlius. Er —— er ——

Celer. Aquam ē flūmine portābam.

Aliī Rōmānī. Certē, certē! Aquam portābāmus! Nōnne urnās vidēs?

Rōmulus. Bah! Hīs urnīs flūmen removēre poteritis!

Talassius. Necesse est oppidō multam aquam habēre.

Aliī. Multam!

Celer. Rēx noster! Cūr virī Rōmānī aquam portāre dēbent? Officium servōrum et puellārum est.

Rōmulus. Servī et puellae in oppidō nostrō nōn sunt. Est oppidum virōrum.

Hostīlius. Rēx noster, nōnne in oppidō nostrō aut servī aut puellae esse dēbent? Virī sumus. Virōs aquam portāre nōn oportet. —— Nōnne id putās?

Talassius. Rēx noster, nōnne puellās Sabīnās iam spectāvistī? Nōnne pulchrae sunt?

Celer (*Talassiō*). S–st! (*Rōmulō*). Nōnne bene labōrant?

Talassius. Rēx noster, puellam Sabīnam amō!

Tarpeius. Et ego!

Hostīlius, Celer, Aliī. Et ego!

Rōmulus. Quid?

Hostīlius. Nōmen illīus nōn cognōvī, sed ipsam spectāvī, et amō!

Aliī. Et ego!

Rōmulus. Virīne Rōmānī dē puellīs cōgitant? —— Et nōmina puellārum nōn cognōvērunt! Officium virōrum Rōmānōrum est bellum gerere, oppidum magnum facere, clārōs esse —— nōnne haec memoriā tenētis? Puellaene Sabīnae virōs Rōmānōs vīcērunt? Bah!

Celer. Rēx noster, nōnne amāvistī?

Rōmulus. Quid? Clārus sum, et rēx! Puella Rōmulum nōn vīcit.

Celer. Nōnne Tatia pulchra Rōmulum iam vīcit?

Rōmulus. Quid dīcis? Quis tibi ——

Talassius. Rēx noster, oppidum nostrum pulchrum est, sed oppidum Sabīnōrum pulchrius est!

Celer. Ad oppidum Sabīnōrum prōcēdere cupimus. In eō oppidō virīs labōrāre nōn necesse est.

Tarpeius. Prōcēdāmus, ut puellās petāmus.

Rōmulus. Puellās nōn obtinēbitis. Puellam dē rēge Sabīnōrum petīvī —— ego, Rōmulus, rēx Rōmānōrum —— sed nōn obtinuī.

Rōmānī. Quid?

Celer (*Talassiō*). Nōnne Tatia erat nōmen puellae? Ha, ha!

Rōmulus. Quid dīxī? Nōn puellam, sed —— equum, dē rēge petīvī!

Rōmānī. Ōh!

Rōmulus. Respondit, "Rōmānīs nōn dabō! Rōmānī barbarī estis!"

Celer. Barbarīne?

Rōmānī. Barbarī nōn sumus.

Talassius. Puellās obtinēbimus!

Rōmulus. Sed rēx puellās nōn dabit.

Hostīlius. Pugnābimus! Id possumus!

Celer. Oppidum Sabīnōrum occupābimus!

Tarpeius. Bellum!

Rōmulus. S — st! Bellum nōn gerēmus! —— puellās autem habēbimus!

Rōmānī. Quō modō?

Rōmulus. Vidēbitis! Nunc necesse est ad oppidum nostrum prōcēdere. (*Ad oppidum properant omnēs.*)

II

(*Ā sinistrā parte properant Rōmulus et Rōmānī.*)

Rōmulus. Estisne parātī?

Rōmānī. Parātī sumus.

Rōmulus. Signum memoriā tenēre necesse est.

Rōmānī. Memoriā tenēmus.

Celer. Heia! Sabīnī adsunt!

(*Ā dextrā parte prōcēdunt Tatius et Sabīnī et Sabīnae.*)

Rōmulus. Tatiō, amīcō nostrō, salūtem damus! Et salūtem Sabīnīs bonīs!

Tatius. Rōmulō rēgī et Rōmānīs salūtem!

Rōmulus. Prō deō Cōnsō in hōc locō lūdōs parāvimus. Sabīnās et Sabīnōs, amīcōs nostrōs, ad lūdōs convocāvimus. Parātīne estis hōs lūdōs nunc spectāre?

Tatius. Rōmānī Sabīnīs amīcī sunt. Spectābimus.

Rōmulus. Lūdī nunc incipient.

(*Ad Sabīnās properant Rōmānī. Sabīnās rapiunt — Rōmulus Tatiam, Talassius Amiternam, Tarpeius Frentānam, Hostīlius Mettiam, Celer Proculam, reliquī Rōmānī reliquās Sabīnās. Ad sinistram partem discēdunt.*)

Vōcēs Rōmānōrum. Iō! Prō Rōmānīs et oppidō Rōmānōrum!

Vōcēs Sabīnārum. O —— o —— ōh!

Tatius. Fīliam meam!

Sabīnī. Fīliam meam! Sorōrem meam! Puellam meam!

Frentānus. Barbarī sunt!

Mettius. Poenam dabunt!

Proculus. Rēx noster! Properēmus. Rōmānōs intercipiāmus.

Tatius. Arma nōn habēmus. Ad lūdōs Rōmānī amīcōs Sabīnōs convocāvērunt.

Sabīnī. Bellum! Bellum!

Tatius. Ad oppidum nostrum! Arma obtineāmus! Rōmānī fīliās nostrās reddent et poenam dabunt!

Sabīnī. Poenam dabunt! Bellum! (*Exeunt omnēs.*)

III

(*Ā sinistrā parte prōcēdunt Rōmānī et Sabīnae. Rōmānī urnās portant.*)

Rōmulus. Et nunc, Tatia pulchra et reliquae Sabīnae, oppidum nostrum vīdistis.

Tatia. Parvum est!

Amiterna. Barbarum est!

Mettia. Oppidum nostrum pulchrius est.

Sabīnae. Ēheu! Oppidum nostrum! Quandō id vidēbimus? Ēheu!

Rōmulus (*Rōmānīs*). Quid faciēmus?

Tarpeius (*Rōmānīs*). Quō modō eās tenēre poterimus?

Sabīnae. Ēheu! Ōh patrem, mātrem, oppidum nostrum!

Rōmulus. Tatia pulchra, hoc erit oppidum nostrum —— tuum et meum!

Tatia. Barbarus es!

Frentāna. Arma habent!

Procula. Armīs Sabīnās retinēbunt! Ōh, ōh!

Celer (*Proculae*). Nōnne vidēs, Procula pulchra? Arma mea in terrā nunc sunt!

Rōmānī. Et mea, pulchra puella!

Rōmulus (*Tatiae*). Pulcherrima Sabīnārum es.

Tatia. Quid dīcis?

Rōmulus. Vīta mea es! Nōnne Rōmāna eris?

Tatia. Sed pater meus ——

Rōmulus. Dē patre cōgitāre nōn necesse est. Nōnne hunc locum vidēs? Quam pulcher est! Silvam, et flūmen ——

Tatia. Quid? Flūmen? Aquam portāre necesse erit! Aquam nōn portābō! Rēgīna sum!

Sabīnae. Quid? Aquam nōn portābō! Barbarī!

Procula. Urnās nunc portant! Nōbīs aquam urnīs illīs portāre necesse erit!

Sabīnae. Ēheu! Rōmānī nōs servās facient!

Rōmulus (*Rōmānīs*). Quid nunc faciēmus?

Celer (*Proculae*). Nōnne vidēs, Procula? Ipse aquam portābō!

Rōmānī. Ipsī aquam portābimus!

Tatia (*Rōmulō*). Stultus es! Nōn scīs aquam portāre.

Procula (*Celerī*). Sciō. Mōnstrābō.

Sabīnae. Mōnstrābō! (*Urnās prehendunt. Prōcēdunt Sabīnī; arma portant.*)

Sabīnī. Bellum! Prō puellīs nostrīs!

Sabīnae. Patrēs nostrī adsunt!

Rōmulus. Ad arma, Rōmānī!

Tarpeius. Ēheu! Oppidum nostrum!

Sabīnī. Bellum! (*Sabīnae Sabīnōs intercipiunt. Urnās iam portant.*)

Sabīnae. Pater!

Tatius. Abīte, puellae!

Proculus. Puellās nostrās līberābimus!

Amiternus. Barbarī poenam dabunt!

Tatia. Pater!

Tatius. Abī! Cūr rēgem Sabīnōrum retinēs?

Tatia. Sabīnī! Sī in Rōmānōs prōcēdētis, hanc aquam in capite accipiētis!

Tatius. Quid? Aquam?

Tatia. Armīs pugnāre nōn possumus, sed aquā pugnāre certē possumus!

Tatius. Sed, puella mea, Rōmānī ——

Frentāna. Rōmānī bonī sunt!

Amiterna. Barbarī nōn sunt!

Procula. Virī nostrī sunt!

Mettia. Nostrum oppidum novum pulchrius quam Sabīnōrum est!

Frentāna. Rōmānōs amāmus!

Sabīnī. Quid est hoc?

Rōmānī. Quid est?

Tatia. Patrēs nostrī, nōnne virōs nostrōs servābitis?

Tatius. Rōmānōs iam servāvistis, puellae, et Sabīnōs vīcistis. Victōria vestra est!

Tatia. Rōmānī, illī nunc sunt patrēs vestrī! Sabīnī, hī sunt fīliī vestrī! Amīcī estis!

Rōmānī. Patrēs, salūtem!

Sabīnī. Fīliī, salūtem!

Rōmulus. Arma nostra in terrā pōnimus.

Tatius. Et arma nostra. Pāx erit. Nōnne in oppida nostra prōcēdēmus et lūdōs deīs parābimus?

Rōmulus. Id Rōmānīs placet.

Tatius (*Rōmulō*). Sed quid nunc agent puellae?

Rōmulus (*Tatiō*). Quis scit?

(*Ad oppida sua discēdunt.*)

FIG. 98. SULLA DENOUNCES CAESAR

As a young man Caesar defied the powerful Sulla by marrying the daughter of a political enemy of Sulla. (From "Julius Caesar.")

INTRODUCTION TO PART IV

331. Julius Caesar

Most men, if great at all, excel in one field only. Caesar excelled in three — statesmanship, war, and literature. Chateaubriand has pronounced him the most complete man of all history.

After holding the usual preliminary offices, at the age of forty-one he reached the highest office within the gift of the people — the consulship. His oratorical ability, which ranked next to that of Cicero, according to ancient authorities, was no doubt an important factor in his rapid rise. His appointment for five years to the proconsulship of Gaul and Illyricum, which led ultimately to the conquest of "Farther Gaul," offered an unparalleled opportunity for the development and display of qualities of statesmanship, particularly political acumen and tact in dealing with the discordant factions among the Gauls and playing one against another. Here he often succeeded through diplomacy when force of arms would have failed. From this period dates the beginning of that national career unequaled in Roman

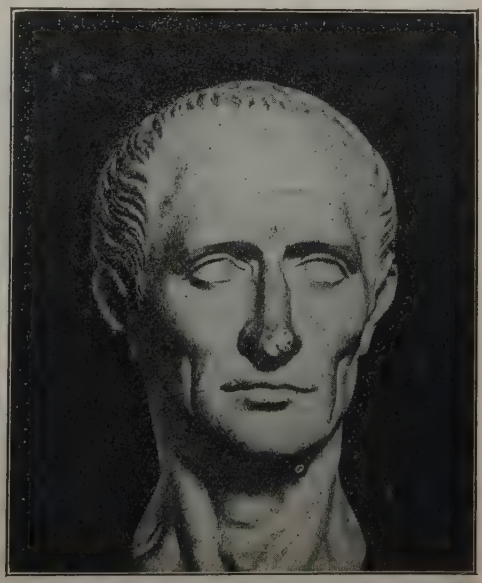


Fig. 99. Julius Caesar

history, when he became, along with Pompey and Crassus (forming the First Triumvirate or "Three-man Rule"), the most potent factor in Roman politics. He was chosen consul four times (serving in 45 B.C. as sole consul), dictator three times, and finally was made consul for ten years and dictator and imperator for life. His political reforms laid

FIG. 100. ROMAN AQUEDUCT AT NÎMES, FRANCE
Generally known as the Pont du Gard.

the foundation for the future solidarity and greatness of the Empire.

Like Cromwell's, his military genius flowered late. It was not until he was forty-three years of age that he won the proud title of imperator by commanding troops in his own right in a major engagement (*B.G.*, I, 24–27). The seven years of conquest in Gaul, with military or punitive expeditions to Germany and Britain, not only revealed Caesar

to himself as a successful leader of men, but placed at his disposal an army of trained and loyal legions, which rapidly carried him through the period of civil strife to the highest pinnacle of political power. As a military leader Caesar ranks with such outstanding geniuses as Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon.

Not till the close, apparently, of his seven years of fighting in Gaul, did Caesar set himself to the task of composing his *Commentārīī Bellī Gallicī*, not merely to enlighten the Roman reading public as to the extent and significance of his conquests "up north" in far-away Gaul, but to furnish to sober, unbiased historians of a later day the raw materials for writing an account of that epochal event. But his "Notebooks" (that is what the title *Commentārīī* means) were so lucid in style and so full and unbiased in the treatment of facts that no historian has ever had the courage to rewrite them. Although he wrote a three-book "Commentary" on the Civil War, his *Gallic War* entitles him to first rank among military annalists and historians. In this one may read the actual words and thoughts of one of the world's greatest men, supremely great in three fields of human endeavor — politics, war, and letters.

"Tall, with fair complexion and expressive black eyes, sensitive in regard to his appearance and neat to the verge of effeminacy, gracious in address and Epicurean in both tastes and beliefs, in external characteristics he might have passed for a man of the world, at home in the gay society of a luxurious capital. But in ambition, in energy, in the ability to form plans and to bring things to pass, he belied all appearances, and has probably made a deeper impression upon humanity than any other man that has ever lived." [1]

[1] Harper's *Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities*, p. 248.

332. The Effect of the Gallic Conquest upon World History

The immediate result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul was to free Italy for centuries from the fear of another invasion like that of the Gauls who swept down from the north and sacked Rome in 390 B.C. "Let the Alps sink," cried Cicero; "the gods raised them to shelter Italy from the barbarians; they are now no longer needed."

The Roman conquest of Gaul likewise relieved Italy from the German menace. Two German tribes, the Teutons and Cimbri, had annihilated two Roman armies before Marius and his legions succeeded in stemming the human tide by piling high the Alpine passes with their corpses. Caesar not only drove the Germans out of Gaul but bridged the Rhine and struck terror into the hearts of the German tribes by pursuing them into their own native forests. It was Caesar who fixed the frontier of Gaul at the Rhine, and two thousand years of strife between Teuton and Gaul, culminating in the World War, have merely seen another attempt to reëstablish it. Had it not been for Caesar's conquest of Gaul, the country extending from the Rhine to the Pyrenees and from the Alps to the ocean might have become an extension of Germany, embracing the Spanish peninsula as well. The subjugation of Gaul by the Romans gave the Greco-Italic culture time to become thoroughly rooted, not only in Gaul, but also in Spain, before the break-up of the Roman Empire. Belgium, France, Portugal, and Spain became *Latin* instead of *Teutonic*. The language, customs, and arts of Rome were gradually introduced, and the "vulgar," or spoken, Latin of Gaul became early French. Thus the whole history of western Europe was profoundly affected by the Roman conquest of Gaul. We should not forget, moreover, that through the Norman-French our own English speech became predominantly Latin,

though Caesar in his two invasions of the island had merely "revealed Britain to the Romans," as Tacitus said.

Finally, it was the conquest of Gaul that revealed Caesar to himself as lord of battles and master of men and gave him a trained army and the material resources which enabled him to defeat the veteran Pompey for the premiership of Rome and made him a dominating figure in world history. As a result, he laid the foundation of the Roman Empire. In a remarkably short time he established the principles and evolved the processes by which the Empire was developed.

333. Questions for Discussion

1. Was Rome, as the possessor of a superior culture, justified in imposing her civilization upon the primitive Gauls? 2. What would have been the probable effect upon the history of western Europe if the Germans had conquered Gaul? 3. Is our English speech the richer because of its Latin elements?

334. Ancient and Modern Battlefields in Gaul

A distinguished historian[1] has said that the French nation is the monument of Caesar's conquest of Gaul. Curiously enough, in the World War, when the France that Caesar established was facing the greatest crisis in its history, it fought on the very battlefields on which Caesar won his victories. The battle with Ariovistus, described in Book I, took place in Alsace, ever a source of strife between Gaul and Teuton. Before Caesar's arrival the German king Ariovistus had taken possession of this country. As a result of Ariovistus's defeat by Caesar it became part of Roman Gaul. In more modern times it changed hands repeatedly, until it became part of Germany as a result of Germany's defeat of France in 1870. Since the World War it has again reverted to France.

---

[1] T. Rice Holmes, *The Roman Republic* (1923). Vol. II, p. 234.

It was particularly in the second year of his campaign, as described in Book II, that Caesar's advance took him through places that played an important part in the World War. The first onrush of the Germans in the recent war brought them to the Marne River, but they were soon pushed back, and the opposing lines during most of the

FIG. 101. THE ROMAN AMPHITHEATER AT ARLES, FRANCE
Now used for bull fights.

war were on the Aisne River in that portion of the front which was nearest Paris, the ultimate goal of the Germans. The Battle of the Aisne established this position in 1914. After defeating the Helvetians, Caesar met no opposition until he reached the Aisne (**Axona**). There he defeated the Belgians near the town of Berry-au-Bac, which figured repeatedly in dispatches from the front between 1914 and 1918. On his way to the Aisne, Caesar went through the territory of the Remi, whose chief city is now named after them (Reims). This city, with its famous cathedral, was

greatly damaged by bombardment in the late war. Caesar then passed through the chief cities of the Suessiones (Soissons) and of the Ambiani (Amiens), which also figured prominently in the war news only a few years ago. The battles in Flanders in 1917 were in the land of the Morini, mentioned by Caesar at the end of Book III.[1]

335. Warfare in Ancient and Modern Times

While the introduction of firearms and heavy artillery has revolutionized warfare, yet many curious parallels remain. The Roman soldier dug trenches in order to fortify his camp; the modern "doughboy" literally "digs *himself* in." This change has been brought about by the use of high-range guns which can drop explosive shells and bursting shrapnel within an enemy's lines from a great distance. In Caesar's day the rampart formed by throwing up the earth taken from the trench about the camp afforded sufficient protection from the low-range weapons then in use. A Roman army on the march entrenched itself in this fashion every night. "Digging-in" was as vital to an army's safety then as now. "Sapping," or mining, and countermining as practiced by modern armies were employed regularly by the Romans in their sieges. The use of the spade in modern warfare and the lines of trenches, paralleling and crossing one another in an endless maze, find their counterpart (on a smaller scale, of course) in Caesar's siege of Alesia, where

Fig. 102. Roman Spade

[1] Other points of contact between the Gallic War and the World War are mentioned in the notes on the text of Caesar.

he constructed earthen ramparts and trenches for eleven miles, with a series of trenches in front of the town five feet deep, obstructed with wolf-holes, sharpened stakes, and brush barricades to guard against attacks from the town (Fig. 157). In the World War similar devices were used (Fig. 103). Caesar's outer line of defenses at Alesia extended fourteen miles.

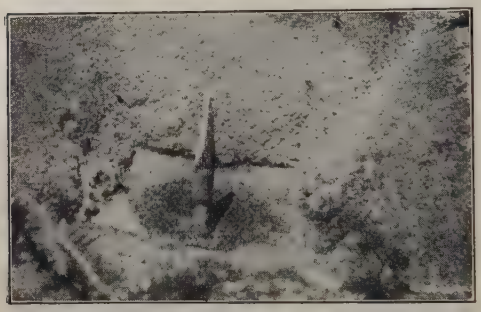


FIG. 103. WOLF-HOLE
As used by the U. S. Army. Picture taken at Plattsburg, N. Y.

Modern soldiers are equipped with steel helmets to protect them from bursting shrapnel, and they occasionally wear steel breastplates and greaves for hazardous work, such as wire cutting in "No Man's Land," while wicker shields, like those of the ancient Gauls, were used by the French soldiers at Verdun in the World War to protect themselves against liquid fire.

© *Underwood & Underwood*
FIG. 104. FRENCH SOLDIER HURLING BOMB
Note the shield, helmet, and breastplate.

Roman soldiers held their spears (**pīla**) until they got within range of the enemy, when they hurled them with all their might. Before the enemy could recover from this deadly volley, the Romans were upon them with their murderous cut-and-thrust swords (**gladiī**). To-day long-range artillery fire prepares the way for a charge, while the hand grenade is used at closer quarters, followed by a charge of troops with bayonets fixed. While artillery and rifle fire have superseded the spear throwing of the Romans, and the bayonet, or "cold steel," has taken the place of the sword, yet the principle is the same as in Caesar's day. The motor-driven "tank" takes the place of the old Roman **turris ambulātōria,** or "movable tower," which was pushed forward on rollers toward the beleaguered town. The Roman troops often advanced under fire protected by lines of movable sheds (**vīneae**) placed end to end, while occasionally smaller barriers, called **pluteī,** were pushed forward covering the advance of a small party under fire.

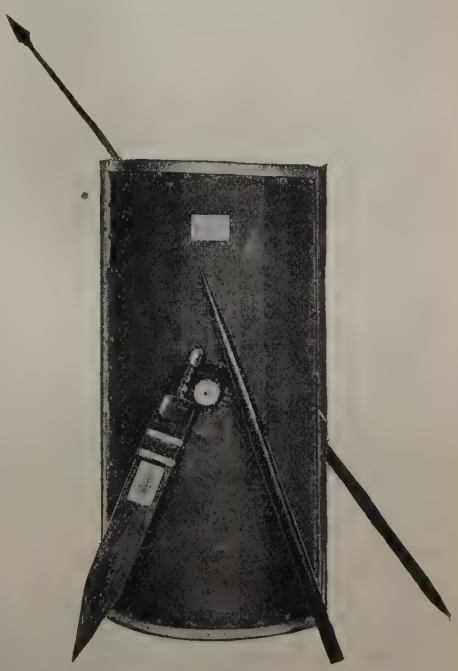


FIG. 105. ROMAN ARMS

Scūtum (shield); **gladius** (sword); **pīlum** (spear); **falx mūrālis** (wall hook, for scaling walls). (From models made by high school boys.)

Skirmishers to-day are taught when they attack "to spring forward shouting" (*U. S. Army Infantry Drill Regulations*). Caesar states that from time immemorial this was done purely for psychological reasons, so as to arouse the men themselves and terrify the enemy. The Indian war whoop and the famous "Rebel yell" served the same purpose.

Wide World

FIG. 106. TANK
Used by the American army in France.

In sieges like those at Avaricum and Alesia, Caesar employed the heavy battering ram (**ariēs**) to break down the enemy's walls. These were ponderous swinging logs, of great length and capped with solid bronze, which, striking terrific and repeated blows at the same spot, would demolish any wall (Fig. 107). A ram used by the Romans against Carthage in 148 B.C. was so huge that 6000 men, all pulling at once, were required to swing it into action. The battering

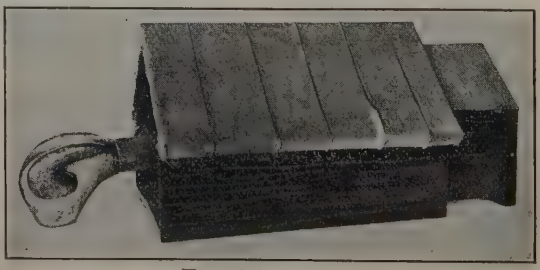


FIG. 107. ARIĒS
From a model made by a high school boy.

ram was the "Big Bertha" of Caesar's day, and it demolished defenses as effectively at close range as modern artillery at a distance.

The **onager, ballista,** and **catapulta,** which threw mostly heavy stones, formed the heavy artillery of the Romans and were largely confined to siege operations (Figs. 108, 110).

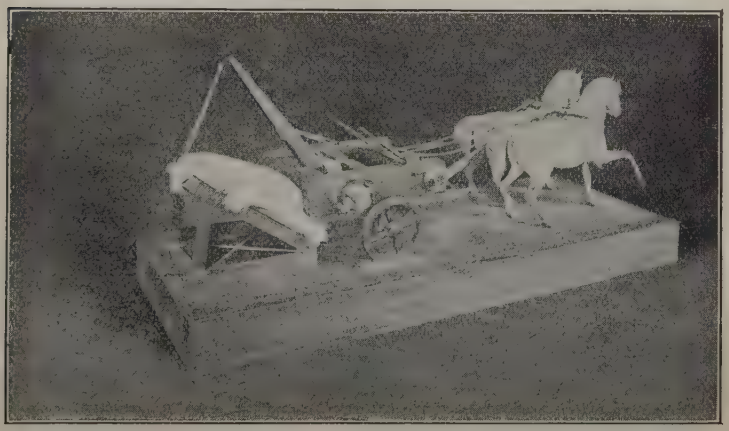


FIG. 108. ONAGER

Model in the museum at St. Germain-en-Laye near Paris.

For "light artillery," corresponding to our modern machine gun in precision and rapidity of fire, the Romans used the **scorpiō,** which embodied the principle of a great bow and arrow mounted on a portable frame. A certain Greek of Alexandria, we are told, invented a **scorpiō** with an arrow magazine which shot arrows in rapid succession, resembling in principle the modern machine gun. From Caesar's account of its use at the siege of Avaricum, we know that this weapon was a quick-firing gun. The Romans also had their **carroballistae,** or fieldpieces, so that the modern gun carriage is nothing new.

We are prone to look upon the motor-driven airplane as

American and ultramodern, and such it certainly is; but the first mention of a heavier-than-air flying machine is of one made by a Greek from southern Italy, a friend of Plato, who invented a flying machine said to have resembled a dove (**columba**). One is reminded of a type of plane used by the Germans in the World War, the *Taube*, so called because it resembled a dove when seen in the air.

FIG. 109. AMERICAN ONAGER
Intended for the hurling of bombs. Picture taken at Plattsburg, N. Y.

Caesar, in conquering Gallic towns and tribes, made it a practice to demand a certain number of influential persons to be held by him as hostages (**obsidēs**), or "pledges" that the terms of peace agreed upon would be kept. The Germans in their invasion of Belgium exacted hostages in a similar way.

During the World War much attention was paid to the construction of military roads for the easy movement of troops. The Romans were the greatest road builders that the world has ever known, and many miles of their military roads are still in existence after 2000 years. That the Romans placed just as much stress upon speed and mobility in military movements as modern commanders do is shown by the fact that heavy baggage and camp luggage were invariably called **impedīmenta** ("hindrances"). This Latin word is the technical term to-day for the heavy baggage and supply trains that

accompany an army. Every tourist will admit that the Roman word for baggage was fitly chosen.

As deadly as modern fighting has become with the introduction of high explosives and poisonous gases, military authorities admit that, in proportion to the number engaged, modern warfare is far less deadly than ancient. Caesar tells us that one hundred and twenty arrows struck the shield of one of his men at the Battle of Dyrrachium and that *not one of his soldiers came out of that battle unhurt.*

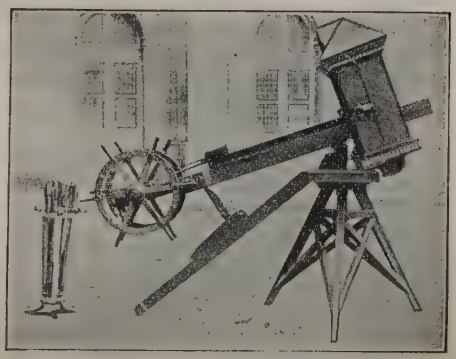


FIG. 110. CATAPULT
Model in the museum at St Germain-en-Laye near Paris.

"The great contributions of Rome to military science," says E. S. McCartney,[1] "were organization, discipline, attention to details, far-sighted preparation, the realization that battles could be won before they were fought." The same writer states[2] that "there were three outstanding features of Caesar's campaigns: the capture of decisive points at the outset; the use of the entrenched camp as a movable fortress both to aid in victory and to provide an impregnable rallying place; and the discomfiture of the enemy by breaking up his line of communications. His promptness of deci-

[1] *Warfare by Land and Sea*, p. 101.

[2] *Ibid.*, pp. 137–138. The teacher will find further parallels as well as a detailed treatment of most of the analogies mentioned above by consulting this volume as well as the general index of *The Classical Weekly*, and especially two articles by E. S. McCartney entitled, "The Ancients and the War" (XI, 142–144; XII, 129–132).

sion and rapidity of execution were about on a par with Alexander's. *Veni, vidi, vici* will always be a memorial of his ability to think and act quickly. . . . He never lost a set battle."

336. Questions for Discussion

1. What sort of "artillery" did the Romans have? 2. How has the introduction of gunpowder affected warfare? 3. Do you think that the principles of military tactics and strategy have been completely altered since Caesar's day? 4. Can you apply any of Caesar's fighting tactics to the mastery of your school lessons? 5. What factors have contributed most to the present movement to "outlaw" war among all nations?

337. Soldier Wit and Slang

There is no mention in Caesar's pages of camp-fire jokes, the songs of his men on the march, and their home letters, and it is only rarely that the personal element enters into the narrative, but we know that the life of the soldier has changed but little since then. His language then was just as picturesque as now. You will recall at once such descriptive names as "tin hat" for steel helmet, "Big Bertha" for the long-range guns of the Germans, "pill boxes" for the enemy's machine-gun shelters, and "No Man's Land" for the deadly strip between the opposing front-line trenches.

Fig. 111. Battering Ram

This ram has the shape of a tortoise (**testūdō**). The turtle back is well adapted for defense. Compare with the modern tank in Fig. 106.

An ancient writer tells us that the men of the Roman army, many of whom had been raised on farms in Italy, were fond of calling weapons and things about camp by the names of animals and objects with which they were familiar as country boys. The forked sticks on which Marius's soldiers carried their packs (**sarcinae**) were called "Marius's mules" (**mūlī Mariānī**).[1] A certain kind of **ballista,** or machine for hurling heavy stones, was dubbed **onager,** or "wild ass," from that animal's habit of flinging stones with its hind feet at its pursuers. Another type of hurling machine was called **scorpiō,** or "scorpion," presumably because it shot arrows which "stung" the enemy. The heavy suspended beam used in battering down the enemy's walls was facetiously called **ariēs,** or "ram," from the "butting" propensities of that animal, and, as a matter of fact, it was often capped with a ram's head made of heavy bronze (Fig. 107). A defensive formation, when the men stood shoulder to shoulder so that their shields overlapped, while the inner ranks held their shields over their heads, was nicknamed "tortoise" (**testūdō**), because the overlapping shields were thought to resemble the scalelike shell of that animal (Fig. 123). A

Underwood & Underwood

FIG. 112. MODERN ARMOR
Italian soldier of the World War wearing helmet and breastplate.

[1] According to some the soldiers themselves were called thus.

large protecting shed, used to shield men while digging toward the walls of a besieged town, was dubbed **musculus,** or "little mouse," probably from the burrowing habits of that creature.

The use of animal names by the Roman soldier has its modern counterpart in such words as "caterpillar tractor," "whippet tanks," "pup tents," "devil dogs" (as applied to the U. S. marines), "camel" (airplane), and "flying pig" (projectile).

Country boys serving in the Roman army probably coined the term **vīneae,** "grape arbors," applied to the lines of protecting sheds draped with skins, beneath which the men could advance up to the enemy's walls. Some wag in the army originated the term "lilies" (**līlia**) as applied to the conelike holes in the center of which sharpened stakes were set, concealed with loose brush or twigs (Fig. 103). Similar pits were dug by the Germans during the World War to add to the effectiveness of their barbed-wire entanglements in "No Man's Land." **Stimulī,** or "goads," applied to the barbed pieces of iron set in pieces of wood and implanted in the earth, is another instance of soldier slang. They served the same purpose as the four-pronged iron "crow feet" which the early settlers used to scatter about the frontier forts for prowling Indians to tread upon. The lead slingshots used by the Romans were called "acorns" (**glandēs,** Figs. 113, 140); the French called bullets "chestnuts" or "prunes."

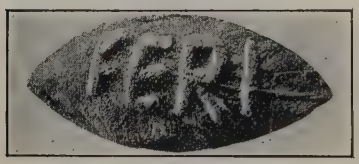


FIG. 113. GLĀNS

Lead slingshots have been picked up by the hundreds on some Roman battlefields. Many have letters or words on them. This one has **ferī,** *strike* (*i.e.* the enemy).

338. Caesar's Army

I. Its Organization and Divisions

Caesar's army (**exercitus**) was composed mainly of Roman citizen soldiers, who served on foot (**peditēs**). The **exercitus** (lit., a body of "trained" men) was divided as follows:

1. Infantry (**peditēs**)

(*a*) **legiō**

The average size of one of Caesar's legions during the Gallic War was probably about 3600, though the full strength was supposed to be 6000. To-day also army divisions are often below normal strength. A regiment of infantry in the U. S. Army to-day consists of 3806 officers and men.

(*b*) **cohortēs**

Each legion was divided into ten *cohorts* (**cohortēs**), averaging about 360 men each.

(*c*) **manipulī**

Each cohort was divided into three *maniples* (**manipulī**) of 120 men each.

(*d*) **ōrdinēs**

Each maniple was divided into two *centuries*, or *companies* (**ōrdinēs** [1]). The full strength of a century was 100 men, but the average was scarcely more than 60 in Caesar's army.

2. Cavalry (**equitēs**)

Caesar's cavalry force during the Gallic War averaged about 4000 men. They were foreign mercenaries, recruited in Spain, Germany, and Gaul. They were used mainly for scouting and surprise attacks, in preliminary skirmishing to test the enemy's strength, or in pursuit of a retreating foe. The **equitēs** were divided as follows:

(*a*) **ālae**

The **āla**, or *regiment*, consisted of 300 or 400 men commanded by a **praefectus equitum** (*cavalry prefect*).

---

[1] This term is sometimes used in Caesar in the sense of *line*, *position*, or *rank*.

(*b*) **turmae**

Each **āla** was divided into **turmae,** or *troops,* of about 30 men each.

(*c*) **decuriae**

Each **turma** was divided into **decuriae,** or *squads,* of 10 men each.

3. Auxiliaries (**auxilia**)

(*a*) **levis armātūrae peditēs**

Light-armed troops recruited from allied or dependent states. Their officers were Romans. Caesar did not depend upon his **auxilia** to win battles but used them mostly for raiding and foraging.

(*b*) **funditōrēs**

Slingers, principally from the Balearic Islands.

(*c*) **sagittāriī**

Bowmen, or *archers,* from Crete and Numidia.

4. Noncombatants

(*a*) **cālōnēs**

Camp servants, including slaves attached to the officers' quarters.

(*b*) **mūliōnēs**

Muleteers in charge of the heavy baggage of the army.

(*c*) **mercātōrēs**

Traders allowed to accompany the army and conduct "canteens" outside the camp.

II. Officers and Men

1. **mīles legiōnārius**

A *legionary soldier* was usually a citizen volunteer who enlisted for the regular term of twenty years. Roman citizens between the ages of seventeen and forty-six were subject to military draft (**dīlēctus**). These were the soldiers with whom Rome conquered the world.

2. **ēvocātus**

A *volunteer* who had served his full time but had re-enlisted. Such men were the flower of Caesar's army.

3. **signifer**

Standard bearer of the cohort, resembling the modern "color bearer."

4. (*a*) **centuriō**

Each legion had sixty *centurions* who were noncommissioned officers appointed from the ranks in recognition of brave and efficient service. They correspond in a general way to our *sergeants*, the *first sergeant* ("top sergeant") being called the *first centurion* (**prīmipīlus**). They were brave and fearless officers who fought in the ranks, leading their men in person. Much of the success of an army depended on them. They were often strict disciplinarians.

(*b*) **decuriō**

The commander of a squad of cavalry was called a *decurion*.

5. (*a*) **tribūnus mīlitum**

Each legion had six *military tribunes*, the lowest commissioned officers. They were usually young men, well-educated and of good family, but untrained, and were intrusted with duties of minor importance, such as the command of a legion in camp or on the march (the modern second lieutenant). These men usually were in the army to get the military experience which was prerequisite to a political career.

(*b*) **praefectus equitum**

A *cavalry prefect* commanded an **āla**, or regiment.

6. quaestor

In Caesar's army the **quaestor** was second in command, ranking above the **lēgātī** as chief of staff. Like a *quartermaster general*, he supervised the pay of the men and the purchase of supplies; in battle he sometimes commanded a legion.

7. lēgātus

Caesar had a number of *staff officers* (**lēgātī**), who were appointed by the Roman senate with the rank of a modern *lieutenant general* or *major general*. In battle each legion was usually commanded by a **lēgātus**, but they did not hold permanent command like colonels of our regiments.

8. dux and imperātor

The *general* (**dux**) assumed the title **imperātor** after winning his first important victory. After defeating the

Helvetians, Caesar was regularly addressed as **imperātor,** a title which corresponds to that of *commanding general* in a modern army. Any staff officer appointed by the **imperātor** to command a division of troops became temporarily **dux** of that division.

III. Men of Petty Rank Attached to the General Staff

1. **fabrī**

Engineers detailed from the ranks to build bridges, siege engines, and winter quarters. Such work was in charge of the chief of engineers (**praefectus fabrum**).

2. **speculātōrēs**

Spies employed singly by the general to obtain news by going within the enemy's lines, often in disguise. Nathan Hale, in this sense, was a **speculātor.**

3. **explōrātōrēs**

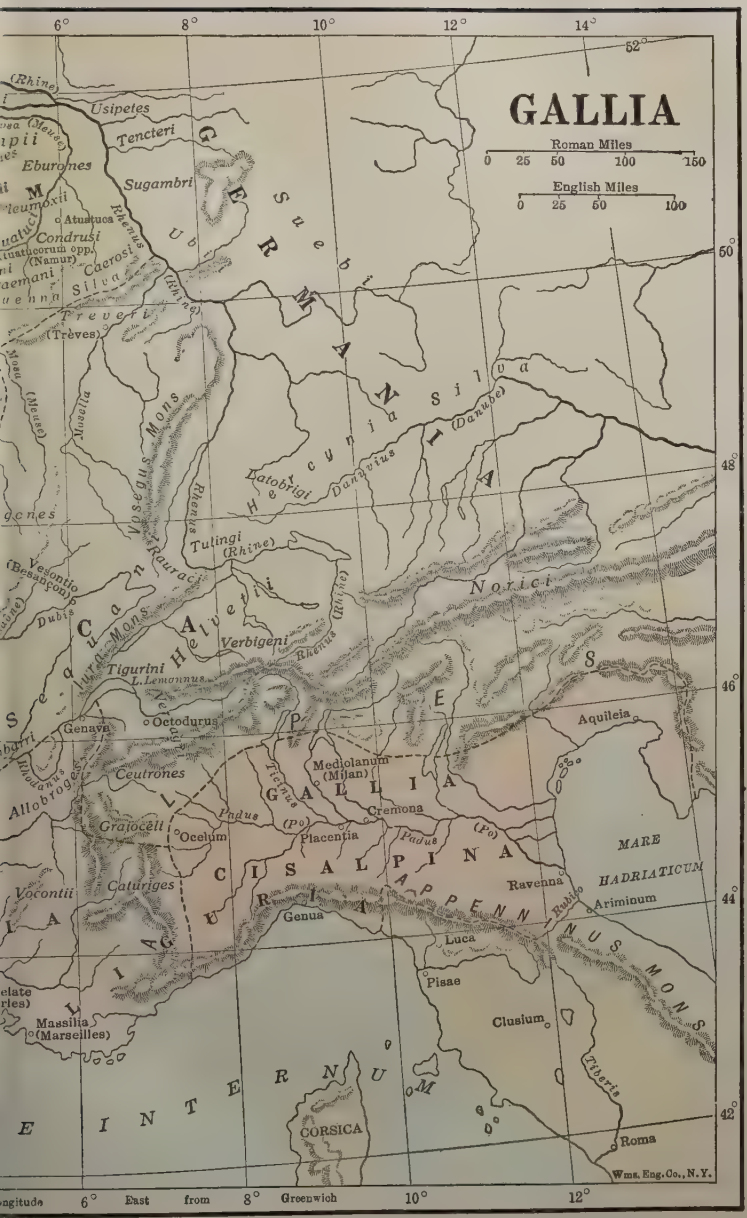
Mounted *scouts*, or *patrols*, who scoured the country for information. They usually went out in small parties. Buffalo Bill, who accompanied the U. S. Army as a scout during the Indian wars, was an **explōrātor.**[1]

Fig. 114. Roman Soldiers

Note the standard (**signum**), the spears, and the armor. (From "Ben Hur.")

[1] For the distinction between **speculātor** and **explōrātor** see *B.G.*, II, 11.

Cenimagni
Cassi
Trinovantes
Londinium
Tamesis
(Thames)
Ancalites
BRITANNIA
CANTIUM
(KENT)
Segontiaci
Bibroci
(Dover)
Fretum Gallicum
Morini
Portus Itius
(Boulogne)
Atrebates
(Arras)
(FLANDERS)
Samara
(Somme)
Ambiani
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Bellovaci
Viromandui
(Cherbourg)
Venelli
Caleti
Veliocasses
Bratuspantium
(Breteuil)
Suessiones
Lexovii
(NORMANDY)
Sequana
(Seine)
Iscra
Noviodunum
(Soissons)
Essuvii
Parisii
Matrona
(Brest)
Coriosolites
Diablintes
Lutecia
(Paris)
Osismi
AREMORICI
Metiosedum
(Melun)
Sequana
(BRITTANY)
Redones
Aulerci
Carnutes
Agedincum
(Sens)
Venetti
Andes
Cenabum
(Orléans)
Namnetes
Liger
(Tours)
(Loire)
Ambiliati
Turoni
Bituriges
CELT
Avaricum
(Bourges)
Pictones
Noviodunum
(Nevers)
Boii
Elaver
Lemovices
Santoni
Gergovia
Arverni
(Bordeaux)
Garunna
Duranius
Sotiates
AQUITANIA
Tolosates
Tolosa
(Toulouse)
Volcae
Carcaso
Narbo
PYRENAEI MONTES
HISPANIA
OCEANUS
Longitude West from Greenwich


GALLIA
Roman Miles
0 25 50 100 150
English Miles
0 25 50 100
6°
8°
10°
12°
14°
52°
50°
48°
46°
44°
42°
(Rhine)
Usipetes
Tencteri
Eburones
Sugambri
Atuatuca
Condrusi
Caerosi
Silva
Treveri
(Trèves)
Mosa
(Meuse)
Mosella
Vosegus Mons
Rhenus
Rauraci
Tulingi
(Rhine)
Vesontio
(Besançon)
Dubis
Sequan
Helvetii
Verbigeni
Rhenus
(Rhine)
Tigurini
L. Lemannus
Genava
Octodurus
Rhodanus
Allobroges
Ceutrones
Graiocelli
Ocelum
Caturiges
Vocontii
Massilia
(Marseilles)
Ubii
Suebi
GERMANIA
Hercynia Silva
Danuvius
(Danube)
Latobrigi
Norici
Aquileia
Mediolanum
(Milan)
Ticinus
GALLIA
Cremona
Padus
(Po)
Placentia
Padus
(Po)
CISALPINA
Ravenna
Rubico
Ariminum
MARE
HADRIATICUM
APPENNINUS MONS
Genua
Luca
Pisae
Clusium
Tiberis
Roma
CORSICA
INTERNUM
Wms. Eng. Co., N.Y.
ongitude
6°
East
from
8°
Greenwich
10°
12°

PART IV

CAESAR: THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK I (*Simplified*)

339. The Wars with the Helvetians and Ariovistus (58 B.C.)

The Geography of Gaul — Its Divisions and Peoples

1. Gallia est omnis[1] dīvīsa[2] in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam[3] incolunt Belgae,[4] aliam Aquītānī, tertiam eī quī ipsōrum linguā[5] Celtae, nostrā[6] Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,[7] īnstitūtīs,[7] lēgibus[7] inter sē[8] differunt. Gallōs[9] ab Aquītānīs Garunna[10] flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona[10] et Sēquana[10] dīvidit.[11]

---

[1] *as a whole. All Gaul* would be **omnis Gallia.** See Map of Gaul.

[2] Predicate adjective: *is divided.*

[3] Supply **partem.**

[4] Ancestors of the modern Belgians. Use the English pronunciation of all names of peoples, preserving merely the Latin accent. Wherever possible, further Anglicize Latin proper nouns by employing English endings, as in *Belgians, Aquitanians, Celts.* Consult the Vocabulary.

[5] *in their own language;* lit., *by.*

[6] Supply **linguā.** What language is meant?

[7] The ablatives are to be translated *in respect to* (**448**).

[8] *from one another.* What literally?

[9] Caesar here limits the name *Gauls* to the natives of the central part, and this is the sense in which he usually employs the term.

[10] *Garonne, Marne, Seine.* Always give the modern French forms of all Latin names of rivers, mountains, and lakes mentioned in the text. To find them see the Vocabulary. The spelling **Garunna,** in place of the more usual **Garumna,** is that of the majority of the best manuscripts.

[11] Look at the Map and see whether you can tell why Caesar uses this verb in the singular.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī[1] sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte Prōvinciae[2] longissimē absunt, minimēque saepe mercātōrēs ad eōs veniunt atque ea quae ad effēminandōs[3] animōs pertinent important. Proximī sunt Germānīs[4] quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum[5] semper bellum gerunt. Quā[6] dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superant, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs[7] fīnibus[8] eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum[9] fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garunnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab[10] Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen[11] Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem.[12] Aquītānia ā Garunnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad[13] Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Why Orgetorix Easily Persuaded the Helvetians to Migrate

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus,[14] rēgnī cupiditāte induc-

[1] This statement of Caesar's was often applied to the modern Belgians during the World War.

[2] Southern France, even then thoroughly Romanized, is still known as *Provence*.

[3] See **490** (*b*). [4] See **420**. [5] See **438**, *a*. [6] See **409**.

[7] Note the emphasis on **suīs** and **eōrum**.

[8] Ablative of separation (**433**).

[9] *i.e.* **Germānōrum**.

[10] *on the side of;* lit., *from (the direction of)*.

[11] Accusative. [12] What direction?

[13] What part of the Spanish coast? See Map. Note the difference in meaning between this **ad** (used with the verb **est**) and the preceding **ad** (used with **pertinent**); see Vocabulary.

[14] Ablative absolute expressing time: *in the consulship of*.

tus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvibus[1] persuāsit ut[2] dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.[3]

Id[3] facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā[4] ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit;

Fig. 115. Geneva and Its Lake

alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Hīs rēbus fīēbat[5] ut[6] et minus lātē vagārentur et minus

[1] Why dative? See **421.**

[2] The clause is direct object of **persuāsit (421, *b*, 469).**

[3] Direct object of **persuāsit (421, *b*).**

[4] Note the position of the adjective before the preposition; this order gives emphasis to the adjective. Translate *on one side.*

[5] *it was brought to pass, it happened.*

[6] The clause is the subject of **fīēbat (473).**

facile fīnitimīs[1] bellum īnferre possent; quā dē causā hominēs bellandī[2] cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō[3] multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia[4] passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

Vocabulary Drill (chapters 1–2). — **incolō, propterea (quod), occāsus, sōl, angustus, pateō; inter sē, quā dē causā.**

The Helvetians Get Ready to Invade Gaul — Orgetorix Forms a Plot

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent[5] comparāre, carrōrum quam maximum numerum emere, frūmentum quam plūrimum serere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī esset, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās[6] biennium sibi satis esse putāvērunt; in[7] tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet[8] Casticō Sēquanō ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī[9] eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium[10] dat. Dīxit sē ipsum suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse.

---

[1] Why dative? See **422.**

[2] Gerund depending on **cupidī** (**416, 491,** *b*).

[3] *in proportion to.* [4] Case? See **427.**

[5] Translate as if indicative (**481**).

[6] See **490** (*b*). [7] *for.*

[8] For the sequence see **460, Note.**

[9] Dumnorix.

[10] Intermarriage among royal families is still a favorite method of cementing political alliances.

Orgetorix, When Brought to Trial, Escapes — His Mysterious Death

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs ēnūntiāta. Mōribus[1] suīs Orgetorīgem ex[2] vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Eum damnātum[3] oportēbat igni cremārī.

Diē cōnstitūtā Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam,[4] ad[5] hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem[6] condūxit; per eōs sē ēripuit neque causam dīxit.

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est. Helvētiī suspicantur ipsum sē interfēcisse.

The Helvetians, Now Ready to Migrate, Burn Their Homes Behind Them

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus[7] Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut[8] ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō[9] ad[10] duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt. Frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, reditūs spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda[11] essent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs utī, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque combustīs,[12] ūnā cum eīs proficīs-

---

[1] *in accordance with* (**449**).

[2] We say *in*, not *from*.

[3] Participle with conditional force: *if condemned*.

[4] *household* (including all his slaves).

[5] *about;* used as an adverb with numerals.

[6] Adverb: *to the same place*.

[7] *nevertheless*. How literally?

[8] The clause is in apposition with **id**.

[9] Ablative of respect (**448**). [10] *about*. [11] See **490** (*b*).

[12] Translate by a clause coördinate with **proficīscantur** (**440**).

cantur. Boiōs,[1] quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, ad sē sociōs[2] recipiunt.

Vocabulary Drill (3–5). — profectiō, lēgātiō, item, cliēns, suspicor, aedificium, subeō, utī, vīcus; quam (with superlative).

Fig. 116. Mill Race Gorge

Looking from France into Switzerland. If you had stood on this spot at the time Caesar describes, you would have seen the Helvetian horde coming toward you.

They Decide to Pass through the Roman Province

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus domō[3] exīre possent:[4] ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, quā[5] vix singulī carrī dūceren-

[1] "Bohemia" perpetuates the name of this tribe.
[2] See **410, Note.**
[3] *from home* (**434, Note**).
[4] Translate as if indicative (**474**).
[5] *where.*

tur;[1] mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile paucī prohibēre[2] possent;[3] alterum[4] per prōvinciam nostram, multō[5] facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs[6] locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est,[7] proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus, Genava.

Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs exīstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur.[8] Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.[9] Is diēs erat a. d. X Kal. Apr.,[10] L. Pīsōne[11] A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

---

[1] *could be drawn* (**474**). The Rhone valley for a distance of about 17 miles narrows down to a steep defile known as "Mill Race Gorge" (Pas de l'Écluse; see Fig. 116). The modern traveler takes the railway along this scenic route, passing under the mountain through a tunnel over two miles long. Switzerland is at one end of the pass, France at the other.

[2] Supply **eōs**.

[3] A clause of result (**472**).

[4] Supply **iter**.

[5] Ablative of measure of difference (**444**).

[6] Two negatives make an affirmative: *several*.

[7] In translating, put **est** after **fīnibus**.

[8] See **469**.

[9] *on which all were to assemble* (**467**). Note the variation in the gender of **diēs**.

[10] All abbreviations in the Latin text should be filled out in oral reading; here **ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs**, *the fifth day before the calends (first) of April;* i.e. *March* 28. In counting periods of time the Romans included both ends.

[11] The father of Calpurnia, Caesar's last wife, whom he married one year before this (59 B.C.). Piso was a cruel and corrupt politician. Through Caesar's influence he had obtained the consulship in 58 B.C. His colleague Gabinius owed his election to Pompey. In these two appointments we see the activity of the First Triumvirate (Caesar, Pompey, Crassus), formed in the year 60 B.C.

With Characteristic Speed, Caesar Takes Military Steps to Halt Them

7. Caesarī[1] cum id[2] nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe[3] proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus[4] in Galliam ulteriōrem[5] contendit et ad[6] Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat[7] (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna[8]), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt,[9] lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Hī rogāvērunt ut sibi licēret iter per prōvinciam facere. Caesar lēgātīs respondit diem[10] sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum.

---

[1] Intentionally placed first so as to focus the reader's attention upon the "man of the hour." This is the first mention of his name in the book. Though forty-three years of age and now proconsular governor of Gaul, he has never commanded troops in an important battle. The time for decisive action has come. Though Caesar the fighter and Caesar the writer are one, there is never a trace of egotism from the first page to the last; in keeping with the rôle of a calm, unbiased historian, he regularly refers to himself in the third person. Almost the only approach to the personal note is his occasional use of the editorial "we" as in II, 1.

[2] Explained by the infinitive clause, **eōs . . . cōnārī.**

[3] *The* city is always Rome.

[4] *by as rapid stages as possible.* How literally? Plutarch says that Caesar covered the entire distance in seven days, which would be an average of more than 90 miles a day.

[5] This term would ordinarily mean all of Gaul *except* the Roman Province. Here it is used loosely to *include* the Province.

[6] *in the vicinity of;* hence the preposition (**428, Note**).

[7] With dative and accusative: *he levies upon* (**421**, *b*).

[8] This was soon to become Caesar's favorite legion, the famous "Fighting Tenth."

[9] *were informed.*

[10] *time;* clearly more than a single day.

Caesar Fortifies the Bank of the Rhone — The Helvetians Attempt to Cross but Are Repulsed

8. Intereā ab lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia[1] passuum XVIIII mūrum[2] in altitūdinem pedum XVI fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit,[3] castella mūnit, utī eōs trānsīre cōnantēs[4] prohibēre possit.

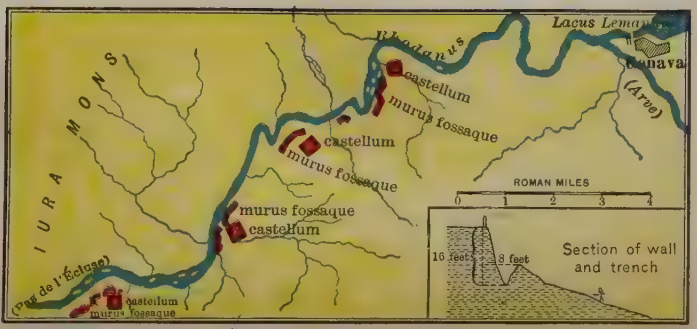


FIG. 117. CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat[5] sē mōre[6] et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere[7] cōnentur,[8] sē eōs prohibitūrum ostendit. Eā spē dēiectī,[9]

[1] With **perdūcit** (**427**).

[2] *rampart*, of earth. To-day the banks of the Rhone are high and steep for the greater part of the distance (see Fig. 118) and so Napoleon III, whose map is given on this page, thought that Caesar built the rampart at a few points only. But Caesar may have strengthened the natural defenses most of the way.

[3] Note the force of the prefix: *he stations at intervals.*

[4] Conditional.

[5] *says that he can not* (with **posse**).

[6] See **449**. [7] *use force*. [8] See **480**.

[9] *disappointed in this hope*. For **spē** see **433**.

aliī Helvētiōrum, nāvibus[1] iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam[2] interdiū, saepius noctū perrumpere cōnātī sunt. Sed operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū[3] dēstitērunt.

Vocabulary Drill (6–8). — omnīnō, vadum, pōns, sūmō, intereā, altitūdō, fossa, dispōnō, castellum, iungō, noctū, mūnītiō, tēlum, dēsistō; alter . . . alter, iter facere, certiōrem facere.

FIG. 118. THE RHONE NEAR GENEVA

Through Dumnorix They Get Permission to Pass through the Sequanian Territory

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā, Sēquanīs[4] invītīs, propter angustiās[5] īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā

[1] Ablative absolute, expressing means.

[2] *sometimes* (with **nōn**; two negatives make an affirmative).

[3] See **433.**

[4] Ablative absolute with conditional force.

[5] See page 227, footnote 1.

sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut hic ā Sēquanīs impetrāret.[1] Dumnorīx grātiā et dōnīs apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus,[2] quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus[3] studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās[4] volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sē dent perficit: Sēquanī obsidēs dant nē itinere[5] Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trānseant.

Caesar, Foreseeing Danger to the Province, Brings Legions from Italy to Check the Helvetians

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō[6] per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonōrum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in Prōvinciā. Caesar intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō Prōvinciae[7] futūrum esse ut hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimīcī, haec loca patentia maximēque frūmentāria occupārent.[8]

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī[9] quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum[10]

---

[1] *that he obtain the request from.*

[2] Adjective.

[3] What would "new things" in government really mean? For the case see **421.**

[4] Modern politicians distribute favors for similar reasons.

[5] See **433.**

[6] *that the Helvetians have in mind.* **Helvētiīs** is dative of the possessor (**424**).

[7] Genitive modifying **perīculō.**

[8] *for men . . . to seize;* substantive clause of result, subject of **futūrum esse.**

[9] See **422.**

[10] One of the bravest and most trusted of Caesar's staff officers But later during the Civil War he fought against Caesar.

lēgātum praefēcit. Ipse in Italiam magnīs[1] itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et proximō itinere in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere[2] exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs pulsīs complūribus proeliīs, ab[3] Ocelō,[4] quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Vocabulary Drill (9–10). — sponte, impetrō, studeō, beneficium, frūmentārius, praeficiō, hiemō, superior; multum posse, novae rēs.

The Helvetians, Pillaging as They Go, Reach States Which Appeal to Caesar for Protection

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās[5] et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs vāstābant. Haeduī, cum sē suaque[6] ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ut rogārent auxilium. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, vāstātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre posse. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi[7]

---

[1] *rapid.* [2] See **433.**

[3] *from the vicinity of* (**434**, Note).

[4] Consult the Map and locate *Gallia citerior* and *Gallia ulterior* and trace Caesar's line of march as here described, starting from Ocelum.

[5] The Pas de l'Écluse (Mill Race Gorge) referred to in Chapters 6 and 9.

[6] *their possessions.*

[7] *they had* (dative of possessor, **424**). What literally?

praeter agrī solum[1] nihil esse reliquī.[2] Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum esse sibi[3] statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.[4]

Caesar Attacks the Helvetians When Their Forces Are Divided and Wipes Out One Canton

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac nāvibus iūnctīs trānsībant. Per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs[5] cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam vērō partem citrā[6] flūmen Ararim[7] reliquam esse. Itaque dē[8] tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Eōs impedītōs aggressus[9] magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sē fugae mandārunt[10] atque in[11] proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor partēs vel pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō[12] exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā[13]

---

[1] Note that this is not the adjective **sōlus.**

[2] With **nihil** (**415**). [3] Dative of agent (**425**).

[4] *until . . . should arrive* (**478**).

[5] Object of **trādūxisse**; **flūmen** depends on **trā-** of **trādūxisse** (**430**).

[6] *i.e.* Caesar's side. [7] Accusative form.

[8] *during.* The night (from sunset to sunrise) was divided into four **vigiliae**, or *watches*, varying in length with the time of the year.

[9] The perfect participle, especially of a deponent verb, is often best translated, as here, by the present active: *attacking.* This difference between Latin and English is due to the less accurate English usage.

[10] For **mandā(vē)runt.** Contractions of this sort are rather common in the perfect system of verbs (**404**).

[11] *in;* motion is implied in **abdidērunt.**

[12] *from home* (**434, Note**).

[13] *within the memory of* (**447**). The defeat of Cassius had occurred in 107 B.C., 49 years before this.

L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.[1]

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, ea pars cīvitātis Helvētiae quae īnsignem calamitātem populō[2] Rōmānō intulerat, prīnceps[3] poenam dedit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est; nam Tigurīnī L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, avum Caesaris socerī,[4] eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

Vocabulary Drill (11–12). — **nōndum, concīdō, iugum; sē recipere, dē . . . vigiliā.**

Review Questions (Chapters **1–12**). — 1. Why were the Belgians considered the bravest of the Gauls? 2. What were the three divisions of Gaul? 3. What was meant by the "Province"? 4. Why did the Helvetians want to migrate? 5. What preparations for migration did they make? 6. What was Orgetorix commissioned to do? 7. What did he do? 8. What happened to him? 9. Before leaving home, what did the Helvetians do? Why? 10. What two ways were open to them? 11. What was their first objective? 12. What was Caesar's first act? 13. Why did Caesar refuse the request of the Helvetians? 14. What did they do next? 15. How did they get permission to pass through the country of the Sequanians? 16. What was their goal? 17. Why did Caesar object? 18. How many legions did Caesar have at first? 19. How many after the beginning of the Helvetian migration? 20. What enabled Caesar to win his first victory over the Helvetians? 21. Why did it particularly please him? 22. Trace his course on the Map.

Summary of Chapters 13–20

After crushing the rearguard of the Helvetians at the Saône, Caesar crosses in pursuit of the main body. The latter now send a deputation to Caesar, headed by the aged but fiery-tempered Divico, who

---

[1] *had sent under the yoke*, equivalent to unconditional surrender. Two spears were stuck into the ground and a third tied across the top, and the defeated army was forced to march through this arch of spears without arms. *Cf.* "sub-jug-ate."

[2] See **422.**

[3] (*was the*) *first* (*to*); adjective used with adverbial force.

[4] See page 227, footnote 11.

had defeated a Roman army nearly fifty years before. The parley fails, and the Helvetians resume their march. Caesar pursues, ever seeking to strike a crushing blow. Meanwhile his supplies give out because the Haeduans, his Gallic allies, fail to furnish grain any longer. Caesar complains to the Haeduan chiefs who are in his camp and is told secretly that Dumnorix, a rich and powerful noble, is responsible; that he has a Helvetian wife and therefore favors the Helvetians; furthermore, that Dumnorix alone is to blame for the recent defeat of the Roman cavalry, for he led the retreat in person.

Caesar decides that Dumnorix must be punished but fears to offend his friend Diviciacus, chief magistrate of the Haeduans and brother of Dumnorix. He therefore urges Diviciacus himself to punish him. Diviciacus pleads so earnestly for his brother's life that Caesar pardons him.

Caesar Plans a Surprise Attack upon the Main Force of the Helvetians

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset[1] nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū[2] ascēnsus, explōrātōrēs quī cognōscerent[3] mīsit. Renūntiātum est ascēnsum facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus[4] quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; suum cōnsilium ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī[5] mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur[6] et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

---

[1] Indirect question introduced by **quālis**, depending on **cognōscerent.**

[2] *on the other side;* lit., *in going around.*

[3] See **467.**

[4] Appositive to **eīs**: (*as*) *guides.*

[5] Depends on **perītissimus** (**416**). Caesar takes special pains to state the military training and experience of Considius because the latter's subsequent conduct is all the more unaccountable.

[6] *was considered.*

The Surprise Fails Because an Officer Blunders

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus[1] mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius MD passibus[2] abesset, neque (ut[3] posteā ex captīvīs comperit) aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius ad eum accurrit. Dīcit montem quem ab Labiēnō occupārī voluerit[4] ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnō imperāverat nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent,[5] ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret. Itaque Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque[6] abstinēbat. Multō[7] dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ab suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod[8] nōn vīdisset prō[9] vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō intervāllō[10] cōnsuēverat, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar Marches for Bibracte to Get Supplies — The Pursuer Pursued

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum superat[11] cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum[12] exīstimāvit. Itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit

---

[1] *top of the mountain.* [2] See **437.**

[3] *as;* so regularly with the indicative.

[4] Subjunctive because it stands in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The subject is Caesar.

[5] See preceding note. The verb would be future perfect indicative in direct discourse.

[6] See **433.** [7] *late in the day.*

[8] Supply **id** as antecedent. [9] *as seen.*

[10] For **eō intervāllō quō.** The antecedent is sometimes put in the subordinate clause.

[11] From **supersum.**

[12] Supply **esse;** impersonal: *provision should be made for supplies.*

ac Bibracte[1] īre contendit. Hoc oppidum Haeduōrum longē maximum nōn amplius mīlibus[2] passuum XVIII aberat. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent,[3] seu quod rē[4] frūmentāriā interclūdī posse[5] cōnfīderent, mūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ab novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Vocabulary Drill (21–23). — circuitus, equitātus, praemittō, impetus, intervāllum, cōnsuēscō, supersum, āvertō, interclūdō, convertō, īnsequor; prīmā lūce, summus mōns, castra pōnere (movēre), novissimum agmen.

Both Armies Ready for Battle — The Helvetians Advance

24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret[6] hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum. In summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia[7] collocāvit. Impedīmenta in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum locum ab eīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī[8] iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī[9] cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

---

[1] Accusative.

[2] See **437.**

[3] Subjunctive because Caesar assigns these as the reasons of the Helvetians and not as his own (**482**).

[4] See **433.** [5] Supply **Rōmānōs.**

[6] See **467.**

[7] Consisting of Gauls and other foreign troops.

[8] With a trench. The course of this trench has actually been discovered in excavations in modern times.

[9] *i.e.* the fighting men.

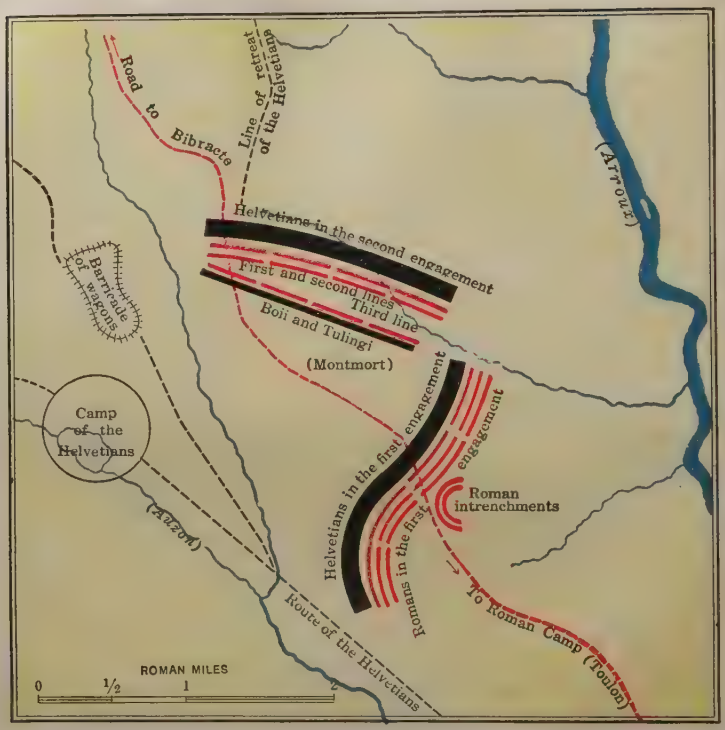


FIG. 119. THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

The Romans Charge — The Helvetians Rally after Being Forced Back

25. Caesar prīmum suum,[1] deinde omnium[2] ex cōnspectū remōvit equōs ut, aequātō omnium perīculō, spem fugae tolleret. Cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs, facile hostēs disiēcērunt et gladiīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat im-

[1] Supply **equum** from **equōs**.

[2] This refers only to the mounted officers, not to the cavalry.

pedīmentō[1] quod,[2] plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs,[3] neque ēvellere neque, sinistrā manū impedītā,[4] satis commodē pugnāre poterant. Itaque multī scūtum manū[5] ēmīsērunt et nūdō[6] corpore pugnāvērunt. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre[7] et ad montem quī aberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō[8] sē recipere coepērunt. Captō[9] monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō[10] erant, ex itinere[11] nostrōs ab latere apertō[12] aggressī circumvēnērunt. Id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa in duās partēs intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs[13] resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs[13] sustinēret.

Vocabulary Drill (24–25). — animadvertō, interim, collocō, cōnfertus, cohortor, pīlum, scūtum, ēmittō, cōnspicor; medius collis, pedem referre.

Defeated after Desperate Fighting, the Helvetians Retreat

26. Ita diū atque ācriter pugnātum est.[14] Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum[15] ab

---

[1] See **418, 419,** *a*.

[2] The clause is subject of **erat.**

[3] The Gauls overlapped their shields, and so two shields were easily pinned together by one spear. Because of the barbed ends and easily bent iron shafts of the spears, it was hard to draw them out.

[4] By the shield, now pinned to that of another soldier.

[5] See **433.** [6] *unprotected* by a shield.

[7] *to fall back.* [8] See **444.** [9] *reached.* [10] See **418, 419,** *a*.

[11] They went into battle as soon as they arrived.

[12] Since the shield was carried on the left arm, the right side would be unprotected.

[13] Translate by a relative clause. For the case of **victīs** see **421.**

[14] Use the personal form in translating.

[15] Adversative (**477**).

hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum[1] hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem[2] etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs pīla subiciēbant nostrōsque

FIG. 120. SCENE OF THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

Site of the final struggle around the baggage.

vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs[3] castrīsque[3] nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte iērunt. In fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum[4] et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas[5] litterās nūntiōsque mīsit

[1] *i.e.* in retreat.
[2] *until late at night.*
[3] Ablative with **potior (442).**
[4] *since.*
[5] Accusative (Greek form).

nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent.[1] Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

The Survivors Surrender — One Canton Escapes

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī[2] cum eum[3] in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent flentēsque pācem petīssent,[4] eōs in eō locō quō tum erant suum adventum exspectāre iussit. Eō[5] postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgerant poposcit.

Dum[6] ea[7] conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī,[8] sīve spē salūtis inductī, prīmā nocte[9] ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Vocabulary Drill (26–27). — vāllum, coniciō, subiciō, vulnerō, potior, circiter, iuvō; sē cōnferre.

The Fugitives Caught and Slain — All the Rest, except the Boii, Are Forced to Return to Their Homes

28. Quod[10] ubi Caesar comperit, hīs (quōrum per fīnēs ierant imperāvit utī eōs conquīrerent et redūcerent; (eōs reductōs in hostium numerō habuit;[11] reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod, omnibus frūgibus āmissīs,

---

[1] An indirect command (**486**). [2] See **409**.

[3] Object of **convēnissent**. [4] For **petīvissent** (**404**). [5] Adverb.

[6] When **dum** means *while*, the present is always used.

[7] Neuter plural, referring to **obsidēs, arma, servōs**.

[8] While the grammatical subject is **mīlia**, the logical subject is **hominēs**, with which **perterritī** agrees.

[9] *early in the night*. [10] See **409**.

[11] This is just another way of saying that he killed them or sold them into slavery as prisoners of war.

domī[1] nihil erat quō famem sustinērent,[2] Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne[3] fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent[4] et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.[4] Boiōs[5] Haeduī in fīnibus suīs collocāre voluērunt; hoc Caesar concessit. Eīs illī agrōs dedērunt, eōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque[6] ipsī erant recēpērunt.

Census Figures Showing Losses of the Helvetians and Their Allies

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs[7] cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōmināti m ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō[8] exīsset[9] eōrum quī arma ferre possent,[10] et item puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium ratiōnum summa[11] erat Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII;

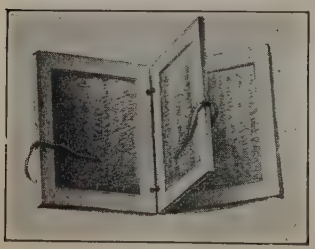


FIG. 121. TABULAE

[1] *at home* (**452**). [2] *they might satisfy* (**474**).
[3] *for this reason;* explained by the **quod** clause.
[4] See **466.**
[5] Emphatic; direct object of **collocāre.**
[6] *as;* so regularly with words implying likeness, as **parem** here.
[7] They learned the Greek alphabet through contact with the Greek colony Massilia (Marseilles) in southern Gaul.
[8] See **434, Note.**
[9] Indirect question implied in **ratiō** and introduced by **quī numerus.**
[10] Subjunctive in a descriptive relative clause (**474**).
[11] *sum total.*

ex hīs quī arma ferre possent, ad[1] mīlia XCII.[2] Summa omnium fuērunt[3] ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

Review Questions (21–29). — 1. What did Caesar tell Labienus to do? 2. What did he tell Considius to do? 3. What was Caesar's purpose? 4. What mistake did Considius make? 5. Why did Caesar go to Bibracte? 6. How did the Helvetians interpret this move? 7. Why did Caesar have no fear that this move would enable the Helvetians to proceed so far that he could not overtake them? 8. In the battle which followed, what hampered the Helvetians? 9. What gave them renewed hope? 10. To what place did they retreat after their defeat? 11. What were the terms of surrender? 12. What did Caesar do to the canton which tried to escape after the surrender? 13. Why did Caesar want the Helvetians to restore their former homes? 14. What proportion of the Helvetians and their allies returned home?

The Gallic Leaders Ask Permission to Call a Council of All Gaul

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt. Petiērunt[4] utī sibi[5] concilium tōtīus Galliae diē certā convocāre idque Caesaris facere voluntāte licēret.

They Complain to Caesar about the Inroads of the Germans and Beg Help

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi

---

[1] With numerals means *about*.

[2] *i.e.* 25 per cent. On this basis the United States would have had 25,000,000 men in the World War. It had 4,200,000 (mobilized). The French had 19 per cent of their population under arms, the Italians 15 per cent, the Germans 17 per cent.

[3] Agrees with the predicate nominative **mīlia**.

[4] See **404**. [5] With **licēret**.

sēcrētō in occultō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus:

"Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs sunt duae; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenent Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum dē prīncipātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est[1] utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde[2] arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteā[3] quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās[4] Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī amāre coepērunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs; nunc sunt in Galliā ad centum et xx mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum[5] armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsērunt.[6]

"Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidit, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī est optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubet, propterea quod, paucīs mēnsibus ante, Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locus parātur. Paucīs annīs omnēs Gallī ex Galliae fīnibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsībunt; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus ager cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuētūdō victūs cum illā.

"Ariovistus autem, ut[7] semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcit, superbē et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs[8] nōbilissimī cuiusque[9] līberōs poscit, et in eōs omnia exempla[10] cruciātūsque ēdit, sī qua[11] rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius factā est.

---

[1] *it happened.*
[2] *for pay.* *Cf.* "mercenary" or *hired* troops.
[3] With **quam**; same as **postquam.**
[4] *wealth.*
[5] *time and again;* lit., *once and again.*
[6] Probably greatly exaggerated.
[7] *when.*
[8] In apposition with **līberōs.**
[9] From **quisque.**
[10] *all kinds of cruelties* (with **cruciātūsque**).
[11] *any.*

Homō est barbarus et īrācundus; nōn possumus eius imperia diūtius sustinēre. Tū vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercitūs recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre[1] potes nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum[2] trādūcātur, Gal-
5 liamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā potes dēfendere."

Vocabulary Drill (28–31). — unde, restituō, ratiō, summa, concilium, arcessō, ferus, dēcēdō, cruciātus.

Summary of Chapter 32

Caesar notices that during all the time that Diviciacus is speaking the Sequanians remain silent with bowed heads. He inquires the reason and is told that the Sequanians are in such dread of Ariovistus that they do not even dare complain or ask aid because they are so completely at the mercy of the Germans.

Caesar Pledges His Support to the Gauls

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae[3] futūram; magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō[4] suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne
10 habitā, concilium dīmīsit. Et multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret:[5] in prīmīs quod Haeduōs, frātrēs[6] cōnsanguineōsque populī Rōmānī saepe ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs
15 intellegēbat; quod[7] in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem

---

[1] *prevent a larger host . . . from being brought over* (**470**).

[2] See **430.**

[3] See **418, 419,** *a.*

[4] Caesar when consul the year before had induced the senate to recognize Ariovistus by conferring upon him the honorary title **amīcus populī Rōmānī.**

[5] *to think* (with **quārē**). What literally?

[6] An honorary title, like that of **amīcus,** conferred upon foreign nations for diplomatic reasons.

[7] *this* (**409**).

Germānōs[1] cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat. Hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs exīstimābat, omnī Galliā occupātā, in Prōvinciam exitūrōs esse atque inde in Italiam contentūrōs, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus[2] dīvideret; quibus rēbus[3] quam mātūrrimē[4] occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantam sibi arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus[5] nōn vidērētur.

Ariovistus Spurns Caesar's Request for an Interview

34. Quam ob rem placuit[6] eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent[7] utī aliquem locum medium[8] utrīusque colloquiō[9] dēligeret: velle[10] sē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit:

"Sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum vēnissem;[11] sī quid ille mē vult,[12] illum ad mē venīre oportet. Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audeō quās Caesar tenet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque difficultāte in ūnum locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem

---

[1] *for the Germans,* etc. The infinitive clauses **cōnsuēscere . . . venīre** are the subjects of **esse,** to be supplied with **perīculōsum.**

[2] (*only*) *the Rhone.*

[3] *this situation;* dative (**422**) with **occurrendum** (**esse sibi**): *he ought to meet.*

[4] Irregular superlative form.

[5] *unbearable* (with **nōn**).

[6] Impersonal: *he decided.*

[7] See **467.**

[8] *midway between them* (lit., *both*).

[9] See **418.**

[10] (*stating that*) *he wished,* indirect statement. The verb of saying is implied in **postulārent.**

[11] *if I needed anything from Caesar, I should have come to him.*

[12] *if he wishes anything of me.* Observe that **volō** here takes two accusatives.

mīrum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vīcī, aut Caesarī[1] aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī[2] sit."

Vocabulary Drill (33–34). — servitūs, turpis, paulātim, mātūrus, praetereā, commeātus, difficultās; quam ob rem.

Summary of Chapter 35

After receiving this insolent reply, Caesar sends what amounts to an ultimatum: first, that Ariovistus is not to bring any more Germans into Gaul; second, that he must return the hostages of the Haeduans; third, that he is not to wage war upon the Haeduans and their allies. If Ariovistus will agree to these demands there will be peace; otherwise Caesar will protect the interests of the Haeduans.

Ariovistus Sends a Defiant Reply

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit:

"Iūs est bellī ut victōrēs victīs quem ad modum[3] velint[4] imperent; item populus Rōmānus victīs nōn ad[5] alterius praescrīptum, sed ad[5] suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēvit. Sī ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescrībō quem ad modum suō iūre ūtātur, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impedīrī. Haeduī mihi,[6] quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāvērunt et armīs congressī ac superātī sunt, stīpendiāriī sunt factī. Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit quī suō adventū vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra facit. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, nēque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā[7] bellum īnferam, sī in eō manēbunt[8] quod convēnit stīpendiumque quotannīs pendent; sī id nōn fēcerint, longē hīs frāternum[9] nōmen populī

[1] See **424.**

[2] With **quid (415).**

[3] The phrase **quem ad modum** here means *as* (lit., *in what manner*); below, *how.*

[4] Translate as if indicative (**481**).

[5] *according to.*

[6] Depends on **stīpendiāriī.**

[7] *unjustly.*

[8] *if they will abide by that* (with **in eō**).

[9] *i.e.* **frātrum;** a sneer at the honorary title.

Rōmānī aberit.[1] Quod[2] mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congrediātur;[3] intelleget quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIIII tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint."[4]

Summary of Chapters 37–52

Upon receiving news of further German outrages, Caesar at once advances against Ariovistus and seizes Vesontio, a natural military base. Here exaggerated reports about the Germans throw his army into a panic and everywhere throughout the camp soldiers may be seen making out their wills. The officers even predict mutiny when he gives the order to advance. Caesar restores confidence by making light of their fears. He recalls how Marius defeated the Germans and states that the Helvetians, whom they themselves had just defeated, do not fear the Germans, for they have often beaten them in battle. This speech has a bracing effect and his men clamor for an immediate advance. Caesar marches against Ariovistus, who then asks for a parley. Caesar grants the request but guards against treachery. In his speech Caesar pleads for peace but insists upon his former demands. Ariovistus is as arrogant as before and demands that Caesar withdraw from *his* Gaul before he drives him out of it.

Caesar replies that he will not forsake his allies at such a crisis. The conference is brought to a sudden end when the German cavalry attack his escort. Ariovistus later arrests as spies two Roman envoys whom Caesar sent in response to his request for another conference. How Caesar afterwards rescues one of these envoys from being burned alive at the stake is vividly told in chapter 53. Ariovistus then begins actual hostilities by cutting off Caesar's line of communication, but Caesar later regains it by a skillful maneuver. Learning that the superstitious Germans are waiting for a full moon in order to attack him, Caesar decides to force the issue by attacking them at once. The fighting on both sides is desperate. At the critical moment Crassus sends up the reserves and the Romans win a decisive victory, as told in the following chapter.

---

[1] *i.e.* will be of little use to them.
[2] *as to the fact that.*
[3] *let him come on!*
[4] *can* (*do*).

The Germans Retreat — Ariovistus Escapes — Procillus Found

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius[1] fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter L, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus[2] cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut, nāvigiīs inventīs, sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus[3] eā[4] profūgit; reliquōs[5] omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā vīnctus[6] traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem, hostēs equitātū īnsequentem, incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum[7] prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat. Is dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum esse[8] dīcēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur[9] an in aliud tempus reservārētur[9] sed sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem.

Vocabulary Drill (36, 53). — temptō, congredior, tergum, rīpa, nancīscor, cōnsequor, īnsequor; quem ad modum.

Summary of Chapter 54

After establishing his legions in winter quarters at Vesontio, Caesar returns to Cisalpine Gaul.

---

[1] Take together with **quam**: *before.*

[2] Ablative with **cōnfīsī.**

[3] From **nancīscor.**

[4] Ablative of means.

[5] 80,000, according to Plutarch.

[6] From **vinciō.**

[7] Not "most honest." See Vocabulary.

[8] Impersonal: *they had consulted the lots three times.* The thrilling rescue of a personal friend and the joy it gave him reveal the human side of Caesar's manifold personality.

[9] See **479,** *a.*

Review Questions (30–53). — 1. Who were the leaders of the two Gallic factions? 2. What steps did one of them take to gain supremacy? 3. What was the result? 4. What did the Gauls want Caesar to do? 5. Why did Caesar think that he might have some influence with Ariovistus? 6. What reasons led Caesar to promise the Gauls his support? 7. What answer did Ariovistus make to Caesar's request for a conference? 8. How did Ariovistus defend his actions? 9. What finally happened to Ariovistus?

FIG. 122. ITALIAN TRENCH WITH PALISADE

Used during the World War, this trench with its palisade on top is remarkably like that used by the Romans. **Vāllum** is the Latin word for palisade. However, the Romans stayed on the other side for defense. (Official Italian war photograph.)

CAESAR: THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK II (*Simplified*)

340. The War with the Belgians (57 B.C.)

The Belgians Unite to Overthrow the Roman Rule

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī[1] suprā[2] dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās (quōs tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus) contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.[3] Coniūrandī hae erant causae: prīmum verēbantur nē,[4] omnī pācātā Galliā, ad eōs[5] exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitābantur. Multī ex hīs, ut[6] Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque manēre in Galliā molestē ferēbant.[7] Aliī mōbilitāte[8] et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs[9] studēbant. Ab nōn nūllīs etiam sollicitābantur, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō[10] nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

---

[1] With the indicative. Therefore what does it mean?

[2] See I, Summary of Chapter 54. For use of editorial "we," see I, 7, footnote 1.

[3] *were exchanging.*

[4] *that* or *lest* (**471**).

[5] Refers to the Belgians.

[6] *as . . . so* (with **ita**).

[7] *were displeased that* ("took it hard").

[8] See **443**.

[9] Dative with **studēbant** (**421**).

[10] *under our rule;* the ablative sometimes expresses attendant circumstances.

Caesar Leaves for the Front

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initiō aestātis Q. Pedium[1] lēgātum mīsit quī in ulteriōrem Galliam eās dēdūceret. Ipse, cum[2] prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī[3] ea quae apud eōs gerantur[4] cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī.[5] Tum vērō exīstimāvit sē dēbēre ad eōs proficīscī. Rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, castra movet diēbusque circiter XV ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi Declare Their Loyalty

3. Eō[6] cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne[7] vēnisset, Rēmī,[8] quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs[9] sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecombogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent:

"Nōs nostraque[10] omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus; neque cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsimus neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus, parātīque sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et in oppida recipere[11] et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānīque quī citrā Rhēnum incolunt sēsē

---

[1] Caesar's nephew, son of his sister Julia.

[2] With **prīmum**: *as soon as*. The indicative is more common in such a clause.

[3] The clause is in apposition with **negōtium**.

[4] Subjunctive by attraction (**481**).

[5] *were being mobilized.* [6] Adverb.

[7] Ablative of comparison: *sooner than anyone expected.*

[8] Reims, standing on the site of their capital, preserves their name.

[9] With **quī** (**415, Note, *b***).

[10] *our possessions.*

[11] Supply **vōs** as direct object.

cum hīs coniūnxērunt; tantusque est eōrum omnium furor ut[1] nē Suessiōnēs[2] quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, quī eōdem iūre et eīsdem lēgibus ūtuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum nōbīscum habent, coniūrātiōne prohibēre potuerīmus."

Vocabulary Drill (1–3). — suprā, diū, facultās, improvīsus, opīniō, fidēs.

Caesar Gets Information about the Belgians

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat:

"Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī ā Germānīs Rhēnumque[3] ōlim trāductī propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdērunt Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant expulērunt; sōlīque sunt quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī[4] prohibuerint; quā ex rē fit utī eārum rērum memoriā[5] magnam sibi auctōritātem in rē mīlitārī sūmant."

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta[6] Rēmī dīcēbant, propterea quod, propinquitātibus coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint:[7]

"Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; hī possunt cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitī sunt ex eō numerō mīlia LX tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulant. Suessiōnēs nostrī sunt fīnitimī; fīnēs lātissimōs fertilissimōsque agrōs habent. Apud eōs fuit

---

[1] Introduces **potuerīmus** (result).

[2] Accusative; emphatic position between **nē . . . quidem.** Their name survives in Soissons.

[3] See **430.**

[4] Object of **prohibuerint (470):** *kept the Teutons from entering.*

[5] Ablative of cause.

[6] *that they had found out everything.*

[7] See **480.**

rēx nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācus,[1] tōtīus Galliae potentissimus, quī cum[2] magnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit. Nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summa tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēfertur. Oppida habent numerō XII, pollicentur mīlia armāta L; totidem Nerviī, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque[3] absunt; XV mīlia Atrebātēs,[4] Ambiānī[5] X mīlia, Morinī XXV mīlia, Menapiī VIIII mīlia, Caletī X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduī totidem, Atuatucī XVIIII mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāmur ad XL mīlia posse cōnficere."

"Divide and Conquer," Caesar's Policy — He Crosses the Aisne and Encamps

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem[6] facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet necesse esse manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore pugnandum sit.[7] Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint[8] et eōrum agrōs vāstāre coeperint. Hīs rēbus mandātīs, eum ā sē dīmittit.

---

[1] Not, of course, the man mentioned in Book I, referred to again in the next chapter.

[2] With **tum**: *not only . . . but also.*

[3] Farthest from where?

[4] They have given their name to the city of Arras.

[5] Hence the name of the city of Amiens.

[6] *on time.* What literally?

[7] Impersonal: *lest the Romans have to fight.* Caesar's strategy here, of taking his enemies one at a time, is the same as that attempted by the Germans at the beginning of the World War, when they planned to dispose of the French and Belgians before Russia was ready.

[8] *if the Haeduans should lead,* etc. (**480**). The perfect subjunctive here represents the future perfect indicative of the direct statement.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās[1] ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus[2] et ab Rēmīs[2] cognōvit, flūmen Axonam,[3] quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs[4] et latus[5] ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant[6] tūta ab hostibus reddēbat et commeātūs[7] ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque XVIII pedum mūnīrī iubet.

Bibrax, a Town of the Remi, Attacked — The Inhabitants Appeal to Caesar for Aid

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum VIII. Id ex itinere[8] magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentum est.[9] Gallōrum eadem atque[10] Belgārum oppugnātiō est (haec): ubi, circumiectā multitūdine hominum, undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī[11] sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus[12] nūdātus est,

---

[1] Translate by a clause coördinate with **venīre.**

[2] With **cognōvit**; **ab** means *from.*

[3] Now the Aisne. The word is governed by the prefix **trā-** in **trādūcere,** whose direct object is **exercitum** (**430**).

[4] *this maneuver.*

[5] Direct object. The preceding **et** means *both.*

[6] For **ea quae post eum erant**: *the rear.*

[7] This and the following words belong in the **ut** clause, which depends on **efficiēbat.**

[8] *on the march, i.e.* without stopping to make the customary preparations for a siege.

[9] Use the personal construction in translating.

[10] *as;* so regularly with words of likeness, as **eadem** here.

[11] See **403.**

[12] Ablative of separation (**433**).

FIG. 123. TESTŪDŌ

testūdine factā, propius succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent,[1] in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī.[2] Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium[3] ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur,[4] sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

Vocabulary Drill (4–6). — plērīque, prōsequor, magnopere, oppugnātiō, lapis, testūdō, praesum, subsidium; cum . . . tum.

Bibrax Saved by Roman Aid — The Belgians Advance against Caesar's Camp

7. Eō dē[5] mediā nocte Caesar, eīsdem ducibus[6] ūsus, quī nūntiī[7] ab Icciō vēnerant, sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō[8] Rēmīs mittit. Quōrum adventū et[9] Rēmīs[10] cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus[11] eādem dē causā spēs potiendī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī,[12] agrīs Rēmōrum vāstātīs et omnibus vīcīs

[1] Why plural (**407**, *b*)? [2] Serves as dative of **nēmō**.
[3] *message* (*stating that*). [4] *should be sent* (**480**).
[5] *just after*. [6] (*as*) *guides*, in apposition with **eīsdem**.
[7] In apposition with **quī**. [8] See **418**, **419**, *a*.
[9] *both*. [10] Dative with **accessit**.
[11] Dative of reference, depending upon **discessit**: *left the enemy*.
[12] Translate this participle and the following ablatives as coördinate clauses (**489**, **440**).

aedificiīsque quō[1] adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs[2] contendērunt et ā[3] mīlibus[4] passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut[5] fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum VIII in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Cavalry Skirmishing — Caesar Strengthens His Fortifications and Awaits Attack

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter magnam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō[6] abstinēre statuit. Cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent experiēbātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō[7] prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā idōneō, ab utrōque latere eius collis in quō castra erant trānsversam fossam dūxit circiter passuum[8] CCCC et ad extrēmās[9] fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta[10] collocāvit. Hoc fēcit nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs ab lateribus[11] pugnantēs[12] suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī opus esset,[13] subsidiō[14] dūcī possent, reliquās VI legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxerant.

---

[1] *i.e.* **ad quae.**

[2] Ablative of accompaniment (**438, *b***).

[3] Adverb: *away.*

[4] Here ablative of measure of difference (**444**); **mīlibus** below is the ablative of comparison with **amplius** (**437**).

[5] How translated when used with the indicative?

[6] See **433.**

[7] Ablative absolute with **idōneō** or ablative of place.

[8] Depends on **fossam.**

[9] *at the ends of the trenches.*

[10] See Figs. 108, 110.

[11] With **circumvenīre.**

[12] With **suōs.**

[13] *if there was need* (**481**).

[14] See **418.**

The Belgians Try to Cross the Aisne to Attack Caesar from the Rear

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī[1] nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret,[2] ut[3] impedītōs aggrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō eques-

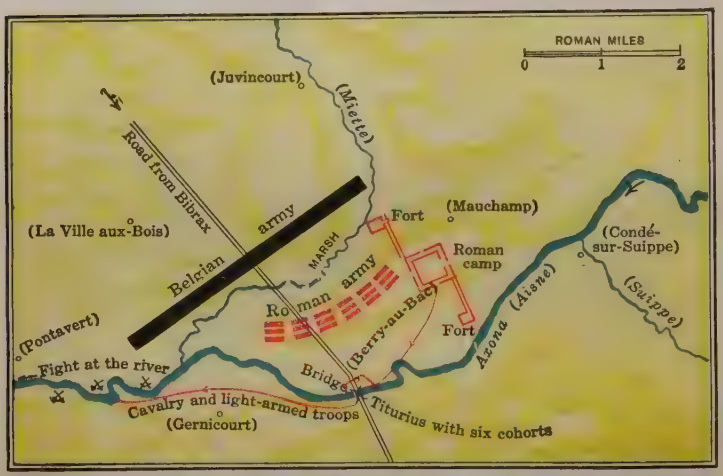


FIG. 124. THE BATTLE AT THE AISNE

trī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur.[4] Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre[5] equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi, vadīs repertīs, partem cōpiārum suārum

[1] *(to see) whether;* for **trānsīrent** see **479.**

[2] *should be made* (**481**).

[3] A purpose clause, depending on **parātī erant.**

[4] Impersonal.

[5] *the cavalry battle being rather favorable to our men.*

trādūcere cōnātī sunt, ut,[1] sī possent,[2] castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque rescinderent; sī minus potuissent,[3] agrōs Rēmōrum vāstārent, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī[4] ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

Vocabulary Drill (7–9). — lātitūdō, palūs, ūsus.

Caesar Defeats the Belgians — They Disperse

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae[5] Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per[6] eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs[7] nostrī multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse[8] intellēxērunt, et nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem nōn prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs[9] rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, concilium convocāvērunt. Cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque[10] revertī ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō[11] eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs

[1] Introduces **expugnārent, rescinderent, vāstārent,** and **prohibērent.**

[2] See **481.**

[3] *if not* (**481**). Represents a future perfect, while **possent** represents a future.

[4] See **418, 419,** *a.*

[5] Depends on **Numidās** (**414**).

[6] *over.*

[7] Agrees with **reliquōs,** direct object of **reppulērunt.**

[8] *that their hope had failed them.*

[9] Direct object, referring to the enemy.

[10] (*for*) *each man to return* (*to*) *his own home* (**428**).

[11] Explained by the **quod** clause.

FIG. 125. BRIDGE AT BERRY-AU-BAC
Near here the Battle of the Aisne was fought.

fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs[1] persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque[2] suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

Caesar Pursues and Inflicts Heavy Losses

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum tumultū castrīs ēgressī, nūllō certō ōrdine[3] neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt[4] ut similis fugae profectiō vidērētur.[5] Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent[6] nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōn-

[1] *the latter could not be persuaded* (**421**, *a*).
[2] *and not.*
[3] Ablative absolute: *there being*, etc.
[4] *they made their departure*, etc.
[5] See **473.** [6] See **479.**

firmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit eīque Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī, magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium;[1] sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Vocabulary Drill (10-11). — iniquus, appropinquō, perspiciō, subsequor, adorior.

Caesar Marches against the Suessiones — They Surrender

12. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar, priusquam s^{ē} hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent,[2] in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et, magnō itinere cōnfectō, ad oppidum Noviodūnum[3] contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs[4] dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās agere quaeque[5] ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine[6] operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant,[7] et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

---

[1] *as the length of the day allowed.*

[2] *before the enemy should recover;* anticipatory subjunctive (**478**).

[3] Now called Soissons, after the Suessiones. It played an important part in the World War.

[4] Ablative absolute: *although*, etc.

[5] *i.e.* **et quae.**

[6] With **permōtī.**

[7] For **audīverant (404).**

The Bellovaci Surrender — They Beg for Mercy

13. Caesar, obsidibus[1] acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs[2] dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum v abesset,[3] omnēs maiōrēs nātū[4] ex oppidō ēgressī, manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre[5] coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs[6] manibus suō mōre[7] pācem ab Rōmānīs petīvērunt.

Diviciacus, the Haeduan, Pleads for Them

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba:

"Bellovacī omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuērunt; impulsī ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcēbant Haeduōs ā tē in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Quī[8] eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt nōn sōlum Bello-

---

[1] In apposition with **prīmīs** and **fīliīs**.

[2] Their name survives in that of the city of Beauvais.

[3] Note the difference of tense of the two verbs of the **cum** clause; similarly in the last sentence of this chapter.

[4] With **maiōrēs**: *older men* (**448**).

[5] While they could not speak Latin, they could nevertheless make themselves understood by signs and cries, the earliest universal language known.

[6] From **pandō**.

[7] See **449**.

[8] Supply **eī** as antecedent and as subject of **profūgērunt**.

vacī, sed etiam prō eīs Haeduī, ut tuā[1] clēmentiā in eōs[2] ūtāris. Quod[3] sī fēceris, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua[4] bella incidērunt, sustinēre[5] cōnsuērunt." [6]

Review Questions (1–14). — 1. Why did the Belgians plan to revolt against the Romans? 2. What steps did Caesar take when he heard of this plan? 3. In what way did he gain an advantage at the outset? 4. What light does the Map throw on the reason for the declaration of loyalty of the Remi? 5. What was the original home of the Belgians? 6. Which Belgian tribe was the strongest? 7. What did Caesar ask the Haeduans to do? 8. Why did Caesar take his position on the north side of the Aisne? 9. How was the town of Bibrax saved? 10. How did the Belgians plan to defeat Caesar? 11. How did Caesar defeat their plan? 12. What did the Belgians decide to do then? Why? 13. How did Caesar interpret their action at first? 14. What led the Suessiones to surrender? 15. What tribe was next to surrender? 16. Trace Caesar's course on the Map.

Surrender of the Ambiani — Their Neighbors, the Nervii, Are Defiant

15. Caesar, honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā, sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit et, quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte[7] atque hominum multitūdine[8] praestābat, DC obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.[9] Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat:

Nūllus est aditus ad eōs mercātōribus. Nihil patiuntur

---

[1] Note the emphatic position before the noun: *your* (*well-known*).
[2] *toward them.* [3] Object of **fēceris** (**409**).
[4] *if any* (**390, Note**). [5] Used without object: *hold out.*
[6] For **cōnsuēvērunt** (**404**). [7] See **445.** [8] See **448.**
[9] This sentence, which describes an unconditional surrender, an invasion, and another surrender, well illustrates two qualities of Caesar's style, conciseness and rapidity of narrative.

vīnī[1] reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs virtūtemque remittī exīstimant. Sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis; accūsant reliquōs Belgās, quī[2] sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque[3] virtūtem prōiēcerint. Cōnfirmant sē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

Vocabulary Drill (12–15). — **vīnea, agger, turris, impellō, ops, aditus.**

The Nervii and Their Allies Ready for Battle

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlibus[4] passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque Rōmānōrum ibi exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eándem bellī fortūnam experīrentur). Inveniēbat quoque exspectārī ab eīs Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs[5] eōsque[5] quī per aetātem[6] ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.[7]

Deserters Urge Them to Attack the Romans While They Are Pitching Camp

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs[8] reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs ūnā cum Caesare iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum[9] cōnsuētūdine itineris[9] nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrā-

[1] See **415.** The prohibition movement started early.
[2] *because they* (**474, Note**). [3] Adjective. [4] See **437.**
[5] Object of **coniēcisse.** For the subject supply **Nerviōs.**
[6] *i.e.* those who were very young or very old.
[7] *where there would not be,* etc. (**474**). [8] See **415** (*b*).
[9] **diērum** and **itineris** both depend on **cōnsuētūdine.**

runt[1] inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum[2] intercēdere. "Nōn est quicquam negōtī,"[3] inquiunt, "cum prīma legiō in castra vēnerit reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium aberunt, hanc sub impedīmentīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs, reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audēbunt."

Adiuvābat[4] etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī ōlim, quō[5] facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent,[6] impedīrent, saepēs hōc modō fēcerant: tenerās arborēs incīsās īnflexerant, rubīs sentibusque interiectīs. Ita effēcerant mūnītiōnem quō[7] nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem poterat.[8] Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

The Battle Ground

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum[9] nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant: collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōminmāvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter CC ab īnfimō apertus, ab[10] superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum[11] flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum[12] circiter trium.

Vocabulary Drill (17–18). — centuriō, adversus.

---

[1] For **dēmōnstrāvērunt** (404). [2] *quantity.*

[3] Genitive of the whole: *trouble* ("job").

[4] The subject is not **cōnsilium** but the **quod** clause.

[5] Purpose; **quō** is used for **ut** when the clause contains a comparative (**facilius**).

[6] *should come* (481). [7] *where.*

[8] Compare the modern barbed-wire entanglements.

[9] Omit in translation. [10] We say *on.*

[11] Preposition. [12] Predicate genitive of description.

The Nervii Attack Six Legions instead of One

19. Caesar, equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs;[1] sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter[2] sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine[3] suā Caesar VI legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat;[4] inde duae

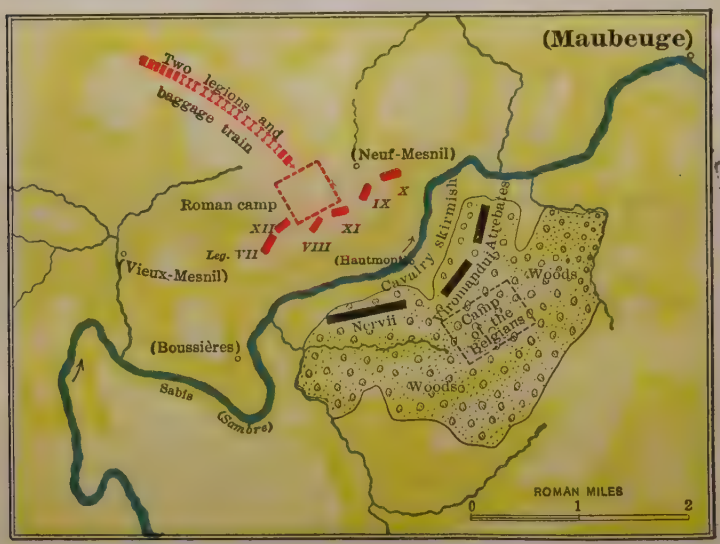


FIG. 126. THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII AT THE SAMBRE

legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum

[1] Ablative of accompaniment (**438**, *b*).

[2] *were different from what;* lit., *had themselves* (i.e. *were*) *otherwise than.*

[3] See **449.** [4] What is the uncontracted form?

facerent neque nostrī longius[1] quam quem ad fīnem loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs hostēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs VI quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō, castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs quī in silvīs abditī erant vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs[2] ēvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus[3] nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō[4] colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

The Need for Haste — Roman Discipline Counts

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum[5] prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsigne[6] cum ad arma concurrī[7] oportēret); ab opere revocandī mīlitēs; quī paulō longius aggeris[8] petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī; aciēs īnstruenda; mīlitēs cohortandī; signum[9] tubā dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et impetūs hostium impediēbat.

Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid[10] fierī oportēret ipsī sibi praescrībere poterant; et quod[11] ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil[12] iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant sed per sē quae vidēbantur[13] administrābant.

---

[1] *farther than the open space extended.* [2] See **438**, *b*.

[3] *upon us.* What literally? [4] *up-hill.*

[5] *standard*, a red banner displayed at the general's tent before a battle. Compare the modern practice of "running up the colors."

[6] Noun. [7] Impersonal. [8] *material for the rampart.*

[9] To fall in line.

[10] The clause depends on **praescrībere.**

[11] *the fact that;* the second of the **duae rēs.**

[12] Stronger than **nōn iam.** [13] *seemed best.*

A Time for Deeds, Not Words

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs dēcucurrit et forte ad legiōnem decimam[1] dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus est quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent.[2] Quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō[3] tēlum adigī posset,[4] proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pugnantibus[5] occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad pugnandum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsignia[6] accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās[7] scūtīsque[8] tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam[9] quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque[10] prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

Which Way Will the Tide of Battle Turn?

22. Īnstrūctus erat exercitus magis ut[11] locī nātūra et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat. Dīversae legiōnēs, aliae[12] aliā in parte, hostibus resistēbant, saepibusque dēnsissimīs (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectīs,

---

[1] Caesar's favorite. [2] **utī** is understood.

[3] (*the distance*) *to which*. [4] See **474.** [5] See **422.**

[6] Caesar probably means the red or black crests or plumes worn on the helmet to show the rank of the wearer or the legion to which he belonged.

[7] Like the modern soldier with his "tin hat," the Roman soldier ordinarily carried his helmet on his pack or suspended by a thong from his neck while on the march.

[8] See **433.** When not in use the shields were kept in water-proof cases to protect them from dampness.

[9] With **partem.**

[10] For **et quae.**

[11] How translated with the indicative?

[12] *some in one place, others in another.*

prōspectus impediēbātur. Neque certa subsidia collocārī[1] neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī[1] neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī[1] poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae[2] quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

The Romans Win Temporary Success, but the Nervii Capture Their Camp

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs,[3] ut in sinistrā parte aciēī cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs, cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et eōs trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī[4] trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et, in locum inīquum prōgressī, rūrsus resistentēs hostēs, redintegrātō proeliō, in fugam dedērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, pulsīs Viromanduīs (quibuscum erant congressae) ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs pugnābant. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et, nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō, septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine, duce[5] Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum[6] castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Vocabulary Drill (21–23). — prīstinus, perturbō, adigō, dēsum, compellō, frōns, cornū; in fugam dare.

The Romans Deserted by Camp Followers and Cavalry

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant (quōs prīmō hostium impetū

[1] All the infinitives depend on **poterant.**
[2] Depends on **ēventūs.** [3] Nominative.
[4] The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions.
[5] Ablative absolute.
[6] *the height on which the camp was located.*

pulsōs esse dīxerāmus) cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs[1] hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant. Cālōnēs,[2] quī ab decumānā portā[3] ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs[4] flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī[5] causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.[6] Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī sunt equitēs Trēverī,[7] quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant. Cum[8] multitūdine hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dissipātōs in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs[9] nostrīs rēbus, domum contendērunt. Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque,[10] castrīs[11] impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

---

[1] *met the enemy face to face.*

[2] *camp-servants,* who looked after the baggage and the pack animals and attended to the menial duties of camp life. It is estimated that there were at least five hundred and twenty of them assigned to every legion.

[3] *from the rear gate,* which was on the crest of the hill, for wherever possible the Romans pitched their camps on hillsides or rising ground, so that, as in this case, the rear was usually higher than the front.

[4] (*as*) *victors; i.e.* the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions, mentioned in Chapter 23.

[5] Looting seems to have been the special privilege of these officers' servants.

[6] *rushed* ("middle" use of passive, **484**).

[7] Here used as an adjective. Their name survives in that of the city Trèves.

[8] Introduces **vīdissent.**

[9] *despairing of our success.*

[10] Supply **esse.**

[11] See **442.**

The Romans in Great Danger — Caesar Leads the Attack in Person

25. Caesar[1] ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōnē ad dextrum cornū profectus est, ubi[2] suōs urgērī signīsque[3] in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit. Quārtae cohortis omnēs centuriōnēs occīsī erant, signiferque interfectus, signum āmissum, reliquārum cohortium omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulnerātī aut occīsī, in hīs prīmipīlus P. Sextius Baculus, fortissimus vir, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectus, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset. Reliquī erant tardiōrēs et nōn nūllī ab novissimīs[4] dēsertōrēs proeliō excēdēbant ac tēla vītābant. Hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs[5] intermittēbant et ab utrōque latere īnstābant. Caesar rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset[6] — scūtō[7] ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōmināti m appellātīs,[8] reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō[9] facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus[10] ac redintegrātō animō, cum[11] prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris

---

[1] This chapter resumes Caesar's account of his own part in the battle, interrupted at the close of Chapter 21.

[2] *where*, introducing **vīdit**.

[3] The **-que** connects the two clauses.

[4] *the rear.*

[5] *did not cease coming up.*

[6] See **474.**

[7] *seizing a shield from a soldier in the rear ranks.* For **mīlitī** see **423.**

[8] This reveals one secret of Caesar's magnetic leadership — he knew by name the humblest noncommissioned officer in the ranks.

[9] For **ut**; regularly used to introduce a purpose clause containing a comparative.

[10] See **422.** [11] Causal.

etiam in extrēmīs[1] suīs rēbus operam nāvāre[2] cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

The Romans Stand Their Ground — Reinforcements Arrive

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa[3] signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē[4] āversī[5] ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō,[6] in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et Labiēnus castrīs[7] hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur[8] cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.[9]

The Defeat of the Nervii

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent[10] scūtīs[11]

---

[1] *in the midst of extreme danger to himself.*

[2] With **operam**: *to do his best.* For a stirring account of this scene, read Longfellow's *Courtship of Miles Standish*, Part II.

[3] *face about and advance.* What literally?

[4] *that;* affirmative clause with the subjunctive after a verb of fearing (**471**).

[5] *in the rear.*

[6] *advancing double-quick.* What literally?

[7] See **442.** [8] See **479.**

[9] *they came as fast as they could.* What literally? For **reliquī** see **415.**

[10] Attracted into the subjunctive by its inclusion in the result clause (**481**).

[11] Ablative with **innīxī**: *resting on.*

innīxī proelium redintegrārent, et cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs[1] armātīs occurrerent. Equitēs vērō ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnae sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferēbant.[2] At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus[3] īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent. Hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī supererant[4] ut[5] ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs coniciēbant pīlaque intercepta remittēbant. (Nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbet[6]) ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia[7] ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

Vocabulary Drill (24–27). — respiciō, simul, singulāris, vītō, opera, vērō, īnsistō.

The Losses of the Nervii — Caesar's Mercy

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum[8] victōribus nihil impedītum,[9] victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt. In commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex DC ad trēs senātōrēs,

[1] In agreement with **cālōnēs.**

[2] *tried to show themselves superior to.* There has always been rivalry between cavalry and infantry, the latter being dubbed "infants" by the former, doubtless because they "crept" along on foot. The legionary soldiers, however, formed the real fighting strength of the Roman army. Caesar never relied upon his cavalry to win victories.

[3] *the fallen.* For case see **422.** [4] From **supersum.**

[5] *as from a mound.* [6] *it ought to be judged that.*

[7] Predicate accusative: *had rendered easy instead of* (**ex**). The great heroism and desperate valor of the Nervii commanded Caesar's respect and won from him this deserved tribute.

[8] *since.* [9] *nothing in the way.*

ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad D quī arma ferre possent[1] sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in[2] miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus[3] misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā sē suōsque prohibērent.

Review Questions (15-28). — 1. What did Caesar find out about the Nervii? 2. Where were they waiting for Caesar? 3. Whose help did they have? 4. Why did their surprise attack on Caesar's army fail? 5. What aided the Romans in the emergency? 6. What did the ninth and tenth legions do? 7. The eighth and the eleventh? 8. Where were the seventh and twelfth? 9. What did the cavalry of the Treveri do? 10. What three things saved the twelfth legion? 11. Trace Caesar's course on the Map.

The Atuatuci Take Refuge in a Fortified Town

29. Atuatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum[4] omnibus cōpiīs[5] auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; omnibus oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum[6] ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum CC relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque[7] prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs[8] quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen

[1] Subjunctive in a descriptive relative clause (**474**). Probably the Nervii exaggerated their losses in order to get better terms.

[2] *toward.* [3] Supply **esse.** [4] The conjunction.

[5] Ablative of accompaniment (**438**, *b*).

[6] *although this* (*town*). This town is now probably Namur. See Fig. 127.

[7] These two German tribes had been decisively defeated by Marius, Caesar's uncle, in 102 and 101 B.C.

[8] Here *live stock and goods*, as shown by **agere** and **portāre.**

FIG. 127. THE CITADEL OF NAMUR
On this height the Atuatuci are supposed to have taken refuge.

Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam[1] ex suīs[2] ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum relīquērunt. Hī post eōrum[3] mortem multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs vexātī, cum aliās[4] bellum īnferrent, aliās (illātum) dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā, hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

They Ridicule the Roman "Tanks"

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō ēruptiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū XV mīlium,[5] crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī[6] oppidō[7] sē continēbant.

---

[1] (*as*) *a guard.* [2] Take **ex suīs** with **sex mīlia.**
[3] The main group. [4] Adverb: *now . . . now.* [5] *i.e.* **pedum.**
[6] *when hemmed in* (*i.e.* by Caesar's rampart), agreeing with the subject of **continēbant.**
[7] See **441.**

Ubi, vīneīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim[1] procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīsērunt ex mūrō quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur:[2] "Quibusnam[3] manibus aut quibus vīribus vōs, praesertim hominēs[4] tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs, prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum, brevitās Rōmānōrum contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō nostrō vōs posse collocāre cōnfīditis?"

Their Laughter Changes to Alarm — They Offer to Surrender

31. Ubi vērō movērī[5] et appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī sunt:

"Nōn exīstimāmus vōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī[6] tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possītis; nōs nostraque omnia vestrae potestātī permittimus. Ūnum petimus et ōrāmus: sī forte prō tuā clēmentiā, quam ab aliīs audīmus, statueris Atuatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nōlī[7] nōs armīs[8] dēspoliāre. Nōbīs omnēs ferē fīnitimī sunt inimīcī ac nostrae virtūtī[9] invident; ā quibus nōs dēfendere, trāditīs armīs, nōn poterimus. Nōbīs praestat, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcāmur,[10] quamvīs[11] fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab eīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēvimus."

Vocabulary Drill (29–31). — **lēnis, duplex, ēruptiō, ōrō.**

---

[1] For the form see **373, Note 2.**

[2] See **482.**

[3] **-nam** as enclitic is intensive.

[4] In apposition with **vōs**: *(being) men.*

[5] Supply **turrim** as subject.

[6] *since you.* A subjunctive relative clause may express cause.

[7] *do not deprive us.* Negative commands ("prohibitions") are regularly expressed by the imperative forms of **nōlō** (**nōlī, nōlīte**) and the infinitive of the verb in question.

[8] See **433.** [9] See **421.** [10] *we should be brought.*

[11] From **quīvīs**: *any whatever.*

Caesar Demands That They Lay Down Their Arms — They Secretly Withhold Part of Them

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit:

"Magis cōnsuētūdine[1] meā quam meritō vestrō cīvitātem cōnservābō, sī, priusquam mūrum ariēs[2] attigerit, vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditiōnis nūlla est condiciō nisi armīs trāditīs. Id quod in[3] Nerviīs fēcī faciam, fīnitimīsque imperābō nē quam[4] dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferant." Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, illī sē quae imperārentur[5] facere[6] dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine[7] dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs, eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.[8]

They Make a Treacherous Attack but Are Defeated — Many Are Sold as Slaves

33. Sub[9] vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū Atuatucī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō cōnsiliō,[10] quod, dēditiōne factā, nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique[11] indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, tertiā vigiliā, quā[12] minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante

---

[1] See **449.**

[2] No mercy was shown after the battering ram had once touched the walls of a besieged town. Its inhabitants were then killed or sold into slavery.

[3] *in the case of.* [4] *any* (**390, Note**).

[5] See **480.** [6] *said they were doing.*

[7] Translate this and the following ablative absolute as main clauses.

[8] *they observed a truce.* [9] *toward.*

[10] *in accordance with.* The adverb **ante** belongs with **initō**, which is from **ineō**.

[11] *at least.* [12] Supply **parte**: *where.*

Caesar imperāverat, ignibus[1] significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est,[2] pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā[3] virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad[4] hominum mīlibus IIII, reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē eius diēī frāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem[5] eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium LIII.

The Coast Towns Brought under Roman Sway

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō,[6] quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas,[7] Essuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in potestātem populī Rōmānī redāctās esse.

---

[1] *fire signals*, in general use among all peoples until more rapid means of communication were invented, such as the telephone and telegraph. The Indians "telegraphed" news by means of smoke and fire signals.

[2] Translate actively and personally. Do the same with the following verbs used impersonally, by making **hostibus** and **virīs fortibus** the subjects of their respective verbs.

[3] *alone.* [4] *about.*

[5] Merchants and slave dealers followed in the wake of every Roman army and purchased the spoils of war. With stolid indifference Caesar accepts their count as to the actual number of inhabitants bought by them as slaves. Such was the hard lot of natives who rebelled against Roman arms after having once sued for peace. Caesar strongly contrasts the bravery of the Nervii and the treachery of the Atuatuci and his consequent leniency toward the former and severity toward the latter.

[6] Son of Caesar's colleague in the triumvirate. Though belonging to one of Rome's proudest and wealthiest families, this young man "made good" as one of Caesar's most trusted **lēgātī**.

[7] Greek form of the accusative (third declension).

German Envoys Arrive — Winter Quarters — Caesar's Victories Celebrated at Rome

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent[1] lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē[2] obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque[3] properābat,

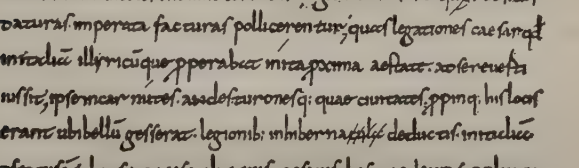


Fig. 128. A Ninth Century Manuscript of Caesar

initiō proximae aestātis ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse, in Carnutēs,[4] Andēs,[4] Turonōs,[4] quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae hīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris in diēs xv supplicātiō[5] dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

---

[1] Translate as if indicative; subjunctive by attraction (**481**).

[2] Refers to **nātiōnibus**, hence **datūrās** and **factūrās** (fem.).

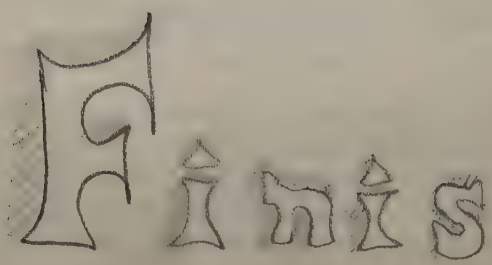
[3] Along the east coast of the Adriatic, within Caesar's jurisdiction as proconsular governor of Gaul.

[4] Chartres, Anjou, and Tours perpetuate these tribal names.

[5] Ordinarily a "thanksgiving" with its religious worship and public feasting lasted only three to five days, but we must remember that Caesar's party at this time was all-powerful at Rome.

Vocabulary Drill (32–35). — cēlō, ineō, ūniversus, maritimus, nātiō, hīberna, dēcernō.

Review Questions (29–35). — 1. What was the origin of the Atuatuci? 2. How did they happen to make Belgium their home? 3. Why did they laugh at the Roman preparations for a siege? 4. What did they do after surrendering? 5. How did Caesar punish them? 6. In what part of Gaul did Crassus subdue the natives? 7. Where did Caesar leave his army for the winter? 8. Where did he go? 9. How was he rewarded by the Roman Senate? 10. Trace Caesar's course on the Map.



CAESAR: THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK III

341. The War with the Veneti (56 B.C.)

Summary of Chapters 1–8

After subduing the Belgians, Caesar, with an eye to the commercial advantage which this conquest might bring to Rome, resolves to make access to this northern country easy and safe for Roman traders by opening a road through the Alps to Italy by way of the Great St. Bernard Pass. He accordingly sends one of his generals, Servius Galba, with a small force to guard this pass and hold the Alpine tribes in check. Galba takes up his winter quarters in Octodurus, a village of the Veragri. This proves to be a veritable death trap, for the mountaineers, who had pretended to submit, suddenly gather in overwhelming numbers on the heights above and assail the Romans before they have completed their fortifications. After six hours' fighting the Romans beat them off. Finding it impossible to get supplies, Galba burns the village, destroys his camp, and withdraws to the Province.

Caesar had sent Publius Crassus with a legion to establish winter quarters among the coast tribes of what is now Brittany and Normandy. Foremost of these were the Veneti, the hardiest and most skillful seamen of Gaul. They had professed to submit and had sent hostages to Crassus but later, when he sent some of his officers to arrange for supplies, they seize these to force him to restore their hostages. All the northwestern seacoast tribes combine to resist the Romans and send an embassy to Crassus, demanding the hostages. Caesar at once orders ships to be built at the mouth of the Loire and oarsmen to be procured from the Province, and hastens north in the early spring.

The Veneti and Other Coast States, Relying on Their Natural Advantages, Prepare for War

9. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs, cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul[1] quod quantum[2] in sē facinus admīsissent in-

---

[1] *and also because.*

[2] *how great a crime they had committed in that,* etc., explained by **lēgātōs . . . coniectōs (esse).**

tellegēbant, lēgātōs (quod nōmen[1] apud omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset) retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc maiōre spē[2] quod multum nātūrā[3] locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria[4] esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque[5] nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac iam ut[6] omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse,[7] Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre[7] nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse;[7] ac longē aliam[8] esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō[9] marī atque in apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs, oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs ascīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā,[10] quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

---

[1] *a name which.* Strictly speaking, the officers "arrested" and "thrown into chains" were not envoys but only petty military officers sent to barter with the natives for supplies. What do you think was Caesar's probable reason for putting this act of the Gauls in the worst possible light?

[2] *with the greater hope.* **Hōc** is ablative of cause, explained by the **quod** clause.

[3] Ablative with **cōnfīdēbant.**

[4] *land routes.*

[5] *and . . . not,* with **posse.**

[6] *although* (**477, Note**).

[7] Supply **sciēbant.**

[8] With **atque:** *different from (that);* lit., *other than.* With a word of comparison **atque** means *as* or *than.*

[9] *i.e.* the Mediterranean or "inland sea," dominated by Roman fleets. What body of water is meant by **apertissimō Ōceanō?**

[10] To stop this "foreign interference" was later Caesar's chief reason for invading Britain.

Caesar's Reasons for Declaring War upon the Veneti

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria[1] retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē, hāc parte neglēctā, reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum[2] intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum celeriter excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātis studiō incendī et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs coniūrārent,[3] partiendum sibi[4] ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Caesar Divides His Army in Order to Police the Country

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat[5] Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat; Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī[6] dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret.[7] D. Brūtum[8] adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque

---

[1] *the wrong (done) by the arrest of.* [2] *since.*

[3] *should join the conspiracy* (**478**).

[4] See **425.**

[5] Supply **ut,** to introduce **adeat, contineat,** and **prohibeat.**

[6] Supply **esse.**

[7] *to see that these forces are kept apart* (**467**). What literally?

[8] Object of **praeficit.** Brutus was later one of the conspirators who killed Caesar but is not to be confused with the more famous M. Brutus.

pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit, et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs[1] contendit.

The Elusive Veneti

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita[2] in extrēmīs prōmunturiīs neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō[3] sē aestus[4] incitāvisset,[5] neque nāvibus, quod, rūrsus minuente aestū, nāvēs in vadīs afflictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius reī[6] summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem locī opportūnitātibus dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque[7] erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs[8] portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Vocabulary Drill (9–12). — nāvigātiō, portus, cōnstō, tot, excitō, distribuō, aestus.

Summary of Chapter 13

The Veneti have a powerful fleet of seagoing vessels which have every advantage over the Roman galleys, because they have high prows and flat keels and are fitted with sails, being admirably adapted to fighting in shallow water or to riding out storms at sea.

---

[1] See **438**, *b*.

[2] Supply **oppida**.

[3] *from the deep*.

[4] Distinguish **aestās** and **aestus**.

[5] *had rushed in* (*i.e.* at high tide).

[6] *i.e.* ships.

[7] With **difficultās**. Make causal clauses out of the series of ablatives absolute.

[8] *nonexistent*.

The First Sea Fight on the Atlantic — Roman Strategy Wins

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam, captīs oppidīs, reprimī neque eīs nocērī[1] posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus

Fig. 129. Roman Galleys
See also Fig. 130. (From "Ben Hur.")

vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae ex portū profectae nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō,[2] quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent[3] aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō[4] enim nocērī nōn posse cognō-

[1] *that they could not be injured* (**421**, *a*).
[2] With **cōnstābat.** [3] *what they should do.*
[4] Ablative, not dative.

verant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen[1] hās altitūdō puppium ex[2] barbarīs nāvibus superābat ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa[3] ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ab nostrīs — falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxaeque longuriīs nōn absimilī[4] fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs[5] cum[6] fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō, praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs, antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus[7] spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō

FIG. 130. ROMAN TRIREME

Front view of the galley shown in Fig. 129. Note the three banks of oars. (From "Ben Hur.")

---

[1] What does **tamen** show as to the force of the preceding ablative absolute?

[2] *on.*

[3] *those hurled.*

[4] *not unlike that of;* **fōrmā** is ablative of description.

[5] Ablative of means, with **comprehēnsī.**

[6] *whenever.*

[7] *in the case of the Gallic ships;* dative of reference **(419).**

tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius[1] factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

The Victory Decisive — A Calm Prevents the Escape of the Crippled Ships

15. Dēiectīs (ut dīximus) antemnīs, cum[2] singulās[3] bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō[4] ventus ferēbat,[5] tanta subitō tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsecūtī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum[6] ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

Surrender of the Veneti — The Survivors Sold into Slavery

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum[7] omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris[8] aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium[9] quod ubīque fuerat in

---

[1] *a little braver (than usual).*
[2] *whenever.*
[3] *each (Gallic vessel).*
[4] Adverb.
[5] *was blowing.*
[6] The clause seems to be rather loosely attached to the preceding: *the fighting going on,* etc.
[7] With **tum**: *not only . . . but also.* What literally?
[8] *more advanced.* What literally? Age is thought of as a burden.
[9] Depends on **quod**: *all the ships they had.*

ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs, reliquī neque quō[1] sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō[2] gravius Caesar vindicandum[3] statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque, omnī senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā[4] vēndidit.

Vocabulary Drill (14–16). — fūnis, ventus, dignitās.

Summary of Chapters 17–27

Before the campaign with the Veneti is over, Caesar sends Sabinus to subdue their northern allies. Knowing that he must employ strategy if he would cope with overwhelming numbers, Sabinus bribes a Gaul to play the rôle of a deserter and tell the Gauls that Caesar is in great danger of being defeated and that he, Sabinus, is about to march to his aid. The ruse works, for the Gauls immediately attack him in his camp, whereupon, having the advantage of position, he orders his trained cohorts to charge them from the right and left gates and sends them flying. The Venelli and their allies at once surrender.

Meanwhile Crassus, who was sent by Caesar to subdue Aquitania, is attacked by the Sotiates. He defeats them after fierce fighting and captures their city. Adiatunnus with a band of sworn followers tries to escape but is captured. Advancing farther, Crassus faces a formidable army which fights according to Roman tactics. Since the enemy has adopted a policy of "watchful waiting," Crassus decides to attack their camp. Finding that the rear gate is not well guarded, the Romans make a surprise attack and utterly rout the enemy. The various tribes of Aquitania now surrender to Crassus and send hostages.

War with the Morini and Menapii

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod, omnī Galliā pācātā, Morinī Mena-

---

[1] (*a place*) *where they might take refuge or means whereby.*

[2] *all the more severely,* looking forward to **quō,** for which see **468.**

[3] *that punishment ought to be inflicted.*

[4] "under the crown," i.e. *as slaves,* referring to the custom of crowning prisoners of war with wreaths when offering them for sale.

piīque supererant quī in armīs essent[1] neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent,[1] arbitrātus[2] id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī[3] longē aliā ratiōne ac[4] reliquī Gallī bellum gerere īnstituērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs[5] habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et, complūribus interfectīs, longius[6] impedītiōribus locīs[7] secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

Summary of Chapter 29

The Morini, avoiding a pitched battle, seek refuge in their vast forests. The Romans pursue and attempt to hew their way after them, but storms prevent. After ravaging the enemy's country as much as possible, Caesar returns to winter in territory recently conquered by him.

Review Questions (9–29). — 1. Why did Caesar attack the Veneti? 2. What difficulties did he encounter? 3. What task did he assign to Labienus? 4. To Crassus? 5. To Sabinus? 6. To Brutus? 7. How did the tide help the Veneti? 8. Why was it useless for Caesar to capture their cities? 9. How did the Roman and Venetan ships differ? 10. What won the sea battle for the Romans? 11. How is the story of the battle similar to that of the Horatii and Curiatii? 12. How long did the battle last? 13. How did Caesar punish the Veneti for seizing his officers? 14. What difficulties did Caesar encounter in attacking the Morini and Menapii? 15. Trace Caesar's course on the Map.

---

[1] See **474.** [2] *thinking.* [3] *but they.* [4] *than,* after **aliā.**

[5] In this very country the Belgian army saved itself during the World War by opening some of the dikes and allowing the land to revert to its marshy condition. The Germans were unable to follow and suffered great losses.

[6] *too far.* [7] See **446.**

CAESAR: THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK IV

342. War with German Invaders of Gaul (55 B.C.)

Two German Tribes, Forced by the Suebi to Emigrate, Enter Gaul

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī[1] fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō[2] M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō[3] Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Description of the Suebi

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula[4] mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā suīs ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī[5] mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō[6] remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet.

---

[1] Refers to **hieme** (fem.) but agrees with **annus** (masc.).

[2] Note the Roman way of designating time by naming the two consuls for the year. Pompey and Crassus, who with Caesar formed the First Triumvirate, *i.e.* a group of three political "bosses," had been elected to the consulship with Caesar's political support, with the understanding that they would secure for him a five-year extension of his term as proconsular governor of Gaul to enable him to complete its conquest.

[3] Adverb.

[4] *a thousand each.* What then was their combined military strength?

[5] *at home* (**452**).

[6] *than a year* (**437**).

Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem[1] lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque[2] sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs[3] et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs[4] nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā assuēfactī[5] nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs[6] frīgidissimīs neque[7] vestītūs praeter pellēs habeant[8] quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

Summary of Chapters 2–12

The Suebi tolerate the presence of traders solely that they may sell what they take in war. They are teetotalers. They ride bareback, often fighting on foot, making a speedy "get-away" on horseback if the fighting goes against them. They live in splendid isolation, allowing no one to settle near their borders. They make the Ubii tributary and drive out the German Usipetes and Tencteri, who flee to the Rhine, where they are held in check by the Menapii, a Gallic tribe, who have settlements on both sides of the river. The Germans, however, make a surprise attack and cross into Gaul. Caesar, knowing the fickle character of the Gauls, fears that they may unite with the Germans against him. He therefore resolves to drive out the Germans. When their envoys come to him asking for lands in Gaul, he orders them to leave the country. They plead for delay and gain a truce, but later make a treacherous attack upon the Roman cavalry.

The Heroic Death of Two Brothers

12. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere[9] nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat,

---

[1] *for the most part* (**427**). [2] *they are much given to.*

[3] *this manner of life*, subject of **alit** and **efficit.**

[4] *from boyhood.* [5] *accustomed to;* lit., *by.* [6] See **446.**

[7] With **et** : *not only not . . . but even.*

[8] When the perfect tense has present perfect force (as **addūxērunt** here) primary sequence may be used.

[9] See **435.**

amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus[1] auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō, sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Summary of Chapters 13–15

After this treacherous attack, the Germans send some of their chiefs, again asking for a truce. Caesar seizes them and then, advancing upon the leaderless force of Germans, annihilates it.

Caesar Decides to Carry the War into the Enemy's Own Country

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum. Quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus[2] eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum[3] Rhēnum trānsīre.

Why Caesar Bridges the Rhine

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvimus Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis[4] esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum[5] aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.

(A technical description of the bridge follows. See Fig. 131)

---

[1] With **interclūsō**.

[2] *for their own possessions* (**suīs** is emphatic).

[3] Subject of **posse** and **audēre**.

[4] Predicate genitive of possession: *not in accord with the dignity*, etc.

[5] *he must make the effort.*

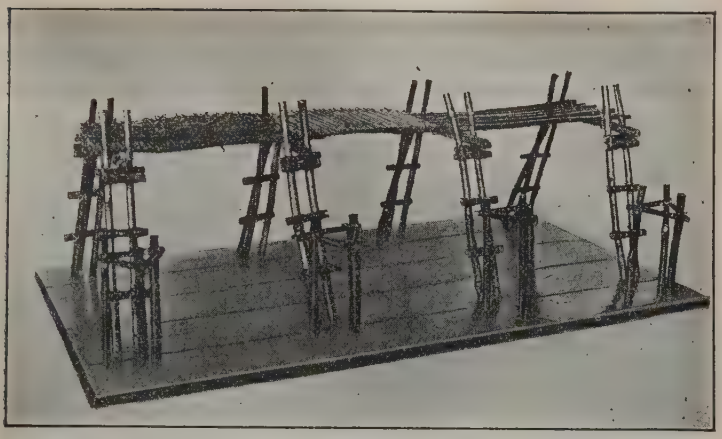


FIG. 131. CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE
(From a model made according to Caesar's description by a high school boy.)

Review Questions (1–17). — 1. Why did the Germans cross the Rhine into Gaul? Where? 2. What was the military system of the Suebi? 3. Who owned the farm lands among them? 4. What were their chief foods? 5. What do you infer was the chief food of the Romans? 6. Why did Caesar cross the Rhine into Germany? 7. How did he cross? 8. Why did he use this means?

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 18–19

Caesar invades Germany and strikes terror into the hearts of the Germans. After eighteen days he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.

343. CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN (55 B.C.)

Little Is Known about the Island

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā,[1] Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod

[1] (*being*) *left.*

omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs[1] hostibus nostrīs inde[2] subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore[3] arbitrābātur, sī modo

FIG. 132. U. S. ARMY BRIDGE

Picture taken at Plattsburg, N. Y. Note the similarity to Caesar's bridge (Fig. 131). "It will be noted that the character of construction used by Caesar is extremely similar to that in use at the present day." (U. S. Army pamphlet.)

īnsulam adīsset,[4] genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset, quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō[5] adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliam nōtum est. Itaque

[1] Ablative of time. Note that Caesar feels the need of justifying the invasion of Britain by putting the blame on the enemy.

[2] *i.e.* ē Britanniā.

[3] For futūrum esse.

[4] For adiisset. [5] Adverb.

ēvocātīs[1] ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta[2] esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat.

Summary of Chapters 21–22

Caesar sends Volusenus to Britain for information. British envoys arrive from certain tribes offering to submit. Commius is sent as a peace envoy to the rest. The Morini, a Gallic tribe living along the English Channel, surrender to Caesar and send hostages.

Caesar Prepares to Cross the Channel

22. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot[3] satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quicquid[4] praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant[5] XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā[6] mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quō[7] minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus tribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum[8] dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

Sets Sail at Midnight — Has Difficulty in Landing

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā nāvēs solvit,[9] equitēsque

---

[1] The ablative absolute is adverbial.

[2] A series of indirect questions, depending upon **reperīre.**

[3] *as many as.* [4] *whatever war galleys.*

[5] *there were in addition.* What literally? [6] *eight miles away.*

[7] *prevented* (**tenēbantur**) *from being able* (**470**).

[8] Agrees with **exercitum.**

[9] *Cf.* "loosed ship," *Acts* xiii, 13 (*King James Version*). What is the present English idiom? The place from which Caesar started (Boulogne) is still an important starting point for the trip across the Channel.

in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum[1] paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam[2] attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec[3] erat

Fig. 133. Chalk Cliffs near Dover

nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent[4] ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore

[1] *while they had carried out his order a little too slowly.*
[2] Probably near the steep chalk cliffs of Dover (see Fig. 133).
[3] *such.* [4] See **478.**

nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The Britons Bravely Defend Their Shores

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere[1] in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs[2] subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant.[3] Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus[4] autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum[5] illī[6] aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis[7] pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus[8] ūtī proeliīs cōnsuēverant ūtēbantur.

Caesar Drives the Britons Back with Artillery

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs[9] longās, quārum speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum[10] hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs[11] hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit. Quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit.

---

[1] *a type (of fighter) which.* [2] See **438, *b***

[3] Note the force of the imperfect.

[4] Dative of agent with **dēsiliendum, cōnsistendum, pugnandum.** Make it subject in English.

[5] *while.* [6] The Britons.

[7] With **imperītī (416).** [8] i.e. *on land.*

[9] Subject of **removērī, incitārī, cōnstituī.** Note change of subject in **hostēs . . . submovērī.**

[10] Which side — right or left? Why?

[11] *artillery.* See Figs. 108, 110.

Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum pedem rettulērunt. At nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī[1] decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam[2] hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hoc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē[3] nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus[4] cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

Vocabulary Drill (20–25). — exiguus, ancora, mōtus, prōdō, ultrō.

When the Romans Land, They Can Not Follow Up Their Victory Since They Have No Cavalry

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius[5] aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, in-

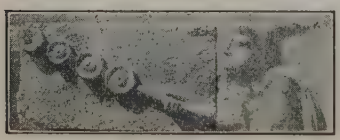


Fig. 134. Signum
From the excavations at Antioch, Pisidia, in 1924.
(Courtesy of D. M. Robinson.)

[1] Supply the antecedent: *the one who.*

[2] The Roman eagle or ensign, like our flag, was regarded with patriotic, almost religious, respect; its loss was considered a great disgrace.

[3] *one another.*

[4] Supply **eī**: *the men on the nearest ships,* used as subject of **cōnspexissent** and **appropinquāvērunt.**

[5] *one from one vessel, another from another would join whatever standard he met.*

citātīs equīs, impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs[1] paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat hīs[2] subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul[3] in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere[4] nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

The Britons Seek Peace and Return the Envoy Commius Whom They Had Seized

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul[5] atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset[6] sēsē factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāverāmus ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum[7] ad eōs ōrātōris modō[8] Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant. Tum, proeliō factō, remīsērunt[9] et in petendā pāce eius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur[10] petīvērunt. Caesar questus quod,[11] cum ultrō, in continentem lēgātīs missīs, pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae[12] dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit. Quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam

---

[1] *several.* [2] Antecedent of **quōs.** [3] *as soon as.*
[4] *reach.* They were still at the **ulterior portus** (Chapter 23).
[5] With **atque**: *as soon as.* *Cf.* **simul**, line 6.
[6] For **imperāvisset.** [7] *although.*
[8] *as an envoy.* What literally?
[9] Supply **eum.** [10] Impersonal.
[11] Introduces **intulissent; cum** goes with **petīssent.**
[12] See **421.**

paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs in agrōs remigrāre[1] iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

A Sudden Storm Scatters the Cavalry Transports

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, diē quārtō postquam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur,[2] aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō[3] cum perīculō dēicerentur;[2] quae, tamen[4] ancorīs iactīs, cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā[5] nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petīvērunt.

Wind and Tide Play Havoc with the Main Fleet

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna,[6] quī diēs[7] maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum[8] trānsportandum cūrāverat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent (fūnibus, ancorīs, reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs) ad nāvi-

[1] This amounted to the demobilization of their forces.

[2] Still part of the **ut** clause. [3] *to themselves.*

[4] *yet they anchored but when,* etc. [5] *in the face of the night.*

[6] This statement has enabled astronomers to compute the date exactly, August 30 (55 B.C.).

[7] *time.*

[8] Only part of the army had been transported in the galleys; see Chapters 22, 25.

gandum inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent,[1] et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs[2] in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons Secretly Plan to Renew Hostilities

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad ea quae iusserat Caesar facienda convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent — quae hōc[3] erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat — optimum esse dūxērunt,[4] rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod, hīs[5] superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere[6] coepērunt.

Caesar, Expecting Trouble, Provisions His Camp and Repairs the Ships

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū[7] nāvium suārum et ex eō[8] quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore[9] id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae[10] gra-

[1] See **474.**

[2] *i.e.* in Britain. For **in hiemem** *cf.* our colloquial use of "against."

[3] See **443.** [4] *thought.* [5] *i.e.* Caesar's army.

[6] *i.e.* to mobilize an army; for the opposite see Chapter 27.

[7] *accident to his ships.* What literally?

[8] *from the fact that* (explained by the **quod** clause).

[9] For **futūrum esse.** Its subject is **id.**

[10] Translate as if **eārum nāvium quae.**

vissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae[1] ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur,[2] XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.[3]

Vocabulary Drill (30–31). — **colloquor, commeātus, cōnfīdō, comportō.**

The Seventh Legion, on Forage Duty, Is Attacked by the Britons

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentī causā missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā — cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret — eī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam[4] cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem[5] legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id[6] quod erat

Fig. 135. Roman Soldiers
Note the horn and the standard. (From "Antony and Cleopatra.")

[1] Supply **ea.** [2] Impersonal.

[3] *he made it possible to sail well enough in the others.* For the **ut** clause see **473**; **nāvigārī** is used impersonally.

[4] *than usual.* [5] *in which.*

[6] **id quod erat:** *the truth*, explained by **aliquid . . . cōnsilī.**

suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī[1] et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī[2] animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus messō frūmentō, ūna pars erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās sē abdiderant; tum dispersōs,[3] dēpositīs armīs, in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs, reliquōs, incertīs ōrdinibus,[4] perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

FIG. 136. ITALIAN CAVALRY
Note how the helmets and lances make them resemble Roman soldiers.

British War Chariots

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant[5] et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum[6] ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum[7] turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus[8] pugnant. Aurīgae interim paulum ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita

---

[1] *to arm themselves* (**484**).

[2] By the Britons.

[3] Supply **eōs**, implied in **nostrōs** above.

[4] Ablative absolute.

[5] The subject is understood: *the warriors*. There were also the drivers (**aurīgae**).

[6] *caused by their horses* (with **terrōre**).

[7] Their own, not the enemy's.

[8] *on foot*.

currūs collocant ut, sī illī[1] ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum[2] habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant;[3] ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre[4] et brevī[5] moderārī ac flectere, et per[6] tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et inde sē in currūs celerrimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Vocabulary Drill (32–33). — interpōnō, cōnfestim, dēpōnō, circumdō.

Summary of Chapters 34–35

Caesar rescues the foragers. British reinforcements arrive. The Britons attack the Roman camp but are defeated.

The Britons Sue for Peace and Caesar Returns to Gaul

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs[7] Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquō diē[8] aequinoctī,[9] īnfirmīs nāvibus,[8] hiemī[10] nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs[11] reliquae capere[12] nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

Review Questions (20–36). — 1. At what time of year did Caesar cross into Britain? 2. Why did he go? 3. How did he try to get information about the island? 4. About how long did it take him to cross the Channel? 5. How did he effect a landing in the face of the opposition of the Britons? 6. Why did he have no cavalry with which to pursue the Britons? 7. What happened to his galleys and his transports during the night? 8. What three things did the Romans

---

[1] The warriors. [2] Noun.
[3] Transitive in the sense of *display*. [4] *control*.
[5] *in an instant*. [6] *along*. [7] *for them*.
[8] Ablative absolute. [9] Always a time of severe storms.
[10] *stormy weather*. [11] We say *as*. [12] *reach*.

lack? 9. What led Caesar to expect trouble? 10. Why did he hurry back to Gaul?

Summary of Chapters 37–38

The Morini attack a small force of Caesar's troops as soon as they disembark from the transports. Caesar sends Labienus against them, who makes short work of the revolt. The generals Sabinus and Cotta return to Caesar after devastating the lands of the Menapii. Caesar's army now goes into winter quarters in Belgium. A public thanksgiving is decreed at Rome in recognition of Caesar's victories.

CAESAR: THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK V

344. Caesar's Second Invasion of Britain (54 B.C.)

Summary of Chapters 1–7

The winter following the first expedition to Britain is spent in preparation for a second invasion. After issuing orders for a large fleet to be ready early the next spring, Caesar sets out for Illyricum because he hears that the Pirustae are raiding the country adjoining his province. After subduing these, he sets out for Gaul, where he finds the ships ready. Before setting sail, however, he decides to subdue the Treveri, among whom an anti-Roman spirit has developed. Caesar's presence among them with an army is sufficient to quell the revolt. By means of hostages he binds Indutiomarus to keep the peace. He then gives orders for his fleet to assemble at Portus Itius. He decides to take Dumnorix, the crafty and ambitious Haeduan, to Britain, for he fears that in his absence Dumnorix will cause trouble. While the troops are embarking and all is confusion in the Roman camp, Dumnorix escapes. He is soon captured and is killed while resisting arrest.

Setting Sail with More Than 800 Ships, He Lands Unopposed

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum III legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret cōnsiliumque prō[1] tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem[2] in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Āfricō[3] prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cog-

[1] *in accordance with.* [2] With **parī**: *as.* [3] *southwest wind.*

nōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, longārum nāvium cursum adaequāvērunt. Accessum est[1] ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus. Sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō[2] convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum prīvātīs,[3] quās suī quisque[4] commodī causā fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ab lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTER 9

Leaving a sufficient force under Quintus Atrius to guard the ships, Caesar advances inland against the Britons and captures one of their forest strongholds. On the following day, while preparing to pursue the Britons, he gets bad news.

The Fleet Nearly Destroyed by a Great Storm

10. Equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte, maximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent. Itaque ex eō concursū[5] nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

The Romans Repair Their Fleet — The Britons under Cassivellaunus Form a League

11. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cognōverat cōram perspicit, sīc ut, āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus, reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex

---

[1] Translate personally: *all the ships reached.* [2] Adverb.

[3] Supply **nāvibus**: *with ships privately owned.*

[4] *each for his own advantage.*

[5] The vessels broke away from their moorings and collided with one another.

legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit ut quam plūrimās possit eīs legiōnibus[1] quae sint apud eum nāvēs īnstituat.[2] Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae[3] ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs, eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā[4] imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic[5] superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

Ancient Britain — Its Inhabitants and Products

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur quōs nātōs[6] in īnsulā ipsī dīcunt; maritima pars ab eīs quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus[7] ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et, bellō illātō, ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō[8] nummō. Nāscitur

[1] *with those legions.* [2] *construct.* [3] (*a matter*) *of much toil.*

[4] Noun; with **imperī**: *supreme command.*

[5] *between this man and the other states.*

[6] *originated, i.e.* the natives of the interior claim to be the aboriginal inhabitants of Britain.

[7] *as those from which they originated and from which they migrated to this place.* [8] *instead of.*

ibi plumbum[1] album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere[2] ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā.[3] Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

The Geography of the Island[4]

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur,[5] ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, īnsula dīmidiō minor (ut exīstimātur) quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō atque[6] ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū[7] est īnsula quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae[8] īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmam esse noctem.[9] Nōs nihil dē eō reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā[10]

---

[1] *tin.* To-day "white lead" has a different meaning. The mines of Cornwall from earliest times furnished a large supply of this useful metal, which the Phoenicians carried to all parts of the ancient world.

[2] *bronze*, a composition of copper and tin, the widespread use of which during this period causes it to be known as the Bronze Age, immediately preceding the Iron Age. Earliest man belonged to the Stone Age.

[3] *for pastime and pleasure* (as "pets").

[4] This chapter, while not geographically accurate, is interesting in that it describes Britain as the ancient Romans thought it, not one of whom at this time had ever sailed around it or explored its interior.

[5] Not from **appellō, -āre.** [6] *as it is from.* [7] *in mid-channel.*

[8] Supply **esse**: *are thought to lie opposite.*

[9] Caesar's sources were incorrect on this point.

[10] *with a water clock*, resembling in principle the sand or hour glass.

mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius[1] est longitūdō lateris, ut[2] fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc[3] mīlia passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.[4]

The Britons of Caesar's Day

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs[5] sunt in pugnā aspectū;[6] capillōque[7] sunt prōmissō.

Summary of Chapters 15–17

The Romans on their march are fiercely assailed by British charioteers and cavalry, but beat them off. The Britons, by retreating, induce the Roman cavalry to pursue. Then, leaping down from their chariots, they fight on foot, relieving one another at intervals. They bother the Romans greatly by this style of fighting. Later, when Caesar sends out a detachment to forage, the Britons suddenly assail his scattered troops and drive them to seek the protection of the legions who are standing guard. The latter charge and drive the Britons headlong before them, giving them no time to rally.

---

[1] The side of Britain facing Ireland.

[2] *as their opinion goes.*

[3] Supply **latus.**

[4] Actually it is over twice as great. Examine the map (Imperium Romanum) and then draw a sketch map of western Europe as Caesar conceived it.

[5] Compare the war paint of the American Indians. Users of cosmetics can certainly get no comfort here.

[6] Ablative of respect with **horridiōrēs.**

[7] Ablative of description.

The Roman Soldiers Ford the Thames and Drive Back the Britons

18. Caesar, cognitō cōnsiliō[1] eōrum, ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hoc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās; rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīsque[2] mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā perfugīs captīvīsque, Caesar, praemissō equitātū, cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā[3] celeritāte atque eō[3] impetū mīlitēs ierunt, cum[4] capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

Fig. 137. Gladiator's Helmet

---

[1] The Britons had planned to avoid a decisive battle and to wear out the Romans by guerrilla tactics.

[2] *fastened down in front, i.e.* at the water's edge. But not even these obstacles could keep the Romans back.

[3] *such.*

[4] *although.*

Summary of Chapters 19–20

Cassivellaunus, the British leader, avoiding a general engagement, confines himself to skirmishing and guerrilla tactics. Meanwhile the Trinovantes, the strongest British tribe of that region, surrender and send hostages to Caesar.

Other Tribes Submit — Caesar Storms the Stronghold of Cassivellaunus

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum[1] iniūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī, lēgātiōnibus missīs, sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum[2] Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō[3] satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque ex aliā parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

An Attack on the Roman Naval Camp Fails — Surrender of Cassivellaunus

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī, coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs, castra nāvālia[4] dē improvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnis-

[1] *by the soldiers.*

[2] *stronghold;* tree breastworks or enclosures, intended as temporary places of refuge in times of danger. In other words, they were not permanent habitations or "towns" in our sense.

[3] *to which.*

[4] Built around the fleet, which had been drawn up on the beach.

sent, nostrī, ēruptiōne factā, multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī[1] posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs[2] singulōs vectīgālis[3] populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit. Imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

Caesar Returns to Gaul

23. Obsidibus acceptīs, exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus[4] exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae mīlitēs portāret dēsīderārētur; at ex eīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, perpaucae locum caperent,[5] reliquae ferē omnēs reicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius[6] mīlitēs collocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.[7]

---

[1] *dragged out*, i.e. *wasted*. [2] *yearly*.

[3] With **quid**. Since Caesar could leave no troops to enforce his demands, this tribute was, of course, never paid.

[4] *trips*. [5] *reached* Britain. [6] *more closely* (on the transports).

[7] One thing Caesar's two invasions of Britain had accomplished: they had put the island literally "on the map" so far as the Roman world was concerned, and this paved the way for the renewed invasions a century later.

Review Questions (8–23). — 1. Why was Labienus left in Gaul? 2. Why did Caesar meet with no opposition when he landed in Britain? 3. What happened to the ships? 4. What did Caesar do to protect them from further injury? 5. What, according to Caesar, was the origin of the Britons? 6. What metals were found in Britain? 7. Which of the Britons were the most civilized? Why? 8. What was the "oppidum" of the Britons? 9. Why was it necessary for Caesar's fleet to make two trips on the return to Gaul?

345. Revolt of the Northern Gauls

Summary of Chapters 24–29

Caesar finds it necessary, on account of the scarcity of provisions, to distribute his legions in six divisions among various Gallic tribes. The Gauls seize this opportunity to revolt. The Carnutes slay Tasgetius whom Caesar had made king over them. Caesar then orders Plancus, who was wintering among the Bellovaci, to take up his quarters among the Carnutes and seize those responsible for the death of Tasgetius. The Gauls now begin a series of attacks upon the Roman camps. Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, leaders of the Eburones, attack the camp of Sabinus and Cotta. In a parley Ambiorix states that the Gauls plan to attack all of Caesar's winter quarters, and, assuming the rôle of friend, he urges Sabinus to leave his camp and join either Cicero or Labienus. This news of a general uprising of the Gauls naturally alarms Sabinus and Cotta, and they call a council of war. Sabinus favors acting upon the advice given by Ambiorix, though an enemy, but Cotta, supported by several other officers, opposes him.

Sabinus Leaves Cotta No Choice but to Yield

30. Hāc in utramque partem[1] disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus[2] ācriter resisterētur,

"Vincite,"[3] inquit, "sī ita vultis," Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; "neque is sum," inquit, "quī gravissimē ex vōbīs[4] mortis perīculō terrear:[5] hī[6] sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē[7] ratiōnem poscent."

[1] *on both sides.* [2] The centurions are meant.
[3] *have your way.* [4] *among you.* [5] See **474.**
[6] The bystanders. [7] Cotta.

Sabinus Has His Way and the Army Leaves Camp

31. Cōnsurgitur[1] ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem daf[2] Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs.[3] Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō[4] hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Prīmā lūce ex castrīs proficīscuntur longissimō agmine maximīsque impedīmentīs.

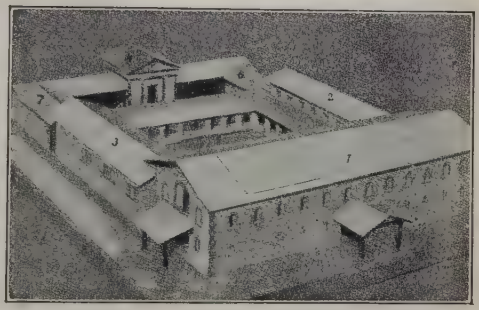


Fig. 138. Roman Fortified Camp
At Saalburg, Germany.

The Romans Are Ambushed on the March

32. At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō tumultū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātīs īnsidiīs bipertītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā[5] mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō[6] proelium committere coepērunt.

[1] Make personal in translation.
[2] With **manūs**: *gives in.*
[3] Supply **eōs** as subject.
[4] *outfit.*
[5] Adverb: *away.*
[6] See **446.**

Sabinus Loses His Head but Cotta Keeps Cool — They Form a Hollow Square

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius Sabīnus, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidābat et concursābat cohortēsque dispōnēbat, haec[1] tamen ipsa timidē atque ut[2] eum omnia[3] dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōnsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor[4] nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris[5] et in pugnā mīlitis[5] officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis minus facile per sē omnia agere et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit;[6] nam et nostrīs mīlitibus[7] spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum[8] vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit (quod fierī necesse erat) ut vulgō mīlitēs ab signīs discēderent, quaeque[9] quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedīmentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

Ambiorix Proves to Be an Able Leader of the Gauls

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis[10] ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī quaecumque

---

[1] Supply **faciēbat.**
[2] (*in such a way*) *that.*
[3] *all* (*his senses*).
[4] *in favor of.*
[5] Depends on **officia.**
[6] *resulted.*
[7] See **419.**
[8] Supply **esse.**
[9] For **et quae.** The **-que** connects the clauses whose verbs are **discēderent** and **properāret.** In **quisque** the **-que** is part of the word.
[10] See **390, Note.** For the clause see **486.**

Rōmānī relīquissent; omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent. Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā Fortūnā[1] dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant; et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat.[2] Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant, rūrsus sē ad signa recipientēs[3] īnsequantur.

The Fighting Goes Steadily against the Romans

35. Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant ēgressī revertī coeperant, et ab eīs quī cesserant et ab eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflictātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, resistēbant; et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs[4] esset[5] indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventius, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum[6] dūxerat, vir fortis et magnae auctōritātis, trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque hortāns in adversum ōs[7] fundā vulnerātur.

---

[1] Here personified as a goddess.
[2] Repeated action: *would fall.*
[3] Accusative. Refers to the Romans.
[4] See **450.**
[5] See **474.**
[6] From pīlus.
[7] *right in the face.* What literally?

Sabinus, against the Advice of Cotta, Seeks a Truce with Ambiorix

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit quī roget ut sibi[1] mīlitibusque[1] parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: Sī velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse quod[2] ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī[3] vērō nēminem nocitūrum esse, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.[4] Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur,[5] pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre sē[6] ab eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī[7] posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

Sabinus Is Slain during an Interview — The Roman Force Is Almost Annihilated

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā[8] tribūnōs[9] mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet; et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suīsque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant,[10] impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī; ex quibus

---

[1] See **421.**

[2] Supply **id** as antecedent. This clause is the subject of **posse.**

[3] *as for (Titurius) himself* (**421**).

[4] *he pledged his word.* What literally?

[5] *if it should seem best.*

[6] *i.e.* Sabinus; subject of **spērāre.**

[7] Impersonal.

[8] *at the time.*

[9] The antecedent is put in the subordinate clause, as often.

[10] *they all shout "Victory!".*

L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; noctū ad ūnum[1] omnēs, dēspērātā salūte, sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

Review Questions (30–37). — 1. What did Cotta want to do? 2. What was the plan of Sabinus? 3. Whose plan was adopted? 4. How did Sabinus act when the Gauls attacked? 5. What did Cotta do? 6. Which of the two was wounded? 7. What method of fighting did the Gauls use? 8. What action did Sabinus take? 9. What happened to him? 10. What became of Cotta? 11. Where did the Romans who escaped go?

Ambiorix Loses No Time in Getting More Tribes to Join the Revolt

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Atuatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditātumque sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuatucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit, hortāturque nē suī[2] in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs quās accēperint iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem[3] exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse[4] negōtī subitō oppressam[5] legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne[6] hiemet interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

---

[1] *to a man.* Suetonius says that when Caesar heard of this disaster, the greatest he had suffered, he let his hair and beard grow (a sign of mourning among the Romans) until he got his revenge, which was the following year. Ambiorix himself was never captured.

[2] Pronoun, depending on **occāsiōnem.** Though plural, its number is ignored and **līberandī** modifies it.

[3] Over 5000. [4] The subject is the infinitive clause.

[5] Translate as a clause. [6] Brother of the famous orator.

The Gauls in Large Numbers Surprise Cicero's Camp

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē improvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Hīc quoque accidit, quod[1] fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque[2] causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Atuatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī clientēsque legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustinētur,[3] quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī[4] victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

Cicero's Gallant Defense of His Camp

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem[5] cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, magnīs prōpositīs praemiīs sī pertulissent;[6] obsessīs omnibus viīs, missī[7] intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē, multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne quā prīdiē resistitur: hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad[8] labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur.

---

[1] *as.*

[2] *material for the defenses.*

[3] *they held out that day.*

[4] Conditional.

[5] He was at Samarobriva (Amiens).

[6] Supply **nūntiī** as subject and **litterās** as object. For the mood see **480.**

[7] *those sent.*

[8] *from,* in English.

Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnātiōnem opus[1] sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeustae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus[2] sibi parcere cōgerētur.

A Parley — Cicero Can Not Be Induced to Abandon His Post

41. Tum ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum[3] causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab eīs praesidī spērent quī suīs rēbus[4] diffīdant;

Fig. 139. Roman Watch Tower
At Saalburg, Germany.

[1] *necessary;* used as predicate noun.
[2] Ablative of means with **cōgerētur**. The soldiers begged him to stop.
[3] *opportunities for.* [4] See **421**.

sēsē tamen hōc[1] esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō[2] ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent, atque hanc manēre cōnsuētūdinem[3] nōlint; licēre illīs per sē[4] incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī ūllam accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur[5] lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.[6]

The Nervii Besiege His Camp in Roman Fashion

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv[7] hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā[8] quae sunt ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus trium mīlium passuum in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt reliquīsque diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

The Gauls Use Burning Arrows

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coortō ventō, ferventēs ex argillā glandēs[9] fundīs et iacula fervefacta in casās,

---

[1] *such,* with **animō,** looking forward to the **ut** clauses.
[2] Ablative of description. [3] Refers to winter quarters.
[4] *so far as they* (the Nervii) *were concerned.*
[5] *they might use him* (*as*). [6] Supply **eōs** as subject.
[7] Wide, at the top.
[8] Ablative absolute with **nūllā.**
[9] How this was done is not exactly known, unless they used improved slingshot devices like the "mine throwers," used during the World War to fling explosives into the enemy's trenches.

quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem castrōrum locum distulērunt.[1] Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīcutī[2] partā[3] iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās incendī intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet[4] nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret[4] quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent.[4] Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut[5] sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī[6] introīre vellent vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī[7] turrisque incēnsa est.

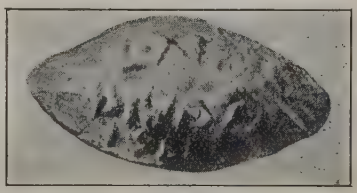


FIG. 140. GLĀNS

See also Fig. 113. The words indicate that it was used to avenge the death of Caesar.

---

[1] Supply **ignem** as object.

[2] *just as if.*

[3] From **pariō**. Distinguish the forms and meanings of **parō, pāreō, parcō,** and **pariō.**

[4] Introduced by **ut.**

[5] *as.*

[6] *whether;* indirect question depending on **vocāre.**

[7] Supply **sunt.**

Two Rival Heroes

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs[1] dē locō contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur,

"Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum probandae virtūtis tuae exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit."

Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa in eam irrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus opīniōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō, Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō[2] percussō exanimātōque hunc scūtīs dēfendunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī[3] et iaculum in balteō dēfīgitur. Āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī[4] dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit. Vorēnus gladiō rem gerit atque, ūnō interfectō, reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude intrā mūnītiōnēs sē recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in certāmine utrumque versāvit[5] ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset uter[6] utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

[1] *every year*. They were rivals for promotion (**locō**).

[2] The wounded Gaul; ablative absolute. Contrary to rule, **hunc** refers to the same person.

[3] See **419**. In English a genitive is used.

[4] Supply **eī**. See **419**.

[5] *dealt with*.

[6] *which seemed superior*.

A Letter to Caesar Gets through the Lines at Last

45. Quantō[1] erat in diēs[2] gravior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod, magnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars comprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus in castrīs Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō[3] nātus honestō,[4] quī ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hic servō spē lībertātis magnīsque persuādet praemiīs ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās[5] effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus[6] ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

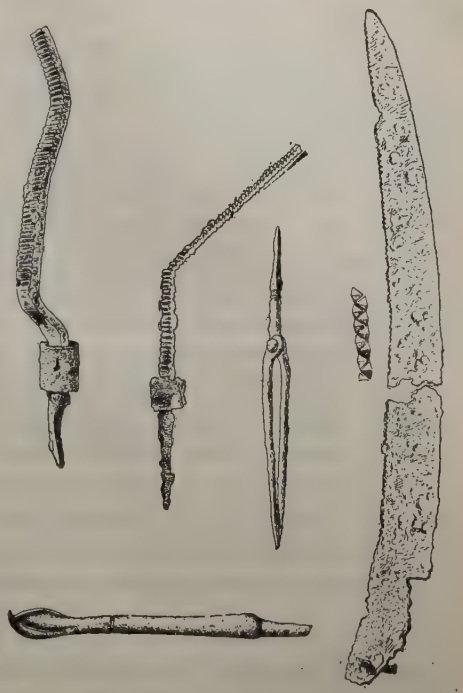


Fig. 141. Gallic Tools
Files, compass, saw.

---

[1] With **tantō**: *the more serious . . . the more frequently.*
[2] *day by day.* [3] See **435.** [4] *honorable.*
[5] Probably not tied to the javelin but concealed within it, the shaft being wrapped at the place as if once broken and then mended.
[6] *moving about.*

Summary of Chapters 46–47

Caesar immediately advances by forced marches with two legions to relieve Cicero. The Treveri, elated by their recent victory over Sabinus, now menace Labienus, who is thus prevented from joining Caesar.

How Caesar Got a Letter through to Cicero

48. Caesar vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs[1] cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistulā, nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore;[2] hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur; ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam[3] in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum[4] procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

Summary of Chapters 49–51

The Gauls, numbering about 60,000, abandon the siege and now hasten to attack Caesar. Cicero dispatches a messenger to warn him of their approach. By pretending fear, Caesar induces the enemy to attack him on his own ground and defeats them with great loss.

Caesar Congratulates Cicero and His Men

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque inter-

---

[1] Probably Latin written with Greek characters.

[2] For **adfutūrum esse.** [3] Supply **epistulam.**

[4] Not of camp fires but of flaming villages fired by the Romans as they advanced.

cēdēbant, omnibus suīs incolumibus, eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne, cognōscit nōn decimum quemque[1] esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere. Ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē, cōntiōne habitā, rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfirmat.

Review Questions (38–52). — 1. What did Ambiorix do after defeating Sabinus and Cotta? 2. Why did Caesar not come to Cicero's aid at once? 3. What did the enemy propose to Cicero? 4. What did they say was the one thing to which they objected? 5. What was Cicero's reply? 6. What lesson had the enemy learned from the Romans? 7. How did Caesar learn of Cicero's plight? 8. How did Cicero learn that Caesar was coming to the rescue? 9. What proportion of Cicero's men were wounded?

Summary of Chapters 53–58

Despite this victory, the spirit of revolt spreads fast among the Gauls, and Caesar decides to spend the winter with his army. Indutiomarus, leader of the Treveri, prepares to attack the camp of Labienus, but the latter, feigning fear, lures the enemy to the very walls of his camp; then, by a surprise attack, he routs the Gauls and slays Indutiomarus. After that Caesar states that he "found Gaul a little more peaceful."

[1] *not one soldier in ten.*

CAESAR: THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK VI

346. Customs of the Gauls and Germans

Summary of Chapters 1–10

Caesar has every reason to expect a more serious revolt in Gaul. He accordingly increases his force by three legions, one of which is supplied by Pompey. The Nervii, Atuatuci, Menapii, and all the Germans on the Gallic side of the Rhine are in arms against the Romans, and the Senones are conspiring with the Carnutes and other states. Accordingly, before the winter is over, Caesar leads a strong force against the Nervii and lays their country waste, compelling them to surrender. He next marches swiftly against the Senones before they have time to mobilize their forces, and they, as well as the Carnutes, at once surrender. Caesar, now free to attack Ambiorix, proceeds to cut him off from allied aid. He first crushes the Menapii. Meanwhile, with reinforcements received from Caesar, Labienus defeats the Treveri in decisive fashion. Learning that the Germans have aided the Treveri and wishing to prevent Ambiorix from taking refuge among them, Caesar crosses the Rhine once more. There the Ubii inform him that the Suebi with their allies have retreated to the edge of a great forest in the most remote part of the country, where they await his approach.

The Customs of the Gauls

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum[1] perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sē prōpōnere.

Summary of Chapters 11–12

The Gauls are prone to factional strife, the whole state being divided into two parties. The Haeduans are the leaders of the one Gallic faction, the Sequanians of the other. The latter, with the aid of Ariovistus and the Germans, have gained the ascendancy. Caesar has brought about a change in affairs by openly favoring the Haeduans.

[1] *i.e.* in the story.

Classes of Gallic Society — The Druids

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō[1] atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs[2] paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō[3] aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs[4] eadem omnia sunt iūra quae[5] dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad hōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī[6] sunt apud eōs[7] honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est facinus admissum, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem[8] dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,[9] sacrificiīs prohibent. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus[10] ita est prohibitum, hī numerō impiōrum habentur, hīs[11] omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs[12] ūllus commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter

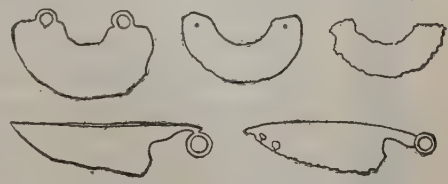


Fig. 142. Gallic Razors

[1] *of some account* (with **aliquō**).
[2] For **plēbs**.
[3] See note on **174**, line 2.
[4] *over them* (the enslaved plebeians).
[5] *as*.
[6] The druids.
[7] All the Gauls.
[8] *likewise*.
[9] *did not abide by*.
[10] Dative. The antecedent is **hī**.
[11] *from these* (**423**).
[12] Old form of **honor**.

Fig. 143. Gallic Knife

eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut, sī quī ex reliquīs praestat dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt parēs plūrēs, suffrāgiō druidum dēligitur; nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō; hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna[1] in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur; et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

The Druids Are Exempted from Civil and Military Duties — How Their Teachings Are Perpetuated

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse[2] cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere[3] dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea[4] litterīs mandāre, cum[5] in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūbliciīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs ūtantur litterīs. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre[6] — quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum

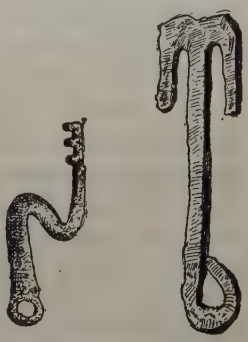


Fig. 144. Gallic Keys

[1] *system* of druidism.
[2] *to be exempt from.*
[3] Note the force of the prefix.
[4] *these principles.*
[5] *although.*
[6] *pay less attention to the memory.*

dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre,[1] nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī[2] putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

Summary of Chapter 15

The knights form the military class. Every knight's rank is determined by the number of serfs whom he keeps about him.

The Gauls Practice Human Sacrifice

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbīs, quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō

Fig. 145. Gallic Hammers

victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque[3] ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōs immortālēs plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra[4] habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus incēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs[5] immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

[1] *teach.* [2] Supply **hominēs** as subject. [3] (*as*) *ministers.*
[4] *likenesses* (of the human form). [5] For **deīs.**

Their Gods—To Mars Go the Spoils of War

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium[1] colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,[2] hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur;

Fig. 146. Gallic Bracelets

post hunc[3] Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam[4] reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium deōrum tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proelium committere cōn-

[1] Caesar does not attempt to give the names which the Gauls apply to their own deities, but assigns to them the names of Roman gods on the basis of fancied resemblances. This was the Roman way of dealing with the Greek gods; with them Zeus was merely the Greek name for Jupiter, Hera for Juno, etc.

[2] *they say.* [3] Supply **colunt.** [4] *as.*

stituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint[1] plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet.

Pluto, Their Ancestor— Relation of Father and Son

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium[2] fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem[3] diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs[4] differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur; fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

Fig. 147. Gallic Horse's Bit

Marriage and Funeral Customs

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās[5] ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant.[6] Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque[7] servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit,[8]

---

[1] The subjunctive is perhaps best explained as due to implied indirect discourse.

[2] Because Dis (Pluto) was god of Hades, *i.e.* of Darkness. A trace of a similar custom of reckoning time by nights has survived from Anglo-Saxon days in the expression "fortnight" ("fourteen nights").

[3] For holidays beginning in the evening we may compare Christmas Eve. All Jewish holidays begin and end at sunset. The phases of the moon probably had a great deal to do with this, for it is comparatively easy to mark time by full moons, each marking the lapse of a *month* (akin to "moon" and Latin **mēnsis**).

[4] *from the rest (of mankind).* [5] *property*, as the plural shows.

[6] *they add to.* [7] *profits, income.* [8] *survives* (with **vītā**).

ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in[1] uxōrēs sīcutī īn līberōs vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō[2] nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus[3] in servīlem modum[4] quaestiōnem habent, et sī[5] compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica; omniaque quae vīvīs cāra fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īnferunt, etiam animālia; ac paulō suprā[6] hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs amātōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūneribus cōnfectīs, ūnā cremābantur.

Fig. 148. Gallic Comb

Summary of Chapter 20

All news from the outside world must be censored by the magistrates. The discussion of political questions is forbidden except in open assembly.

The Customs of the Germans

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt[7] quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs[8] labōrī ac dūritiae student.

---

[1] *over.* *Cf.* the Roman **patria potestās, 1.**
[2] Ablative of origin (**435**).
[3] What does the plural prove?
[4] *as is done in the case of slaves, i.e.* by torture.
[5] *if it* (their guilt), etc.
[6] *before our time.*
[7] *they consider.* The Germans worshipped the forces of nature.
[8] *from childhood.*

Agriculture and Private Ownership of Land Unknown[1]

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs[2] gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt,[3] quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī[4] attribuunt, atque annō post aliō[5] trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās afferunt causās: nē assiduā cōnsuētūdine[6] captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā[7] commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs[8] possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte[9] plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

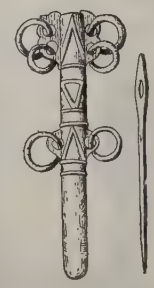


Fig. 149. Gallic Needle Case and Needle

Their Frontier Policy—How Their Leaders Raise Armies—Guests Protected

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē, vāstātīs fīnibus, sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc[10] proprium[11] virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere. Simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum[12] dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs

[1] Compare also IV, 1. [2] *for a single year.*
[3] *have banded together*, for the purpose of receiving land grants.
[4] With **quantum.** [5] Adverb.
[6] They did not want to have their people get the habit of being farmers.
[7] *for agriculture.* [8] Object of **expellant.** [9] *contentment.*
[10] explained by **cēdere** and **audēre.**
[11] *a sign of.* [12] *i.e.* against themselves

quī eī bellō praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt[1] contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnēs cuiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea[2] iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis[3] ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur[4]— cōnsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine collaudantur; quī ex hīs[5] secūtī nōn sunt in prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

FIG. 150. GALLIC ANDIRONS

SUMMARY OF CHAPTER 24

The Gauls, before the coming of the Romans, had once been powerful enough to invade and seize the most fertile districts of Germany as far inland as the Hercynian Forest; but now, owing to their contact with civilization, they have deteriorated to such an extent that they have grown accustomed to defeat at the hands of the Germans.

The Hercynian Forest and Its Animals

25. Hercyniae silvae lātitūdō VIIII diērum iter expedītō[6] patet; nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās[7] itinerum

[1] *pronounce judgment.* [2] Supply **latrōcinia.** [3] *anyone* **(390, Note).**
[4] *and that those who wish to follow should volunteer.*
[5] *i.e.* the volunteers.
[6] *for one unincumbered* (with baggage).
[7] *i.e.* by paces and miles. The Roman mile was 1000 "double steps" (**passūs**), or 426 feet less than our mile.

nōvērunt. Multa in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

Description of a Reindeer

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum[1] cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs[2] quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus. Ab eius summō sīcut[3] palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

The Moose, or European Elk — How the Natives Trap Them

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās[4] pellium; sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine articulīs[5] habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō afflictae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstīgiīs cum[6] est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs[7] eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa[8] speciēs eārum[9] stantium relinquātur. Hūc[10] cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfirmās arborēs pondere afflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

---

[1] Reindeer have two horns, which they shed yearly. Caesar or his informant must have seen one when it had just shed one horn.

[2] *than those horns* (**437**).

[3] *as it were.*

[4] *spotted appearance.*

[5] Such "nature faking" is known even to-day.

[6] *whenever.* [7] Modifies **arborēs.** [8] *perfect.*

[9] *i. e.* the trees. [10] *against these.*

The Wild Ox

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī[1] appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs; speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt parcunt. Hōs foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent; et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae[2] sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs nē parvulī[3] quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum[4] cornibus differt. Haec[5] conquīsīta ab labrīs[6] argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

Review Questions (13–28). — 1. Who were the druids? 2. What were some of their duties? 3. What other classes of Gallic society were there? 4. How was a vacancy among the druids filled? 5. What did they teach? 6. How was robbery punished among the Gauls? 7. Who was the most important Gallic god? 8. What rights did the Gallic women have? 9. What peculiar funeral customs did the Gauls have? 10. How did the Gauls and Germans differ? 11. Why did the Germans object to private ownership of lands? 12. How did they look upon robbery? 13. How did they treat strangers? 14. How were the German hunters supposed to have caught elk?

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 29–44

Caesar, finding it impossible to pursue the Suebi in their forest wilds, decides to return to Gaul. As a constant threat to the Germans, he leaves a large part of the bridge standing, protected by a garrison. His archenemy, Ambiorix, chief of the Eburones, is still at large, and

[1] Some believe that Caesar is here describing the almost extinct aurochs, the European cousin of the American buffalo; others hold that he means the broad-horned "wild ox," the ancestor of our modern domesticated cattle. These wild cattle became extinct in Europe in 1627.

[2] *to serve as proof* (**467, 418**). [3] *i.e.* **ūrī.**

[4] Genitive plural of **bōs.** [5] Supply **cornua.** [6] *at the edges.*

Caesar devotes all his energy toward his capture. He accordingly divides his army into four divisions so that Ambiorix can not escape. He next invites the neighboring tribes to lay waste the country of the Eburones. The Sugambri, a German tribe from across the Rhine, also accept the invitation to pillage. Finding, however, that Cicero with a small force has been left by Caesar at Atuatuca to guard the baggage of the entire army, the Sugambri attack Cicero unexpectedly, and a panic follows. The Germans, evidently learning of Caesar's approach, finally ride off. When Caesar arrives, the soldiers recover from their panic. The man hunt for Ambiorix is then resumed, but that wily chieftain, accompanied by four trusty followers, always eludes capture. At last Caesar gives up the pursuit and, after distributing his legions in winter quarters, returns to Italy.

CAESAR: THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK VII

347. Vercingetorix and the Struggle for Gallic Freedom (52 B.C.)

Summary of Chapters 1–16

The Gauls, learning of political unrest at Rome, feel that the hour for freedom has come. At a secret council they plan a general uprising. The Carnutes strike the first blow by massacring the Romans in Cenabum (Orléans). The Arverni, under their leader Vercingetorix, join the revolt. Many states, including the Bituriges, do likewise. Caesar now leaves Italy and hastens to Gaul. Leaving troops in the Province to protect it from a threatened invasion, he crosses the Cévennes Mountains through deep snow and arrives suddenly among the Arverni. Leaving a force here to ravage the country, he pushes on to join his legions at the front. In rapid succession he captures several towns and then advances against Avaricum (Bourges). This place the Gauls had considered impregnable and had therefore spared it, while laying waste the rest of the country in their effort to check Caesar's advance by cutting off his supplies. Though harassed in the rear by Vercingetorix, who assails his foraging parties, Caesar begins the siege of Avaricum.

The Spirit of the Romans and the Siege of Avaricum

17. Summā difficultāte reī frūmentāriae affectō exercitū, ūsque eō ut[1] complūrēs diēs frūmentō[2] mīlitēs caruerint, et, pecore ex longinquiōribus vīcīs adāctō, extrēmam famem sustinuerint, nūlla tamen vōx est ab eīs audīta populī Rōmānī maiestāte[3] et superiōribus victōriīs[3] indigna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et, sī[4] acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppugnātiōnem dīceret, ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: Sīc sē complūrēs

Fig. 151. Gallic Mill

[1] *so much so, that.* [2] See **433.** [3] Ablative with **indigna (450).**
[4] The clause depends upon **dīmissūrum.**

annōs, illō imperante, meruisse[1] ut nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, numquam, īnfectā rē, discēderent; hoc sē ignōminiae locō lātūrōs,[2] sī inceptam oppugnātiōnem relīquissent; praestāre omnēs perferre acerbitātēs quam nōn cīvēs Rōmānōs quī perfidiā Gallōrum interīssent ulcīscī.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 18–56

Vercingetorix tempts Caesar to attack him, but Caesar, finding him too well entrenched, resumes the siege of Avaricum. The Gauls then accuse Vercingetorix of treason because he did not attack the Romans when he was in a position to do so. He successfully defends himself against this charge. The Gauls with renewed determination resolve to hold Avaricum at any cost. Vercingetorix sends a strong reinforcement. The besieged manage to set fire to the Roman siege works and display marked heroism. At length, however, Avaricum falls and Caesar slays most of the inhabitants. Vercingetorix consoles his troops for the loss of the town by stating that he had from the beginning opposed the defense of the place as untenable. He raises fresh troops. Caesar now marches against Gergovia, after first establishing a base at Noviodunum (Nevers). He outmaneuvers Vercingetorix and encamps before Gergovia. At this juncture the Haeduans, who were on their way to join Caesar, mutiny, but Caesar, making a forced march, meets them and wins them back to his cause. He returns to his camp before Gergovia just in time to save it from capture by Vercingetorix. Later the Romans make a determined assault but are defeated with heavy loss. Caesar is compelled to acknowledge

FIG. 152. "THE OLD OAKEN BUCKET"

A Gallo-Roman bucket found at Alesia, which became a Roman town after Caesar's conquest.

[1] Depends (with **sē** as subject) on the idea of saying in **petēbant**.

[2] *that they would regard as* (**locō**).

defeat and, abandoning the siege of Gergovia, hastens by forced marches to the River Loire.

Labienus Sets Out for Paris

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus cum quattuor legiōnibus Luteciam[1] proficīscitur. Id est oppidum Parīsiōrum positum in īnsulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cuius adventū ab hostibus cognitō, magnae ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem quae īnflueret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 58–70

Labienus retires to Metiosedum (Melun), which he captures. He then begins to march toward Lutecia (Paris), which he finds in flames. It is at this time that he learns of Caesar's defeat at Gergovia, and alarming reports of a general Gallic uprising are received. Labienus decides to join Caesar at once and reaches him on the third day. The Haeduans now openly revolt. Vercingetorix is reëlected commander in chief of the united Gallic forces. He immediately fortifies Alesia (Alise-Sainte-Reine) in order that he may have a stronghold to which to retreat if defeated in the field. Caesar sends for German cavalry. Vercingetorix, defeated in a cavalry engagement, takes refuge in Alesia. Caesar at once begins to surround the place with a line of siege works extending for eleven miles. The Gauls attempt to check him but are repulsed with great slaughter.

348. THE SIEGE OF ALESIA

Vercingetorix Sends for Reinforcements — His Remedy for Food Hoarding

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur,[2] cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū

[1] The capital of the **Parīsiī** (the original "Parisians"), on the site of modern Paris. The spelling **Lutecia** in place of the more usual **Lutetia** is that of the majority of the best manuscripts. For French cities which perpetuate the names of ancient Gallic tribes, see Map of Gaul.

[2] See **478.**

dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant.[1] Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae[2] salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē, optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum,[3] hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā,[4] frūmentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre, sed paulō etiam longius sustinērī posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā[5] erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet, capitis poenam eīs quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus[6] auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Summary of Chapters 72–75

Caesar constructs an inner and an outer line of siege works, the former to hem Vercingetorix in Alesia, the latter to defend his own army from attack from without, for Caesar had already learned that the Gauls were raising a great army for the relief of Alesia.

The Army of Relief under Commius Approaches Alesia to Raise the Siege

76. Operā Commī fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem[7] eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat

[1] Plural because Caesar is now thinking of **discēdentibus** rather than **quisque.**

[2] *his.* [3] *who had done his best for.*

[4] *by careful reckoning.*

[5] *where.*

[6] Note that **ratiō** is used with three different meanings in this chapter

[7] The Atrebates.

atque ipsī[1] Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit lībertātis vindicandae[2] et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērentur,[3] omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctīs equitum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, et praefectī cōnstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī[4] ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur.[5] Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī[6] proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

FIG. 153. GALLO-ROMAN BOWL
Found at Alesia.

The Gallic Force in Alesia Starving — The Speech of Critognatus

77. At eī quī Alesiae[7] obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, ignōrantēs quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō, dē exitū

[1] Commius, as ruler. [2] *declaring.*
[3] Supply Gallī.
[4] These representatives of the different states formed a "war council," which meant only further division of authority, when what was needed was one commander in chief with supreme power. A similar situation hampered the Allies in the early years of the World War.
[5] *was to be carried on.*
[6] *on two fronts.* [7] See **452.**

suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Apud quōs variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs essent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat,[1] nōn praetereunda[2] vidētur ōrātiō Critognātī propter eius singulārem ac nefāriam crūdēlitātem.

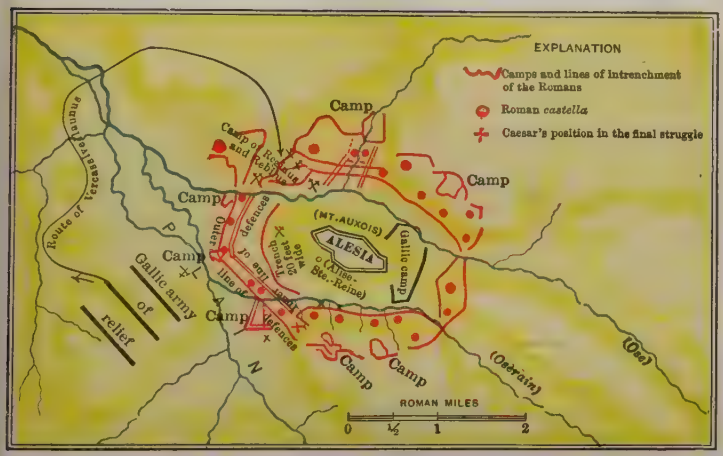


FIG. 154. THE SIEGE OF ALESIA

Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō[3] et magnae habitus auctōritātis,

"Nihil,"[4] inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque adhibendōs ad concilium cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit[5] quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae

[1] *favored.*

[2] *should not, it seems (to me), be passed over.*

[3] Ablative of origin (**435**).

[4] Note that the speaker, in the very sentence in which he states that he will "say nothing" about his opponents' views, furiously attacks them and leaves little more to be said. Throughout this speech we see Caesar's oratorical skill.

[5] *let my speech deal with those.*

residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī[1] sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem[2] (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid, hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī[3] fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte[4] hōs vestrō auxiliō spoliāre quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt; nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā, aut animī imbēcillitāte, omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.

"An, quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne[5] causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum[6] nūntiīs cōnfirmārī nōn potestis, omnī aditū praesaeptō, hīs[7] ūtiminī[8] testibus appropinquāre[9] eōrum adventum; cuius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

"Quid[10] ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam sus-

---

[1] (*men*) *who.*

[2] *I might approve, if I saw.*

[3] Depends on **Quid.**

[4] *do not* (lit., *be unwilling to*), governs the two infinitives (**485**)

[5] *for amusement* (with **causā**). Note the postponement of **-ne.**

[6] The other Gauls.

[7] The Romans.

[8] Imperative.

[9] Indirect statement depending upon the idea of saying implied in **testibus.**

[10] *What is my plan?*

tinuērunt, neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem.[1] Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Vāstātā Galliā, Cimbrī, magnāque illātā calamitāte, fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petīvērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem

FIG. 155. THE GAULS AT PRAYER
(From "Julius Caesar.")

nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs[2] fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite

[1] *I should consider.*
[2] Supply **esse.** The antecedent is **hōrum.**

fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus[1] subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte!"

The Citizens of Alesia, Driven Outside the Walls, Plead Vainly for Food

78. Sententiīs dictīs, cōnstituunt ut eī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia

FIG. 156. THE ROMANS BESIEGING ALESIA

prius[2] experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum[3] cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī,[4] quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnī-

[1] Freely, *authority*. The lictors accompanying the consul carried bundles of rods (**fascēs**) inclosing an ax (**secūris**), the former representing the consul's power to flog a criminal and the latter, his right to put him to death.

[2] Translate with **quam**: *before*. [3] *but that plan was to be used.*

[4] These innocent townspeople perished of starvation between the lines.

tiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar, dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs, recipī[1] prohibēbat.

The Army of Relief Arrives — The Besieged Rejoice

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et, colle exteriōre occupātō, nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē, equitātū ex castrīs ēductō, omnem eam plānitiem, quae in longitūdinem mīlia passuum III patēbat, complent; pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus[2] in[3] campum. Concurrunt, hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque, prōductīs cōpiīs, ante oppidum cōnsīdunt, sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

The Gallic Cavalry Are Defeated after Fierce Fighting

80. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnis dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pugnae ēventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs[4] dē improvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse

[1] Supply **eōs.**

[2] Noun. The statue of Vercingetorix (Fig. 160) was erected by Napoleon III near the spot from which the relief army was seen.

[3] *over.*

[4] *i.e.* of the Roman cavalry.

Gallī[1] cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur et eī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre suōrum animōs cōnfirmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē ac turpiter factum[2] cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī[3] ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt. Quibus in fugam coniectīs, sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs[4] ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī[5] colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī quī Alesiā[6] prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

Summary of Chapter 81

The Gallic army of relief, under cover of the night, makes a second attack upon the outer works, while Vercingetorix leads an attack upon the inner lines.

A Night Attack of the Gauls Fails

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteā quam propius successērunt, aut sē ipsī stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs[7] dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus[8] interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs,

---

[1] The Gallic infantry, both within the town and on the surrounding heights held by the relieving army.

[2] *no deed, brave or cowardly.*

[3] In Caesar's army. His cavalry now was composed very largely of Germans, for he had found them superior to the Gauls in fighting qualities.

[4] Accusative.

[5] Pronoun, with **colligendī**: *of recovering.*

[6] See **434, Note.** [7] See Fig. 157.

[8] *wall javelins*, probably hurled by **tormenta** (Figs. 108, 110).

nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs,[1] dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs

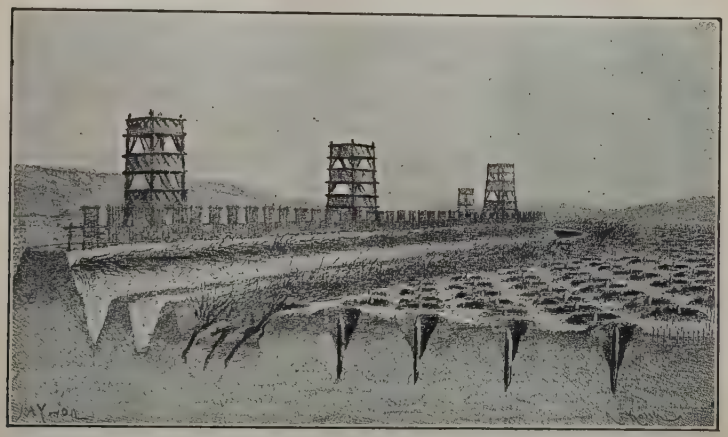


FIG. 157. CAESAR'S SIEGE WORKS AT ALESIA
Note the lilia (scrobēs).

morātī, prius[2] suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita, rē īnfectā, in oppidum revertērunt.

Though Twice Repulsed, the Army of Relief Plans a Surprise Attack

83. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant[3] cōnsulunt. Locōrum[4] perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere

[1] The army within Alesia.
[2] With **quam**: *before.*
[3] *they should do.* [4] See **416.**

circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus, ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pāctō agī placeat[1] occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā[2] vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sē ostendere coepērunt.

FIG. 158. CAESAR
A coin found at Alesia.

The Romans Attacked on Every Side

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pugnantibus[3] exstitit, quod suum perīculum[4] in aliēnā vident virtūte cōn-

[1] *what they want done and in what way.*

[2] Between 6–9 P.M. They spent nearly the whole night in making this roundabout march in order to reach their objective.

[3] *while fighting;* dative of reference (**419**).

[4] We should rather say their *lives.*

stāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius[1] hominum mentēs perturbant.

Summary of Chapters 85–86

The Gauls make a supreme effort to break through the Roman lines. Caesar, perceiving that his men are weakening, sends Labienus with six cohorts to reinforce them. He then addresses his troops, reminding them that the reward of all their struggles depends upon that day and hour.

Caesar Leads His Troops in Person

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum[2] adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse,

Fig. 159. Street in Alise-Sainte-Reine
Near the ancient Alesia.

[1] *i.e.* than those which they plainly see.

[2] Decimus, not Marcus, both of whom were among the conspirators who later murdered Caesar.

FIG. 161.—CAESAR AND VERCINGETORIX
(From "Julius Caesar.")

recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula[1] praedae nōmine distribuit.

Summary of Chapter 90

Caesar distributes his forces for the winter among the various Gallic tribes.

Huius annī rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Rōmae, diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.[2]

Review Questions (71–89). — 1. Where did Vercingetorix make his last stand? 2. What preparations for a siege did he make? 3. What was the plan of Critognatus? 4. How was it received? 5. What happened to the Mandubii? 6. Why did the night attack of the Gauls fail? 7. What was the final plan of the Gauls? 8. Why did it fail? 9. What happened to Vercingetorix?

---

[1] *one to each* (*soldier*).

[2] Historians agree that the siege and fall of Alesia constitutes a pivotal point in the history of northern Europe, for it settled the question of Roman supremacy in Gaul after seven years of fighting. The striking contrast between Roman efficiency and Gallic inefficiency is here seen to the best advantage. With all their courage and physical strength, the Gauls were defeated by an army scarcely one seventh the size of their own.

The military operations of the two years (51–50 B.C.) following the capture of Alesia were not included by Caesar in his *Commentaries*, but we are indebted to one of his generals, Aulus Hirtius, for a full account, which he added, with due apologies, as an eighth book. The military strength of the Gauls had been broken forever, and there remained only the task of subduing certain states that had not yet been fully reduced to submission. Caesar's term as proconsular governor expired in 49 B.C. Thus the conquest of Gaul, with its momentous results, occupied nine years in all.

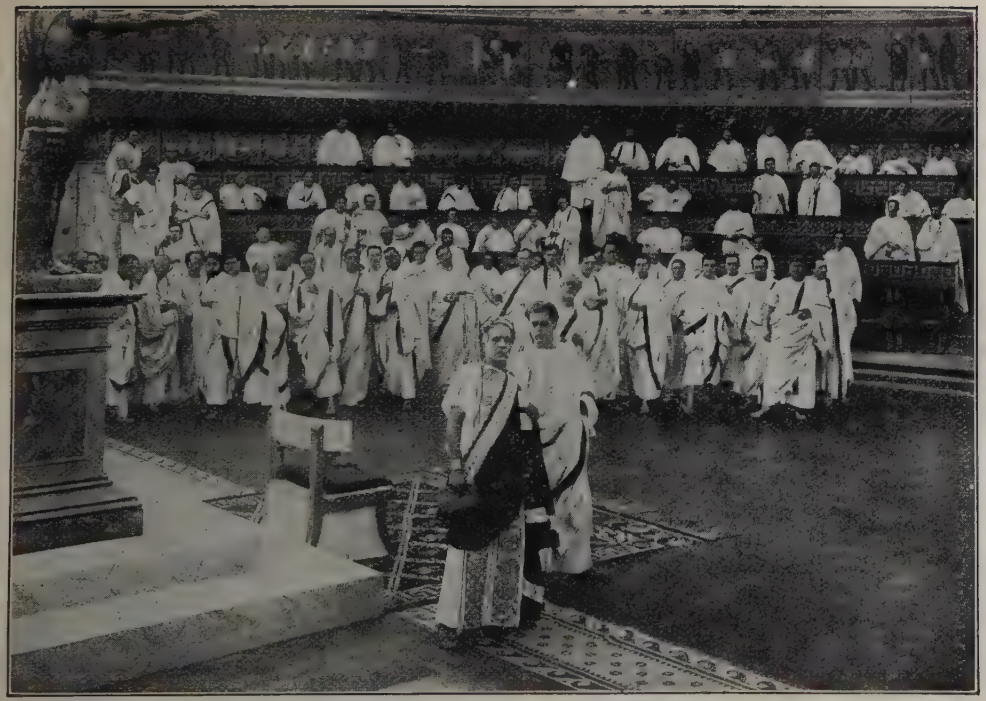


FIG. 162. CAESAR AND BRUTUS

By touching Caesar's arm, Brutus gives the signal for the conspirators to murder Caesar.
(From "Julius Caesar.")

WRITTEN EXERCISES[1]

349. I. Book I, Chapters 1–3

Ablative of respect (**448**). Future passive participle with **ad** (**490**, *b*).

1. In what respects ("things") did the Gauls differ from one another? 2. The rest-of-the-Gauls were surpassed by the Helvetians in courage. 3. The latter were always ready to carry-on war with those who inhabited that part of Gaul. 4. An embassy was likewise sent to other states for-the-purpose-of arranging-for their departure. 5. Their territories are narrow but extend for many miles toward the west.

350. II. Book I, Chapters 4–6

Descriptive **cum** clauses (**475**). Indirect statement (**494**). Temporal clauses with **ubi** and **postquam** (**463**). Volitive substantive clauses (**469**).

1. When this fact had been reported to the Helvetians, they suspected that he would bring-together all his clients. 2. When[2] they were ready to burn their villages and buildings, they persuaded their neighbors to set out with[3] them. 3. The latter thought that they could not cross the river by means of fords. 4. After they saw that they could cross by a bridge, they were impelled to go with the Helvetians. 5. They had persuaded all to burn their homes in order that they might be altogether ready to undergo the dangers of the journey.

[1] These exercises are based on the selections from Books I and II of the *Gallic War* given in this book.

[2] Use **ubi**. [3] See **438**, *a*.

351. III. Book I, Chapters 7–8

Subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse (**480**). Subjunctive in a **cum** clause of cause (**476**).

1. Meanwhile Caesar thought that the Helvetians would not cross at night the river which flowed into the Rhone. 2. He said that, if they tried to cross, he would prevent them by means of defenses. 3. Since there was no other way, he knew that they would not desist from this attempt. 4. Since he had placed redoubts here-and-there,[1] he thought that they would join (together) the boats which they had. 5. When they were not able to persuade Caesar, they said that they would send envoys to the Haeduans.

352. IV. Book I, Chapters 9–10

Subjunctive in a **cum** clause of concession (**477**). Review of **cum** clauses (**475, 476**).

1. Although they sent envoys to him, they did not obtain their request. 2. What will you do since you can not influence him by kindness? 3. Since the Gauls were-eager-for a revolution, Caesar placed a general in charge of the legions which were passing-the-winter there. 4. Although the territory of Hither Gaul was fertile, Caesar did not want it occupied by the Helvetians. 5. He said that, when he had enrolled two new legions, he would lead the rest out of winter-quarters.

353. V. Book I, Chapters 11–12

Dative of the possessor (**424**). Subjunctive in a clause of anticipation (**478**).

1. The Haeduans have many villages across that river. 2. They were unwilling to wait until Caesar's forces should

[1] Expressed by the prefix **dis-**.

arrive. 3. The enemy had many boats and men. 4. Caesar hastened in order to arrive before they could cross. 5. Although many had been cut-to-pieces, Caesar sent the rest under the yoke.

354. VI. Book I, Chapters 21–22

Subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose (**467**). Review of purpose constructions (**466, 490** (*b*), **491,** *a*).

1. The Romans were accustomed to send ahead scouts who were to learn where the enemy were. 2. He summoned the generals for the sake of showing his plan. 3. He ordered (**imperō**) them to go in a roundabout-way with the cavalry and to wait until he should arrive. 4. This he did for the purpose of making an attack upon the enemy on all sides at one time. 5. Caesar always had a plan of battle and would send his cavalry to pursue the enemy.

355. VII. Book I, Chapters 23–24

Causal clauses with **quod** and **quoniam** (**482**).

1. Caesar turned aside his march because (as he said) no grain was left for his army. 2. He was unwilling, as I know, to do this because he was pursuing the enemy. 3. The Helvetians, changing their route, began to pursue him because (as they thought) he could be cut off from grain. 4. Meanwhile, since Caesar had noticed this, he stationed his cavalry to check[1] them. 5. The enemy advanced crowded together because they did not have their baggage.

356 VIII. Book I, Chapters 25–26

Dative of reference (**419**). Dative of purpose (**418**).

1. Since shields were a great hindrance to them, they let them drop. 2. Many soldiers had been left behind as a

[1] Express in three ways.

protection for the baggage. 3. The enemy had stationed their wagons (to serve) as a rampart and protection for themselves while-fighting. 4. By hurling[1] their javelins they kept-wounding our men. Caesar, noticing this, sent another legion as an aid to his men. 5. Caesar selected the side of a hill for a battleground (lit., "place of battle"). Then he encouraged his men.

357. IX. Book I, Chapters 27–30

Constructions following **iubeō** and **imperō** (**469,** *a*). Dative with certain verbs (**421**).

1. After surrender had been made,[2] Caesar ordered[3] the enemy to await his arrival. 2. They obeyed him when he ordered[3] them to come-out[4] of their camp and throw down their arms. 3. About six thousand of them wished to resist the Romans. 4. The rest Caesar did not injure, but ordered[3] them to return to their own territory. 5. With hope restored, they obeyed him. Later all the Gauls begged that they be permitted (**licet**) to summon a council.

358. X. Book I, Chapters 31–34

Perfect and future infinitives in indirect discourse (**495**).

1. Their leaders said that certain tribes of the Gauls had sent-for the fierce Germans. 2. They stated that the king of the Germans had seized the best part of all Gaul. 3. Furthermore, they showed that they themselves would endure tortures and the basest slavery if they resisted him. 4. "A greater host," said they, "will be brought over the Rhine and will gradually take all our land." 5. When

---

[1] Use future passive participle in ablative plural.
[2] Use ablative absolute.
[3] Express in two ways.
[4] Use the perfect participle of **ēgredior.**

Caesar had selected a place for a conference, the German king replied that he would not withdraw from Gaul nor could he come to a conference without large supplies.

359. XI. Book I, Chapters 36, 53

Independent volitive subjunctive (**465**). Subjunctive in indirect questions (**479**).

1. Let us not tempt fortune too often. 2. Let Caesar meet (in battle) with [1] us and learn how Germans conquer. 3. The Germans did not know whether (**utrum**) to kill the prisoner or (**an**) reserve him for (**in**) another time. 4. When the enemy turned their backs, our horsemen, pursuing, overtook them near (**ad**) the bank of the river. 5. I do not know whether they found boats or swam-across.

360. XII. Book II, Chapters 1–3

Review of indirect statements (**494, 495**).

1. I showed above where Caesar was. 2. He thought for a long time that the Belgians were exchanging hostages. 3. Certain Gauls said that they would not have the means for seizing royal-power. 4. Caesar believed that forces were being collected, for he did not trust much (**multum**) to the good-faith of the Gauls. 5. He therefore said that he would arrive at (**ad**) their borders suddenly before they expected him.

361. XIII. Book II, Chapters 4–6

Genitive of description (**414**). Ablative of description (**445**).

1. Most (of the) Belgians were men of great courage. 2. Caesar addressed his (men) in a suitable speech. 3. He earnestly urged that the camp be fortified with a ten-foot

[1] See **438**, *a*.

trench (lit., "of ten feet"). 4. Many Gauls were of the highest nobility and honor. 5. After forming a testudo, our (men) did not fear the stones hurled by the enemy.

362. XIV. Book II, Chapters 7–10

Dative with compound verbs (**422**).

1. A brave Gaul was-in-command-of the reinforcements. 2. A swamp of great width was of the greatest use and protection on ("from") that side. 3. Since the enemy were approaching their territory, our allies wished to return home. 4. They placed-in-charge-of their forces a young man of great daring. 5. Courage was not lacking to our soldiers, but conditions were unfavorable for victory.

363. XV. Book II, Chapters 11–14

Ablative with **potior** and **ūtor** (**442**).

1. When Caesar had seen-clearly that the enemy were withdrawing, he put his best officer in charge of the cavalry and ordered them to follow-closely. 2. He used sheds and towers and an agger in order to get-possession-of the enemy's town. 3. Their friends begged that Caesar use mercy. 4. Upon-being-urged by their leaders, he permitted them to enjoy their liberty and resources. 5. Let us all make-use-of our time wisely in order to get-possession-of the reward.

364. XVI. Book II, Chapters 15–17

Review of dative constructions: With adjectives (**420**). With certain verbs (**421**). Of the possessor (**424**). With compound verbs (**422**). Of purpose and reference (**418, 419**). Of agent (**425**).

1. The Romans had no access to the Nervii, because the latter were unfriendly to all. 2. Caesar ordered (**imperō**)

his centurions to select a place suitable for a camp. 3. The plan was not to be overlooked by the Gauls, for they knew that these things would be [for] a hindrance to our men. 4. Caesar placed the newest legion in charge of the baggage. 5. They had persuaded their neighbors not to send envoys.

365. XVII. Book II, Chapters 18–19

Review of ablative constructions: Ablative absolute (**440**). Measure of difference (**444**). Cause (**443**). Manner (**439**). With **ūtor** and **potior** (**442**).

1. The one hill is opposite the other [1] but is much higher. 2. Did the Romans get possession of the enemy's camp? 3. After fortifying our camp, we drew up our battle-line. 4. The Roman soldiers were frightened by the attack and the swiftness of the enemy. 5. With the same speed they hastened up-the-hill (**adversō colle**).

366. XVIII. Book II, Chapter 20

Review of future passive participle (**490**). Dative of agent (**425**).

1. We must overcome the many difficulties of this life. 2. Caesar had to give the signal and recall the soldiers while (**dum** [2]) he drew-up his battle-line. 3. He had to send certain soldiers for the sake of recalling others. 4. The time was very short for accomplishing all these (things). 5. You will have to fight [3] bravely if you wish to conquer.

367. XIX. Book II, Chapters 21–22

Commands in the indirect form (**486**).

---

[1] See **420**.
[2] With present indicative (**457**).
[3] Becomes impersonal when changed to passive.

1. "Bravely withstand the enemy's attack," Caesar urged. 2. Caesar urged his (men) bravely to withstand the enemy's attack. 3. "Do not be disturbed in mind," he begged. 4. He begged that they should not be disturbed in mind. 5. He urged them to retain the memory of their former courage.

368. XX. Book II, Chapters 23–25

General review of the subjunctive: Purpose with **ut** and **nē** (**466**). Result with **ut** and **ut nōn** (**472**). **Cum** causal (**476**). Indirect questions (**479**). Volitive substantive clauses (**469**).

1. The shortness of time was such that our soldiers could not hurl their weapons. 2. Since the horsemen had been defeated by the Gauls, they retreated to the camp. 3. Caesar ordered (**imperō**) his soldiers to use their swords. 4. He could not see what (things) were going on in every part of the battle. 5. He could not send reinforcements to sustain the attack (*express in four ways*).

Fig. 163. A Cock Fight

Fig. 164. The Victor in the Chariot Race

IMPORTANT DATES AND EVENTS IN ROMAN HISTORY

369. A Chronological Summary of Parts I–IV

B.C.	
753	(Traditional date) Rome founded
753–509	Legendary kings
509	Republic established
496	Battle of Lake Regillus
494	Secession of the plebs
451–450	Laws of the Twelve Tables
390	Capture of Rome by the Gauls
343–290	Samnite Wars
280–275	War with Pyrrhus
264–241	First Punic War
254–184	Plautus, author of comedies
218–201	Second Punic War
200–197	War with Philip
185?–159	Terence, author of comedies
171–168	War with Perseus
157?–86	Marius, general
149–146	Third Punic War
146	Capture of Corinth
111–106	War with Jugurtha
106–48	Pompey, general
106–43	Cicero, orator, statesman, man of letters
102	Marius defeats Cimbri and Teutons
100–44	Gaius Julius Caesar, general, statesman, writer
99?–24?	Cornelius Nepos, biographer
96?–55	Lucretius, poet, author of *De Rerum Natura*
88–63	Mithridatic Wars
87–54?	Catullus, poet
86	Sulla captures Athens
86–34	Sallust, historian
80–78	Caesar serves in the army in Asia
76–75	Caesar studies oratory at Rhodes
74	Caesar military tribune

70–19	Virgil, poet, author of *Eclogues*, *Georgics*, and *Aeneid*
68	Caesar as quaestor goes to Spain to settle its finances
65	Caesar aedile
65–8	Horace, poet, author of *Satires*, *Odes*, and *Epistles*
63	Cicero consul
	Conspiracy of Catiline
	Caesar pontifex maximus
63–A.D. 14	Augustus (Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus)
62	Caesar praetor (propraetor in Spain in **61**)
60	First triumvirate (Caesar, Crassus, Pompey)
59–A.D. 17	Livy, historian
59	Caesar consul (proconsul in Gaul and Illyricum, **58–50**)
55 and 54	Caesar invades Britain (twice)
55 and 53	Caesar invades Germany (twice)
52	Fall of Alesia
51	Caesar publishes his *Gallic War*
49	Caesar crosses the Rubicon, thus precipitating civil war
48	Caesar consul for the second time. Battle of Pharsalus — Pompey defeated
48–46	Caesar dictator. Publishes his *Civil War*
46	Caesar consul a third time. Made dictator for ten years Reforms the calendar
45	Caesar sole consul. Made imperator and dictator for life
44	Caesar assassinated, March 15
43–A.D. 18?	Ovid, author of *Metamorphoses*
42	Battle of Philippi
31	Battle of Actium
31–A.D. 14	Reign of Augustus
4?–A.D. 65	Seneca, Stoic philosopher and writer

A.D.

8	Banishment of Ovid. *Metamorphoses* finished
9	Defeat of Varus
14–37	Reign of Tiberius
37–41	Reign of Caligula
40?–102	Martial, author of *Epigrams*
41–54	Reign of Claudius
54–68	Reign of Nero
55?–120?	Tacitus, historian
60?–140?	Juvenal, author of *Satires*
62–114?	Pliny the Younger, author of *Letters*
68–69	Reigns of Galba, Otho, Vitellius
69–79	Reign of Vespasian

79	Destruction of Pompeii and Herculaneum by the eruption of Mt. Vesuvius
79–81	Reign of Titus
81–96	Reign of Domitian
96–98	Reign of Nerva
98–117	Reign of Trajan
117–138	Reign of Hadrian
138–161	Reign of Antoninus Pius
161–180	Reign of Marcus Aurelius

FIG. 165. THE COLOSSEUM AT ROME

A modern crowd in the ancient building. (From "The Eternal City.")

370. BOOKS FOR SUPPLEMENTARY READING OR REFERENCE

PARTS I AND II

JOHNSTON, H. W., *The Private Life of the Romans*, Scott, Foresman and Co., Chicago.

WHITE, EDWARD LUCAS, *The Unwilling Vestal*, E. P. Dutton and Co., New York.

PART III

TAPPAN, EVA MARCH, *The Story of the Roman People*, Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston.

TAPPAN, EVA MARCH, *Old World Hero Stories*, Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston.

MORRIS, CHARLES, *Historical Tales* (*Roman*), J. B. Lippincott Co., Philadelphia.

MORRIS, CHARLES, *Historical Tales* (*Greek*), J. B. Lippincott Co., Philadelphia.

CHURCH, A. J., *Pictures from Roman Life and Story*, D. Appleton and Co., New York.

CHURCH, A. J., *Stories from Livy*, Dodd, Mead and Co., New York.

HAAREN, JOHN H., and POLAND, A. B., *Famous Men of Rome*, American Book Co., New York.

GUERBER, H. A., *The Story of the Romans*, American Book Co., New York.

GUERBER, H. A., *The Story of the Greeks*, American Book Co., New York.

HALL, JENNIE, *Buried Cities*, The Macmillan Company, New York.

BULWER-LYTTON, EDWARD ROBERT, *Last Days of Pompeii*, The Macmillan Company, New York.

PART IV

WELLS, R. F., *With Caesar's Legions*, Lothrop, Lee and Shepard Co., Boston.

WHITEHEAD, A. C., *The Standard Bearer*, American Book Co., New York.

DAVIS, WILLIAM STEARNS, *A Friend of Caesar*, The Macmillan Company, New York.

FOWLER, W. W., *Julius Caesar*, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York.

HOLMES, T. RICE, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, Oxford University Press, New York.

HOLMES, T. RICE, *The Roman Republic and the Founder of the Empire*, Oxford University Press, New York.

JUDSON, H. P., *Caesar's Army*, Ginn and Co., Boston.

MCCARTNEY, E. S., *Warfare by Land and Sea* (in the series, *Our Debt to Greece and Rome*), Marshall Jones Co., Boston.

FIG. 166. AN ANCIENT TEMPLE AT DOUGGA, NORTHERN AFRICA

SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

371. FIRST DECLENSION

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	via	viae
Gen.	viae	viārum
Dat.	viae	viīs
Acc.	viam	viās
Abl.	viā	viīs
Voc.		

SECOND DECLENSION

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	servus	servī
Gen.	servī	servōrum
Dat.	servō	servīs
Acc.	servum	servōs
Abl.	servō	servīs
Voc.	serve	

Note. — **Fīlius** and proper nouns in **-ius** often have **-ī** in the genitive and vocative singular: **fīlī, Cornēlī.** The accent does not change.

372. SECOND DECLENSION

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	ager	agrī	puer	puerī	signum	signa
Gen.	agrī	agrōrum	puerī	puerōrum	signī	signōrum
Dat.	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs	signō	signīs
Acc.	agrum	agrōs	puerum	puerōs	signum	signa
Abl.	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs	signō	signīs

Note. — Nouns in **-ium** have **-ī** in the genitive singular: **cōnsilī.** The accent does not change.

373. THIRD DECLENSION

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	mīles	mīlitēs	lēx	lēgēs	corpus	corpora
Gen.	mīlitis	mīlitum	lēgis	lēgum	corporis	corporum
Dat.	mīlitī	mīlitibus	lēgī	lēgibus	corporī	corporibus
Acc.	mīlitem	mīlitēs	lēgem	lēgēs	corpus	corpora
Abl.	mīlite	mīlitibus	lēge	lēgibus	corpore	corporibus

I-Stems

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	cīvis	cīvēs	mare	maria
Gen.	cīvis	cīvium	maris	marium
Dat.	cīvī	cīvibus	marī	maribus
Acc.	cīvem	cīvēs (-īs)	mare	maria
Abl.	cīve	cīvibus	marī	maribus

Note 1. — The classes of i-stem nouns are:

I. *Masculines and Feminines*

1. Nouns ending in **-is** and **-ēs** having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative: **cīvis, nūbēs.**
2. Nouns of one syllable whose base ends in two consonants: **pars** (gen. **part-is**), **nox** (gen. **noct-is**).
3. Nouns whose base ends in **-nt** or **-rt: cliēns** (gen. **client-is**).

II. *Neuters*

4. Nouns ending in **-e, -al, -ar: mare, animal, calcar.**

Note 2. — **Turris** and a few proper nouns have **-im** in the accusative singular. **Turris, ignis, nāvis,** and a few proper nouns sometimes have **-ī** in the ablative singular.

374. FOURTH DECLENSION

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	cāsus	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	cāsūs	cāsuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	cāsuī	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	cāsum	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	cāsū	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus

375. FIFTH DECLENSION

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

376. NOUNS OF IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE DECLENSION

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	vīs	vīrēs	nēmō	domus	domūs
Gen.	——	vīrium	(nūllīus)	domūs (–ī)	domuum (–ōrum)
Dat.	——	vīribus	nēminī	domuī (–ō)	domibus
Acc.	vim	vīrēs (–īs)	nēminem	domum	domōs (–ūs)
Abl.	vī	vīribus	(nūllō)	domō (–ū)	domibus
Loc.				domī	

ADJECTIVES

377. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Singular

Nom.	magnus, *m.*	magna, *f.*	magnum, *n.*
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō
Voc.	magne		

Plural

Nom.	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Acc.	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

Singular

Nom.	līber, *m.*	lībera, *f.*	līberum, *n.*
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō

Plural

Nom.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

	Singular		
Nom.	noster, *m.*	nostra, *f*	nostrum, *n.*
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
Dat.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō
Acc.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
Abl.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō

	Plural		
Nom.	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
Gen.	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
Dat.	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Acc.	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Abl.	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

378. THIRD DECLENSION

a. Three Endings

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	ācer, *m.*	ācris, *f.*	ācre, *n.*	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

b. Two Endings

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	fortis, *m., f.*	forte, *n.*	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

c. One Ending

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	pār, *m., f.*	pār, *n.*	parēs	paria
Gen.	paris	paris	parium	parium
Dat.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus
Acc.	parem	pār	parēs (-īs)	paria
Abl.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus

379 PRESENT PARTICIPLE

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	parāns, *m., f.*	parāns, *n.*	parantēs	parantia
Gen.	parantis	parantis	parantium	parantium
Dat.	parantī	parantī	parantibus	parantibus
Acc.	parantem	parāns	parantēs (-īs)	parantia
Abl.	parante (-ī)	parante (-ī)	parantibus	parantibus

Note. — The future and perfect participles of all verbs are regularly declined like **magnus, -a, -um.**

380. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Nom.	ūnus, *m.*	ūna, *f.*	ūnum, *n.*	trēs, *m., f.*	tria, *n.*
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs	tria
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus
Nom.	duo, *m.*	duae, *f.*	duo, *n.*	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

Note. — Like **ūnus** are **alius, alter, ūllus, nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, uter, neuter, uterque.** The plural is regular. The nominative and accusative singular neuter of **alius** is **aliud**; for the genitive singular of all genders **alterius,** with short **i,** (the genitive of **alter**) is generally used.

381. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

a. Regular

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus, -a, -um	altior, altius	altissimus, -a, -um
fortis, forte	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
līber, -era, -um	līberior, -ius	līberrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
facilis, facile	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um

Note. — Like **facilis** are **difficilis, similis, dissimilis.** Adjectives in **-er** are like **līber** or **ācer.**

b. Irregular

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, –a, –um	melior, –ius	optimus, –a, –um
malus, –a, –um	peior, –ius	pessimus, –a, –um
magnus, –a, –um	maior, –ius	maximus, –a, –um
parvus, –a, –um	minor, –us	minimus, –a, –um
multus, –a, –um	——, plūs	plūrimus, –a, –um
īnferus, –a, –um	īnferior, –ius	īnfimus *or* īmus, –a, –um
superus, –a, –um	superior, –ius	suprēmus *or* summus, –a, –um
——	prior, –ius	prīmus, –a, –um
——	propior, –ius	proximus, –a, –um
——	ulterior, –ius	ultimus, –a, –um

382. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	altior, *m., f.*	altius, *n.*	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

	Singular	Plural	
Nom.	plūs,[1] *n.*	plūrēs, *m., f.*	plūra, *n.*
Gen.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

383. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altē	altius	altissimē
līberē	līberius	līberrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
facile	facilius	facillimē
bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
——	minus	minimē
(magnopere)	magis	maximē

[1] Masculine and feminine lacking in the singular.

384. NUMERALS

	ROMAN	CARDINAL	ORDINAL
1.	I	ūnus, –a, –um	prīmus, –a, –um
2.	II	duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3.	III	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	IIII *or* IV	quattuor	quārtus
5.	V	quīnque	quīntus
6.	VI	sex	sextus
7.	VII	septem	septimus
8.	VIII	octō	octāvus
9.	VIIII *or* IX	novem	nōnus
10.	X	decem	decimus
11.	XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	XII	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	XIIII *or* XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	XV	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	XVIII	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus[1]
19.	XVIIII *or* XIX	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	XXI	vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus
30.	XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	XXXX *or* XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	LXXXX *or* XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	C	centum	centēsimus
101.	CI	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus
200.	CC	ducentī, –ae, –a	ducentēsimus
300.	CCC	trecentī, –ae, –a	trecentēsimus
400.	CCCC	quadringentī, –ae, –a	quadringentēsimus
500.	D	quīngentī, –ae, –a	quīngentēsimus
600.	DC	sescentī, –ae, –a	sescentēsimus
700.	DCC	septingentī, –ae, –a	septingentēsimus

[1] The forms in **-ēsimus** are sometimes spelled **-ēnsimus.**

800.	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus
900.	DCCCC	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus
1000.	M	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2000.	MM	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

PRONOUNS

385. PERSONAL

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	M. F. N.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	is ea id
Gen.	meī	nostrum (nostrī)	tuī	vestrum (-trī)	(For declen-
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sion see de-
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	monstrative
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	is, 387)

386. REFLEXIVE

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON
Gen.	meī (declined like ego)	tuī (declined like tū)

Note. — Reflexive pronouns can have no nominative case.

THIRD PERSON

	Singular	Plural
Gen.	suī	suī
Dat.	sibi	sibi
Acc.	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

387. DEMONSTRATIVE

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	hic, *m.*	haec, *f.*	hoc, *n.*	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Nom.	is, *m.*	ea, *f.*	id, *n.*	eī (iī)	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	īdem, *m.*	eadem, *f.*	idem, *n.*	eīdem (īdem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)

DEMONSTRATIVE

	Singular			Singular		
Nom.	ille, *m.*	illa, *f.*	illud, *n.*	ipse, *m.*	ipsa, *f.*	ipsum, *n.*
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
	(Plur. regular like magnus)			(Plur. regular)		

INTENSIVE

388. RELATIVE

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	quī, *m.*	quae, *f.*	quod, *n.*	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

389. INTERROGATIVE

	Singular[1]	
Nom.	quis,[2] *m., f.*	quid, *n.*
Gen.	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quid
Abl.	quō	quō

[1] Plural like that of **quī**.

[2] Interrogative adjective **quī** is declined throughout like relative **quī**.

390. INDEFINITE

	Singular		Plural		
Nom.	aliquis, *m., f.*	aliquid, *n.*	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

(The adjective form is **aliquī, –qua, –quod**, etc.)

	Singular		
Nom.	quīdam, *m.*	quaedam, *f.*	quiddam, *n.*
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

	Plural		
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

(The adjective has **quoddam** for **quiddam**)

	Singular		Singular	
Nom.	quisquam, *m., f.*	quicquam,[1] *n.*	quisque, *m., f.*	quidque, *n.*
Gen.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam	cuiusque	cuiusque
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam	cuique	cuique
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam [1]	quemque	quidque
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam	quōque	quōque
	(Plural lacking)		(Plural rare)	

(The adjective form of **quisque** is **quisque, quaeque, quodque**, etc.)

Note. — The indefinite pronoun **quis** (declined like the interrogative) and the indefinite adjective **quī** (declined like the relative except that the nom. fem. sing. is **qua**) are used chiefly after **sī, nisi,** and **nē**.

---

[1] Or **quidquam.**

REGULAR VERBS

391. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus**
(Stems: **parā-, parāv-, parāt-**)

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	
parō	parāmus
parās	parātis
parat	parant

IMPERFECT	
parābam	parābāmus
parābās	parābātis
parābat	parābant

FUTURE	
parābō	parābimus
parābis	parābitis
parābit	parābunt

PERFECT	
parāvī	parāvimus
parāvistī	parāvistis
parāvit	parāvērunt (-ēre)

PAST PERFECT	
parāveram	parāverāmus
parāverās	parāverātis
parāverat	parāverant

FUTURE PERFECT	
parāverō	parāverimus
parāveris	parāveritis
parāverit	parāverint

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	
paror	parāmur
parāris (-re)	parāminī
parātur	parantur

IMPERFECT	
parābar	parābāmur
parābāris (-re)	parābāminī
parābātur	parābantur

FUTURE	
parābor	parābimur
parāberis (-re)	parābiminī
parābitur	parābuntur

PERFECT			
parātus (-a, -um)	sum	parātī (-ae, -a)	sumus
	es		estis
	est		sunt

PAST PERFECT			
parātus (-a, -um)	eram	parātī (-ae, -a)	erāmus
	erās		erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT			
parātus (-a, -um)	erō	parātī (-ae, -a)	erimus
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

Subjunctive

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT		**PRESENT**	
parem	parēmus	parer	parēmur
parēs	parētis	parēris (–re)	parēminī
paret	parent	parētur	parentur
IMPERFECT		**IMPERFECT**	
parārem	parārēmus	parārer	parārēmur
parārēs	parārētis	parārēris (–re)	parārēminī
parāret	parārent	parārētur	parārentur
PERFECT		**PERFECT**	
parāverim	parāverīmus	parātus (–a, –um) sim / sīs / sit	parātī (–ae, –a) sīmus / sītis / sint
parāverīs	parāverītis		
parāverit	parāverint		
PAST PERFECT		**PAST PERFECT**	
parāvissem	parāvissēmus	parātus (–a, –um) essem / essēs / esset	parātī (–ae, –a) essēmus / essētis / essent
parāvissēs	parāvissētis		
parāvisset	parāvissent		

Present Imperative

2nd sing.	parā, *prepare (thou)*	parāre, *be (thou) prepared*	
2nd plur.	parāte, *prepare (ye)*	parāminī, *be (ye) prepared*	

Infinitive

Present	parāre	parārī
Perfect	parāvisse	parātus esse
Future	parātūrus esse	

Participle

Present	parāns, *Gen.* –antis	
Perfect		parātus, –a, –um
Future	parātūrus, –a, –um	parandus, –a, –um

Gerund

Gen. parandī, *Dat.* parandō, *Acc.* parandum, *Abl.* parandō

392. SECOND CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus**
(Stems: **habē-, habu-, habit-**)

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

habeō	habēmus
habēs	habētis
habet	habent

IMPERFECT

habēbam	habēbāmus
habēbās	habēbātis
habēbat	habēbant

FUTURE

habēbō	habēbimus
habēbis	habēbitis
habēbit	habēbunt

PERFECT

habuī	habuimus
habuistī	habuistis
habuit	habuērunt (-ēre)

PAST PERFECT

habueram	habuerāmus
habuerās	habuerātis
habuerat	habuerant

FUTURE PERFECT

habuerō	habuerimus
habueris	habueritis
habuerit	habuerint

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

habeor	habēmur
habēris (-re)	habēminī
habētur	habentur

IMPERFECT

habēbar	habēbāmur
habēbāris (-re)	habēbāminī
habēbātur	habēbantur

FUTURE

habēbor	habēbimur
habēberis (-re)	habēbiminī
habēbitur	habēbuntur

PERFECT

habitus (-a, -um)	sum	habitī (-ae, -a)	sumus
	es		estis
	est		sunt

PAST PERFECT

habitus (-a, -um)	eram	habitī (-ae, -a)	erāmus
	erās		erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

habitus (-a, -um)	erō	habitī (-ae, -a)	erimus
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Subjunctive			
PRESENT		PRESENT	
habeam	habeāmus	habear	habeāmur
habeās	habeātis	habeāris (–re)	habeāminī
habeat	habeant	habeātur	habeantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
habērem	habērēmus	habērer	habērēmur
habērēs	habērētis	habērēris (–re)	habērēminī
habēret	habērent	habērētur	habērentur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
habuerim	habuerīmus	habitus (–a, –um) sim	habitī (–ae, –a) sīmus
habuerīs	habuerītis	habitus (–a, –um) sīs	habitī (–ae, –a) sītis
habuerit	habuerint	habitus (–a, –um) sit	habitī (–ae, –a) sint
PAST PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
habuissem	habuissēmus	habitus (–a, –um) essem	habitī (–ae, –a) essēmus
habuissēs	habuissētis	habitus (–a, –um) essēs	habitī (–ae, –a) essētis
habuisset	habuissent	habitus (–a, –um) esset	habitī (–ae, –a) essent

Present Imperative

2nd sing.	habē, *have (thou)*	habēre
2nd plur.	habēte, *have (ye)*	habēminī

Infinitive

Present	habēre	habērī
Perfect	habuisse	habitus esse
Future	habitūrus esse	

Participle

Present	habēns, *Gen.* –entis	
Perfect		habitus, –a, –um
Future	habitūrus, –a, –um	habendus, –a, –um

Gerund

Gen. habendī, *Dat.* habendō, *Acc.* habendum, *Abl.* habendō

393. THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **pōnō, pōnĕre, posuī, positus**
(Stems: **pōnĕ-, posu-, posit-**)

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	
pōnō	pōnimus
pōnis	pōnitis
pōnit	pōnunt

IMPERFECT	
pōnēbam	pōnēbāmus
pōnēbās	pōnēbātis
pōnēbat	pōnēbant

FUTURE	
pōnam	pōnēmus
pōnēs	pōnētis
pōnet	pōnent

PERFECT	
posuī	posuimus
posuistī	posuistis
posuit	posuērunt (–ēre)

PAST PERFECT	
posueram	posuerāmus
posuerās	posuerātis
posuerat	posuerant

FUTURE PERFECT	
posuerō	posuerimus
posueris	posueritis
posuerit	posuerint

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	
pōnor	pōnimur
pōneris (–re)	pōniminī
pōnitur	pōnuntur

IMPERFECT	
pōnēbar	pōnēbāmur
pōnēbāris (–re)	pōnēbāminī
pōnēbātur	pōnēbantur

FUTURE	
pōnar	pōnēmur
pōnēris (–re)	pōnēminī
pōnētur	pōnentur

PERFECT			
positus (–a, –um)	sum / es / est	positī (–ae, –a)	sumus / estis / sunt

PAST PERFECT			
positus (–a, –um)	eram / erās / erat	positī (–ae, –a)	erāmus / erātis / erant

FUTURE PERFECT			
positus (–a, –um)	erō / eris / erit	positī (–ae, –a)	erimus / eritis / erunt

Subjunctive

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT		**PRESENT**	
pōnam	pōnāmus	pōnar	pōnāmur
pōnās	pōnātis	pōnāris (-re)	pōnāminī
pōnat	pōnant	pōnātur	pōnantur
IMPERFECT		**IMPERFECT**	
pōnerem	pōnerēmus	pōnerer	pōnerēmur
pōnerēs	pōnerētis	pōnerēris (-re)	pōnerēminī
pōneret	pōnerent	pōnerētur	pōnerentur
PERFECT		**PERFECT**	
posuerim	posuerīmus	positus (-a, -um) sim / sīs / sit	positī (-ae, -a) sīmus / sītis / sint
posuerīs	posuerītis		
posuerit	posuerint		
PAST PERFECT		**PAST PERFECT**	
posuissem	posuissēmus	positus (-a, -um) essem / essēs / esset	positī (-ae, -a) essēmus / essētis / essent
posuissēs	posuissētis		
posuisset	posuissent		

Present Imperative

2nd sing.	pōne, *place (thou)*	pōnere, *be (thou) placed*
2nd plur.	pōnite, *place (ye)*	pōnimini, *be (ye) placed*

Infinitive

Present	pōnere	pōnī
Perfect	posuisse	positus esse
Future	positūrus esse	

Participle

Present	pōnēns, *Gen.* -entis	
Perfect		positus, -a, -um
Future	positūrus, -a, -um	pōnendus, -a, -um

Gerund

Gen. pōnendī, *Dat.* pōnendō, *Acc.* pōnendum, *Abl.* pōnendō

394. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus**
(Stems: **mūnī-, mūnīv-, mūnīt-**)

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
		INDICATIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
mūniō	mūnīmus	mūnior	mūnīmur
mūnīs	mūnītis	mūnīris (-re)	mūnīminī
mūnit	mūniunt	mūnītur	mūniuntur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
mūniēbam	mūniēbāmus	mūniēbar	mūniēbāmur
mūniēbās	mūniēbātis	mūniēbāris (-re)	mūniēbāminī
mūniēbat	mūniēbant	mūniēbātur	mūniēbantur
FUTURE		FUTURE	
mūniam	mūniēmus	mūniar	mūniēmur
mūniēs	mūniētis	mūniēris (-re)	mūniēminī
mūniet	mūnient	mūniētur	mūnientur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
mūnīvī	mūnīvimus	mūnītus (-a, -um) sum / es / est	mūnītī (-ae, -a) sumus / estis / sunt
mūnīvistī	mūnīvistis		
mūnīvit	mūnīvērunt (-ēre)		
PAST PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
mūnīveram	mūnīverāmus	mūnītus (-a, -um) eram / erās / erat	mūnītī (-ae, -a) erāmus / erātis / erant
mūnīverās	mūnīverātis		
mūnīverat	mūnīverant		
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
mūnīverō	mūnīverimus	mūnītus (-a, -um) erō / eris / erit	mūnītī (-ae, -a) erimus / eritis / erunt
mūnīveris	mūnīveritis		
mūnīverit	mūnīverint		

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	

Subjunctive

PRESENT		PRESENT	
mūniam	mūniāmus	mūniar	mūniāmur
mūniās	mūniātis	mūniāris (–re)	mūniāminī
mūniat	mūniant	mūniātur	mūniantur

IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
mūnīrem	mūnīrēmus	mūnīrer	mūnīrēmur
mūnīrēs	mūnīrētis	mūnīrēris (–re)	mūnīrēminī
mūnīret	mūnīrent	mūnīrētur	mūnīrentur

PERFECT		PERFECT	
mūnīverim	mūnīverīmus	mūnītus (–a, –um) sim / sīs / sit	mūnītī (–ae, –a) sīmus / sītis / sint
mūnīverīs	mūnīverītis		
mūnīverit	mūnīverint		

PAST PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
mūnīvissem	mūnīvissēmus	mūnītus (–a, –um) essem / essēs / esset	mūnītī (–ae, –a) essēmus / essētis / essent
mūnīvissēs	mūnīvissētis		
mūnīvisset	mūnīvissent		

Present Imperative

2nd sing.	mūnī, *fortify (thou)*	mūnīre, *be (thou) fortified*
2nd plur.	mūnīte, *fortify (ye)*	mūnīminī, *be (ye) fortified*

Infinitive

Present	mūnīre	mūnīrī
Perfect	mūnīvisse	mūnītus esse
Future	mūnītūrus esse	

Participle

Present	mūniēns, *Gen.* mūnientis	
Perfect		mūnītus, –a, –um
Future	mūnītūrus, –a, –um	mūniendus, –a, –um

Gerund

Gen. mūniendī, *Dat.* mūniendō, *Acc.* mūniendum, *Abl.* mūniendō

395. THIRD CONJUGATION *-IŌ* VERBS

Principal Parts: **capiō, capĕre, cēpī, captus**
(Stems: **capĕ-, cēp-, capt-**)

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE			
PRESENT		PRESENT	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
capiēbam, etc.		capiēbar, etc.	
FUTURE		FUTURE	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (-re)	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
cēpī, etc.		captus sum, etc.	
PAST PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
cēperam, etc.		captus eram, etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
cēperō, etc.		captus erō, etc.	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT		PRESENT	
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (-re)	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
caperem, etc.		caperer, etc.	

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PERFECT	PERFECT
cēperim, etc.	**captus sim**, etc.
PAST PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
cēpissem, etc.	**captus essem**, etc.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd sing.	cape, *take (thou)*	capere, *be (thou) taken*
2nd plur.	capite, *take (ye)*	capiminī, *be (ye) taken*

INFINITIVE

Present	capere	capī
Perfect	cēpisse	captus esse
Future	captūrus esse	

PARTICIPLE

Present	capiēns, *Gen.* capientis	
Perfect		captus, –a, –um
Future	captūrus, –a, –um	capiendus, –a, –um

GERUND

Gen. capiendī, *Dat.* capiendō, *Acc.* capiendum, *Abl.* capiendō

396. DEPONENT VERBS

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum	(1st Conj.)
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum	(2nd Conj.)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	(3rd Conj.)
gradior, gradī, gressus sum	(3rd Conj. –iō)
experior, experīrī, expertus sum	(4th Conj.)

INDICATIVE

Pres.	arbitror	fateor	sequor
Impf.	arbitrābar	fatēbar	sequēbar
Fut.	arbitrābor	fatēbor	sequar
Perf.	arbitrātus sum	fassus sum	secūtus sum
Past P.	arbitrātus eram	fassus eram	secūtus eram
Fut. P.	arbitrātus erō	fassus erō	secūtus erō

Pres.	gradior	experior
Impf.	gradiēbar	experiēbar
Fut.	gradiar	experiar
Perf.	gressus sum	expertus sum
Past P.	gressus eram	expertus eram
Fut. P.	gressus erō	expertus erō

Subjunctive

Pres.	arbitrer	fatear	sequar
Impf.	arbitrārer	fatērer	sequerer
Perf.	arbitrātus sim	fassus sim	secūtus sim
Past P.	arbitrātus essem	fassus essem	secūtus essem

Pres.	gradiar	experiar
Impf.	graderer	experīrer
Perf.	gressus sim	expertus sim
Past P.	gressus essem	expertus essem

Present Imperative

2nd sing.	arbitrāre	fatēre	sequere
2nd plur.	arbitrāminī	fatēminī	sequiminī

2nd sing.	gradere	experīre
2nd plur.	gradiminī	experīminī

Infinitive

Pres.	arbitrārī	fatērī	sequī
Perf.	arbitrātus esse	fassus esse	secūtus esse
Fut.	arbitrātūrus esse	fassūrus esse	secūtūrus esse

Pres.	gradī	experīrī
Perf.	gressus esse	expertus esse
Fut.	gressūrus esse	expertūrus esse

Participle

Pres.	arbitrāns	fatēns	sequēns
Perf.	arbitrātus	fassus	secūtus
Fut. Act.	arbitrātūrus	fassūrus	secūtūrus
Fut. Pass.	arbitrandus	fatendus	sequendus

Pres.	gradiēns	experiēns
Perf.	gressus	expertus
Fut. Act.	gressūrus	expertūrus
Fut. Pass.	gradiendus	experiendus

397. IRREGULAR VERBS

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	PRESENT		
sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint
	IMPERFECT		
eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
erat	erant	esset	essent
	FUTURE		
erō	erimus		
eris	eritis		
erit	erunt		
	PERFECT		
fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerīmus
fuistī	fuistis	fuerīs	fuerītis
fuit	fuērunt (–ēre)	fuerit	fuerint
	PAST PERFECT		
fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent
	FUTURE PERFECT		
fuerō	fuerimus		
fueris	fueritis		
fuerit	fuerint		

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd sing. es *2nd plur.* este

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
Pres.	esse	——
Perf.	fuisse	——
Fut.	futūrus esse (fore)	futūrus, –a, –um

398. Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potuī, ——**

INDICATIVE

			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
Impf.	poteram, *etc.*		possem, *etc.*	
Fut.	poterō, *etc.*[1]			
Perf.	potuī, *etc.*		potuerim, *etc.*	
Past P.	potueram, *etc.*		potuissem, *etc.*	
Fut. P.	potuerō, *etc.*[1]			

INFINITIVE

Present posse *Perfect* potuisse

PARTICIPLE

Present potēns, *Gen.* potentis (adj.), *powerful*

399. Principal Parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris (–re)	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
Impf.	ferēbam, *etc.*		ferēbar, *etc.*	
Fut.	feram, ferēs, *etc.*		ferar, ferēris, *etc.*	
Perf.	tulī, *etc.*		lātus sum, *etc.*	
Past P.	tuleram, *etc.*		lātus eram, *etc.*	
Fut. P.	tulerō, *etc.*		lātus erō, *etc.*	

SUBJUNCTIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	feram, ferās, *etc.*	ferar, ferāris, *etc.*
Impf.	ferrem, *etc.*	ferrer, *etc.*
Perf.	tulerim, *etc.*	lātus sim, *etc.*
Past P.	tulissem, *etc.*	lātus essem, *etc.*

[1] Note that the third plural future is **poterunt**; future perfect, **potuerint.**

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd Pers.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini

INFINITIVE

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	ferēns, –entis	
Perf.		lātus, –a, –um
Fut.	lātūrus, –a, –um	ferendus, –a, –um

GERUND

Gen. ferendī, *Dat.* ferendō, *Acc.* ferendum, *Abl.* ferendō

400. Principal Parts: eō, īre, iī, itus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	FUTURE		PERFECT	
eō	īmus	ībam, *etc.*	ībō	ībimus	iī	iimus
īs	ītis		ībis	ībitis	īstī	īstis
it	eunt		ībit	ībunt	iit	ierunt (–ēre)

PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
ieram, *etc.*	ierō, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
eam, *etc.*	īrem, *etc.*	ierim, *etc.*	īssem, *etc.*

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd sing. ī *2nd plur.* īte

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
Pres. īre	iēns, *Gen.* euntis
Perf. īsse	itus, –a, –um
Fut. itūrus esse	itūrus, –a, –um
	(*Passive,* eundus)

GERUND

Gen. eundī, *Dat.* eundō, *Acc.* eundum, *Abl.* eundō

401. Principal Parts: **volō, velle, voluī; nōlō, nōlle, nōluī; mālō, mālle, māluī**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

volō	**volumus**	**nōlō**	**nōlumus**	**mālō**	**mālumus**
vīs	**vultis**	**nōn vīs**	**nōn vultis**	**māvīs**	**māvultis**
vult	**volunt**	**nōn vult**	**nōlunt**	**māvult**	**mālunt**

Impf.	**volēbam**, *etc.*	**nōlēbam**, *etc.*	**mālēbam**, *etc.*
Fut.	**volam**, *etc.*	**nōlam**, *etc.*	**mālam**, *etc.*
Perf.	**voluī**, *etc.*	**nōluī**, *etc.*	**māluī**, *etc.*
Past P.	**volueram**, *etc.*	**nōlueram**, *etc.*	**mālueram**, *etc.*
Fut. P.	**voluerō**, *etc.*	**nōluerō**, *etc.*	**māluerō**, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

velim	**velīmus**	**nōlim**	**nōlīmus**	**mālim**	**mālīmus**
velīs	**velītis**	**nōlīs**	**nōlītis**	**mālīs**	**mālītis**
velit	**velint**	**nōlit**	**nōlint**	**mālit**	**mālint**

Impf.	**vellem**, *etc.*	**nōllem**, *etc.*	**māllem**, *etc.*
Perf.	**voluerim**, *etc.*	**nōluerim**, *etc.*	**māluerim**, *etc.*
Past P.	**voluissem**, *etc.*	**nōluissem**, *etc.*	**māluissem**, *etc.*

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd sing. **nōlī** *2nd plur.* **nōlīte**

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**velle**	**nōlle**	**mālle**
Perf.	**voluisse**	**nōluisse**	**māluisse**

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	**volēns**	**nōlēns**

402. Principal Parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PERFECT
fīō ——	**fīēbam**, *etc.*	**fīam**, *etc.*	**factus sum**, *etc.*
—— ——			
fit **fīunt**			

PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
factus eram, *etc.*	**factus erō,** *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
fiam, *etc.*	**fierem,** *etc.*	**factus sim,** *etc.*	**factus essem,** *etc.*

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd sing. **fī** *2nd plur.* **fīte**

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
Pres.	**fierī**	
Perf.	**factus esse**	**factus, –a, –um**
Fut.		**faciendus, –a, –um**

403. DEFECTIVE VERBS

Coepī is used only in the perfect system. For the present system **incipiō** is used. With a passive infinitive the passive of **coepī** is used: **Lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt,** *Stones began to be thrown.* **Meminī** and **ōdī** likewise are used only in the perfect system, but with present meaning. The former has an imperative **mementō, mementōte.**

The only forms of **inquam** in common use are found in the present indicative: **inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt.**

404. SPECIAL FORMS

Verbs having perfect stems ending in **-āv-** or **-ēv-** are sometimes contracted by dropping **-ve-** before **-r-** and **-vi-** before **-s-: amārunt, consuēsse.** Verbs having perfect stems ending in **-īv-** drop **-vi-** before **-s-** but only **-v-** before **-r-: audīsset, audierat.**

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX[1]

AGREEMENT

405. Adjectives. — Adjectives and participles agree in number, gender, and case with the nouns which they modify.

406. Adjectives as Substantives. — Sometimes adjectives are used substantively: **nostrī,** *our (men)*; **malum,** *evil.*

407. Verbs. — Verbs agree in person and number with their subjects.

Note. — (*a*) When two singular subjects are connected by **aut, aut . . . aut, neque . . . neque,** the verb is singular.

(*b*) A plural verb may be used with a singular subject which is plural in thought (**174,** footnote 5).

408. Relative Pronouns. — The relative pronoun agrees in gender and number with its antecedent but its case depends upon its use in its own clause.

Note. — (*a*) The antecedent of the relative is often omitted.

(*b*) Sometimes the antecedent is represented by an entire clause, in which case the pronoun is best translated *a thing which.*

409. Connecting Relative. — In Latin a relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence to refer to the thought of the preceding sentence. The English idiom calls for a demonstrative or personal pronoun (*cf.* **198**).

quā dē causā, *for this reason.*

410. Appositives. — Appositives agree in case.

Note. — It is often best to supply *as* in translating the appositive.

eōdem homine magistrō ūtī, *to use the same man as teacher.*

---

[1] In this summary only those constructions are included which are relatively most important and which recur repeatedly in the text, or are referred to in the lessons and notes of Parts I–IV, or in the Written Exercises.

NOUN SYNTAX

NOMINATIVE

411. Subject Nominative. — The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

412. Predicate Nominative. — (*a*) A noun or adjective used in the predicate after a linking verb (*is, are, seem,* etc.) to complete its meaning is in the nominative case.

1. **Īnsula est magna,** *The island is large.*
2. **Sicilia est īnsula,** *Sicily is an island.*

(*b*) Predicate nouns and adjectives are used not only with **sum** but also with **fīō** and the passive voice of verbs meaning *call, choose, appoint, elect,* and the like.

1. **Caesar dux factus est,** *Caesar was made leader.*
2. **Cicerō Pater Patriae appellātus est,** *Cicero was called the Father of his Country.*

Note. — In the active these verbs take two accusatives.

GENITIVE

413. Possessive Genitive. — Possession is expressed by the genitive.

īnsulae viae, *the roads of the island.*

414. Descriptive Genitive. — The descriptive genitive, modified by an adjective, is used to describe a person or thing.

virī magnae virtūtis, *men of great courage.*

Note. — The descriptive genitive is largely confined to expressions of measure and number.

spatium decem pedum, *a space of ten feet.*

415. Genitive of the Whole. — The genitive of the whole (partitive genitive) represents the whole to which the part belongs.

1. **hōrum omnium fortissimī,** *the bravest of all these.*
2. **nihil praesidī,** *no guard.*

Note. — (*a*) The English idiom is the same except when the genitive is used with such words as **nihil, satis, quid** (**204**).

(*b*) Instead of the genitive of the whole, the ablative with **ex** or **dē** is regularly used with cardinal numerals (except **mīlia**) and **quīdam,** often also with other words, such as **paucī** and **complūrēs.**

1. **quīnque ex nostrīs,** *five of our men.*
2. **quīdam ex mīlitibus,** *certain of the soldiers.*

416. Genitive with Adjectives. — Certain adjectives take the genitive. In many cases the English idiom is the same; in others, it is not.

1. **bellandī cupidī,** *desirous of waging war.*
2. **reī mīlitāris perītus,** *skilled in warfare.*

DATIVE

417. Dative of Indirect Object. — The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. This dative is used with verbs of *giving, reporting, telling,* etc.

Nautae pecūniam dōnō, *I give money to the sailor.*

418. Dative of Purpose. — The dative of purpose expresses the reason or end which prompted the act expressed by the verb.

Locum castrīs dēlēgit, *He chose a place for a camp.*

419. Dative of Reference. — The dative of reference denotes the person concerned or referred to.

sī mihi dignī esse vultis, *if you wish to be worthy in my sight* (lit., *for me*).

a. The dative of reference is often used with the dative of purpose to show the person or thing affected.

Haec castra erunt praesidiō oppidō, *This camp will be (for) a protection to the town.*

420. Dative with Adjectives. — Certain adjectives, as **amīcus, idōneus, pār, proximus, similis, ūtilis,** and their

opposites, govern the dative. In many cases the English idiom is the same.

Hic liber est similis illī, *This book is similar to that.*

421. Dative with Special Verbs. — Certain special verbs, as **cōnfīdō, crēdō, dēsum, faveō, imperō, invideō, noceō, parcō, pāreō, persuādeō, placeō, praestō, resistō,** and **studeō,** govern the dative.

Pārēbisne patrī tuō an eī resistēs? *Will you obey your father or resist him?*

a. These verbs become impersonal in the passive and the dative is retained.

Eī persuāsum est, *He was persuaded.*

b. A neuter pronoun or adjective or an **ut** clause may be used as a direct object with **imperō** and **persuādeō.**

Hoc mihi persuāsit, *He persuaded me of this.*

422. Dative with Compounds. — Certain compound verbs often take a dative, especially when the noun goes closely with the prefix of the verb. No general rule can be given. When the simple verb is transitive, the compound sometimes takes both an accusative and a dative.

Gallīs bellum intulit, *He made war against the Gauls.*

423. Dative of Separation. — The dative of separation is commonly confined to persons and occurs chiefly with verbs compounded with **ab, dē,** and **ex.**

scūtō ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, *having seized a shield from one of the soldiers.*

424. Dative of Possession. — The possessor may be expressed by the dative with **sum.**

Liber mihi est, *I have a book.*

425. Dative of Agent. — The dative of agent is used with the future passive participle to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests (**490,** *a*).

Hoc opus vōbīs faciendum est, *This work is to be done by you,* i.e. *This work must be done by you.*

ACCUSATIVE

426. Accusative of Direct Object. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Viam parāmus, *We are preparing a way.*

427. Accusative of Extent. — Extent of time and space is expressed by the accusative.

1. **Duōs annōs remanēbat,** *He remained two years.*
2. **Flūmen decem pedēs altum est,** *The river is ten feet deep.*

428. Accusative of Place to Which. — The accusative with **ad** (*to*) or **in** (*into*) expresses place to which. These prepositions, however, are omitted before **domum** and names of towns and cities.

1. **Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt,** *They send envoys to him.*
2. **Rōmam eunt,** *They go to Rome.*

Note. — When the preposition **ad** is used with names of towns it means *to the vicinity of.*

429. Accusative Subject of Infinitive. — The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative.

Puerōs esse bonōs volumus, *We want the boys to be good.*

430. Two Accusatives. — With **trādūcō** and **trānsportō** two accusatives are used. In the passive the accusative governed by the prefix is retained.

1. **Cōpiās flūmen trādūcit,** *He leads his forces across the river.*
2. **Cōpiae flūmen trādūcuntur,** *The forces are led across the river.*

Note. — For two accusatives with verbs meaning *call, choose,* etc., see **412** (*b*).

431. Accusative with Prepositions. — Prepositions (except those listed in **451**) take the accusative; **in** and **sub** take the accusative when they imply motion.

ABLATIVE

432. Summary. — The uses of the ablative may be grouped under three heads:

I. The **true** or **"from" ablative** (**ab,** *from,* and **lātus,** *carried*), used with the prepositions **ab, dē,** and **ex** — if any preposition is used.

II. The **associative** or **"with" ablative,** used with the preposition **cum** — if any preposition is used.

III. The **place** or **"in" ablative,** used with the prepositions **in** and **sub** — if any preposition is used.

433. Ablative of Separation. — The ablative of separation is used without a preposition with certain verbs, as **careō, abstineō, dēsistō, excēdō,** and **līberō.**

Note. — (*a*) Caesar uses **prohibeō,** *keep from,* commonly without a preposition, but occasionally with it.

Suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, *They keep them from their own territory.*

(*b*) Other verbs denoting separation regularly take the prepositions **ab, dē,** and **ex.**

434. Ablative of Place from Which. — Place from which is expressed regularly by the ablative with the prepositions **ab, dē,** and **ex.**

1. **dē montibus,** *down from the mountains.*
2. **ex agrīs,** *out of the fields.*

Note. — The preposition is regularly omitted before **domō** as well as before names of towns and cities. When it is used, it means *from the vicinity of.*

435. Ablative of Origin. — Origin is expressed by the ablative with or without a preposition (**ab, dē, ex**).

amplissimō genere nātus, *born of most illustrious lineage.*

436. Ablative of Agent. — Personal agency with a passive verb is expressed by **ā** or **ab** with the ablative.

Amāmur ab amīcīs, *We are loved by our friends.*

437. Ablative of Comparison. — After a comparative the ablative may be used when **quam** (*than*) is omitted.

Nec locus tibi ūllus dulcior esse dēbet patriā, *No spot ought to be dearer to you than your native land.*

438. Ablative of Accompaniment. — The ablative is used with **cum** to express accompaniment.

Cum servō venit, *He is coming with the slave.*

a. When **cum** is used with a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, it is attached to it as an enclitic: **vōbīscum,** *with you;* **sēcum,** *with himself;* **quibuscum,** *with whom.*

b. **Cum** is omitted in certain military phrases denoting accompaniment, if qualified by an adjective other than a numeral.

1. **omnibus suīs cōpiīs,** *with all his forces.*
2. **cum tribus legiōnibus,** *with three legions.*

439. Ablative of Manner. — The ablative of manner with **cum** describes how something is done. **Cum** may be omitted, as a rule, only if an adjective is used with the noun.

(Cum) magnō studiō labōrat, *He labors with great eagerness* (*very eagerly*).

440. Ablative Absolute. — A noun in the ablative case used with a participle, adjective, or other noun and having no grammatical connection with the subject or the predicate is called an ablative absolute.

In translating, an ablative absolute should, as a rule, be changed to a clause expressing *time, cause, condition, means,* or *concession,* according to the context. At other times it may best be rendered by a clause coördinate with the main clause.

1. **Servō accūsātō, dominus discessit,** *After accusing the slave* (lit., *the slave having been accused*), *the master departed.*
2. **Oppidīs nostrīs captīs, bellum gerēmus,** *If our towns are captured* (lit., *our towns captured*), *we shall wage war.*

441. Ablative of Means. — Means (or instrument) is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Ratibus trānsībant, *They were trying to cross by means of rafts.*

442. Ablative with Special Verbs. — The ablative is used with a few verbs, notably **potior** and **ūtor,** whose English equivalents govern a direct object.

Castrīs potītī sunt, *They got possession of the camp.*

443. Ablative of Cause. — The ablative of cause is used chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing feeling.

labōrāre iniūriā, *to suffer because of the wrong.*
vīribus cōnfīsī, *relying on their strength.*

444. Ablative of Measure of Difference. — The ablative without a preposition expresses the measure of difference.

Tribus annīs ante eum vīdī, *I saw him three years ago* (lit., *before by three years*).

445. Ablative of Description. — The ablative of description, like the genitive of description, is used with an adjective to describe a noun. It is regularly used to express physical qualities.

hominēs inimīcā faciē, *men with an unfriendly appearance.*

446. Ablative of Place Where. — Place where is regularly expressed by the ablative with **in** (*in, on*). The preposition is omitted, however, with certain words like **locō, locīs,** and **parte,** also in certain fixed expressions like **tōtō orbe terrārum,** *in the whole world.* See also **452.**

447. Ablative of Time. — Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

aestāte, *in summer;* **paucīs diēbus,** *within a few days.*

448. Ablative of Respect. — The ablative of respect (specification) tells in what respect the statement applies.

Nōs superant numerō, nōn animō, *They surpass us in number, not in courage.*

449. Ablative of Accordance. — The ablative is used with a few words to express the idea *in accordance with.*

mōre suō, *in accordance with his custom.*

450. Ablative with *Dignus*. — **Dignus** and **indignus** take the ablative.

dignus patre, *worthy of his father.*

451. Ablative with Prepositions. — The ablative is used with the prepositions **ab, dē, ex, prae, prō, sine, cum;** also with **in** and **sub** when they imply place where, not motion.

LOCATIVE

452. **Domus** and the names of towns and cities require a separate case, called the locative, to express place where. The locative has the same ending as the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions; it has the same ending as the ablative in the plural of these declensions and in the third declension.

domī, *at home;* **Rōmae,** *at Rome;* **Athēnīs,** *at Athens.*

VOCATIVE

453. The vocative is used in direct address. Unless emphatic it never stands first.

Quid facis, amīce? *What are you doing, my friend?*

VERB SYNTAX

TENSES

454. The tenses of the indicative in Latin are in general used like those in English, but the following points are to be noted.

455. Present. — The Latin present has the force of the English simple present and of the progressive present.

Vocat, *He calls,* or *He is calling.*

456. Historical Present. — The historical present is often used for vivid effect in place of a past tense in Latin as in English.

Rōmam proficīscuntur, *They depart for Rome.*

457. *Dum* Clauses. — In clauses introduced by **dum** meaning *while*, the historical present is always used.

dum haec geruntur, *while these things were going on.*

Note. — Distinguish carefully from **dum** meaning *as long as* (**463**) or *until* (**478**).

458. Imperfect. — The Latin imperfect expresses continued or repeated action in the past and is usually best translated by the English progressive past, sometimes by the auxiliary *would*, or by a phrase, such as *used to* or *kept on*.

Pugnābant, *They were fighting.*

459. Perfect. — The Latin perfect is generally equivalent to the English past, occasionally to the present perfect.

Vīcī, *I conquered*, or *I have conquered.*

460. Sequence of Tenses. — The subjunctive mood is used chiefly in subordinate clauses, in which its tenses are determined by the principle of "sequence of tenses," as shown in the following summary:

(*a*) **Primary tenses** (referring to the present or future)
Indicative: present, future, future perfect.
Subjunctive: present, perfect.

(*b*) **Secondary tenses** (referring to the past)
Indicative: imperfect, perfect, past perfect.
Subjunctive: imperfect, past perfect.

Primary indicative tenses are followed by primary subjunctive tenses, secondary by secondary.

Note. — The "historical" present (**456**), used for vivid effect in describing a past action, is often followed by a secondary tense.

INDICATIVE MOOD

461. The indicative mood is generally used in Latin as in English. The following points are to be noted.

462. Relative Clauses. — Most relative clauses are in the indicative, as in English. But see **467, 474, 480.**

463. Adverbial Clauses. — Clauses introduced by **postquam** (*after*), **ubi** and **ut** (*when*), **cum prīmum** and **simul ac** (*as soon as*), **dum** (*while, as long as*), **quamquam** and **etsī** (*although*) are in the indicative.

Postquam id cōnspexit, signum dedit, *After he noticed this, he gave the signal.*

464. Substantive Clauses. — A clause introduced by **quod** (*the fact that, that*) is in the indicative and may be used as subject or object of the main verb or in apposition with a demonstrative.

Grātum est quod mē requīris, *It is gratifying that you miss me.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

465. Volitive Subjunctive. — The volitive (**volō**) subjunctive represents an act as *willed* and is translated by *let*. The negative is **nē**.

Patriam dēfendāmus, *Let us defend our country.*
Nē id videat, *Let him not see it.*

466. Purpose Clauses. — The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause with **ut** or **utī** (negative **nē**) to express the purpose of the act expressed by the principal clause.

Venīmus ut videāmus, *We come that we may see,* or *We come to see.*
Fugit nē videātur, *He flees that he may not be seen.*

467. Relative Purpose Clauses. — If the principal clause contains (or implies) a definite antecedent, the purpose clause may be introduced by the relative pronoun **quī** (= **ut is** or **ut eī**) instead of **ut.**

Mīlitēs mīsit quī hostem impedīrent, *He sent soldiers to hinder the enemy.*

468. *Quō* Purpose Clauses. — If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, **quō** is generally used instead of **ut.**

Accēdit quō facilius audiat, *He approaches in order that he may hear more easily.*

(For other ways to express purpose see **490** (*b*), **491** (*a*), **418.**)

469. Volitive Substantive Clauses. — Clauses in the subjunctive with **ut** (negative **nē**) are used as the objects of such verbs as **moneō, rogō, petō, hortor, persuādeō,** and **imperō.**

1. **Mīlitēs hortātus est ut fortēs essent,** *He urged the soldiers to be brave.*
2. **Helvētiīs persuāsit ut exīrent,** *He persuaded the Helvetians to leave.*

a. **Iubeō** (*order*), unlike **imperō** above, takes the infinitive with subject accusative.

1. **Iussit eōs venīre,** *He ordered them to come.*
2. **Imperāvit eīs ut venīrent,** *He ordered them to come.*

Note. — **Vetō** (*forbid*) and **cupiō** (*desire*) take the same construction as **iubeō.**

470. Clauses after Verbs of Hindering. — Verbs of hindering and preventing, especially **impediō** and **dēterreō,** take the subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **quō minus** if the main clause is affirmative or by **quīn** if negative.

Tū dēterrēre potes nē maior multitūdō trādūcātur, *You can prevent a greater host from being brought over.*

Note. — **Prohibeō** (*prevent*) regularly takes the infinitive.
Caesar prohibuit eōs trānsīre, *Caesar prevented them from crossing.*

471. Clauses of Fear. — Verbs of fearing are followed by clauses in the subjunctive introduced by **nē** (*that, lest*) and **ut** (*that not*).

1. **Verēbātur nē tū aeger essēs,** *He feared that you were sick.*
2. **Timuī ut venīrent,** *I was afraid that they would not come.*

472. Result Clauses. — The result of the action or state of the principal verb is expressed by a subordinate clause with **ut** (**utī**), negative **ut nōn** (**utī nōn**), and the subjunctive.

1. **Tantum est perīculum ut paucī veniant,** *So great is the danger that few are coming.*

2. **Ita bene erant castra mūnīta ut nōn capī possent,** *So well had the camp been fortified that it could not be taken.*

Note. — Result clauses are usually anticipated by some word in the main clause meaning *so* or *such* (**ita, tantus, tot, tam,** etc.).

473. Substantive Clauses of Result. — Verbs meaning *to happen* (**accidō**) or *to cause* or *effect* (**efficiō**) require clauses of result in the subjunctive with **ut** (**utī**) or **ut** (**utī**) **nōn,** used as subject or object of the main verb:

1. **Accidit ut mē nōn vidēret,** *It happened that he did not see me.*
2. **Efficiam ut veniat,** *I shall cause him to come.*

474. Descriptive Relative Clauses. — A relative clause with the subjunctive may be used to describe an otherwise indefinite antecedent. Such clauses are called relative clauses of description (characteristic) and are especially common after such expressions as **ūnus** and **sōlus, sunt quī** (*there are those who*), and **nēmō est quī** (*there is no one who*).

Note. — Sometimes a descriptive clause expresses cause.

475. Descriptive *Cum* Clauses. — In secondary sequence **cum,** *when,* is used with the imperfect or the past perfect subjunctive to describe the situation or the circumstances under which the action of the main verb occurred. Such **cum** clauses are called descriptive **cum** clauses.

Cum mīlitēs redīssent, Caesar ōrātiōnem habuit, *When the soldiers returned, Caesar made a speech.*

476. *Cum* Causal Clauses. — A causal clause introduced by **cum,** meaning *since,* is in the subjunctive.

Quae cum ita sint, nōn ībō, *Since this is so, I shall not go.*

477. *Cum* Adversative Clauses. — An adversative clause introduced by **cum,** meaning *although,* is in the subjunctive.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen nōn ībō, *Although this is so, nevertheless I shall not go.*

Note. — When **ut** means *although, granted that,* its clause is in the subjunctive.

478. Anticipatory Clauses. — **Dum** (*until*), **antequam,** and **priusquam** (*before*) introduce clauses (*a*) in the indicative to denote *an actual fact,* (*b*) in the subjunctive to denote an act *as anticipated.*

1. **Silentium fuit dum tū vēnistī,** *There was silence until you came.*
2. **Caesar exspectāvit dum nāvēs convenīrent,** *Caesar waited until the ships should assemble.*
3. **Priusquam tēlum adigī posset, omnēs fūgērunt,** *Before a weapon could be hurled, all fled.*

479. Indirect Questions. — In a question *indirectly quoted* or expressed after some introductory verb such as *ask, doubt, learn, know, tell, hear,* etc., the verb is in the subjunctive.

Rogant quis sit, *They ask who he is.*

a. The first member of a double indirect question is introduced by **utrum** or **-ne,** the second by **an.**

Quaerō utrum nūntius vērus an falsus sit, *I ask whether the report is true or false.*

480. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. — The verb of a subordinate clause, ordinarily in the indicative, becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse. If the subordinate clause is not felt as a corporate part of the quotation but is merely explanatory or parenthetical, its verb may be in the indicative.

Dīxit sē pecūniam invēnisse quam āmīsisset, *He said that he found the money which he had lost.*

(For verbs in main clauses in indirect discourse, see **479, 486, 494.**)

481. Subjunctive by Attraction. — A verb in the indicative, occurring in a clause dependent upon a subjunctive or an infinitive, is frequently "attracted" to the subjunctive, especially if it constitutes a corporate part of the statement.

Dat negōtium hīs utī ea quae apud Belgās gerantur cognōscant, *He directs them to learn what is going on among the Belgians.*

482. *Quod* Causal Clauses. — Causal clauses introduced by **quod** (or **propterea quod**) and **quoniam,** *since, because,* are in the indicative when they convey the writer's or speaker's reason, the subjunctive when the reason is presented as that of another person.

1. **Amīcō grātiās ēgī quod mihi pecūniam dederat,** *I thanked my friend because he had given me money.*

2. **Rōmānīs bellum intulit quod agrōs suōs vāstāvissent,** *He made war against the Romans because (as he alleged) they had laid waste his lands.*

483. OUTLINE OF CONDITIONS

a. Subordinate clause ("condition") introduced by **sī, nisi,** or **sī nōn.**

b. Principal clause ("conclusion").

I. Simple (nothing implied as to truth)

Any possible combination of tenses of the indicative, as in English.

Sī mē laudat, laetus sum, *If he praises me, I am glad.*

II. Contrary to Fact

1. *Present:* imperfect subjunctive in both clauses.
2. *Past:* past perfect subjunctive in both clauses.

1. **Sī mē laudāret, laetus essem,** *If he were praising me* (but he isn't), *I should be glad* (now).

2. **Sī mē laudāvisset, laetus fuissem,** *If he had praised me* (but he didn't), *I should have been glad* (then).

III. **Future Less Vivid** ("should," "would")

Present subjunctive in both clauses.

Sī mē laudet, laetus sim, *If he should praise me, I should be glad.*

REFLEXIVE USE OF THE PASSIVE

484. Occasionally the passive form of a verb or participle is used in a "middle" or reflexive sense: **armārī,** *to arm themselves.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

485. Affirmative commands are expressed by the imperative; negative commands by the present imperative of **nōlō (nōlī, nōlīte)** and the infinitive.

Amā tuōs inimīcōs, *Love your enemies.*
Nōlīte īre, *Do not go* (lit., *be unwilling to go*).

486. Exhortations (volitive subjunctive, **465**) and commands (**485**), though main clauses, become subjunctive in indirect discourse.

1. (Direct) **Īte!** *Go!*
2. (Indirect) **Dīxit īrent,** *He said that they should go.*

PARTICIPLES

487. The tenses of the participle (present, perfect, future) denote time *present, past,* or *future* from the standpoint of the main verb.

488. (*a*) Perfect participles are often used as simple adjectives: **nōtus,** *known.*

(*b*) Participles, like adjectives, may be used substantively: **factum,** "having been done," *deed.*

489. The Latin participle is often a *one-word substitute* for a subordinate clause in English introduced by *who* or *which* (relative), *when* or *after* (temporal), *since* or *because* (causal), *although* (adversative), and *if* (conditional).

FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

490. The future passive participle (gerundive) is a verbal adjective, having thirty forms. It has two distinct uses:

(*a*) As a predicate adjective with forms of **sum**,[1] when it naturally indicates, as in English, *what must be done*. The person upon whom the obligation rests is in the dative (**425**).

Caesarī omnia erant agenda, *Caesar had to do all things* (lit., *all things were to be done by Caesar*).

(*b*) With phrases introduced either by **ad** and the accusative or by **causā** (or **grātiā**) and the genitive to express purpose.

1. **Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Mārcus dēligitur,** *Marcus is chosen to accomplish these things* (lit., *for these things to be accomplished*).

2. **Caesaris videndī causā** (or **grātiā**) **vēnit,** *He came for the sake of seeing Caesar* (lit., *for the sake of Caesar to be seen*).

Note. — **Causā** and **grātiā** are always placed after the participle.

GERUND

491. The gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension with only four forms — genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

(*a*) The gerund, like the future passive participle, is used with **ad, causā**, or **grātiā** to express purpose:

1. **Ad discendum vēnimus,** *We have come for learning* (i.e. *to learn*).

2. **Discendī causā** (or **grātiā**) **vēnimus,** *We have come for the sake of learning.*

(*b*) The gerund may also be used in the genitive to limit a noun or adjective:

cupidus bellandī, *desirous of waging war.*

[1] The so-called passive periphrastic, a term not used in this book. The term should be avoided because it is not only useless but troublesome.

INFINITIVES

492. The infinitive is a verbal noun, and as such it may be used as the subject of a verb.

1. **Errāre hūmānum est,** *To err is human.*
2. **Vidēre est crēdere,** *To see is to believe.*

493. With many verbs the infinitive may be used as a direct object, like other nouns. (This is sometimes called the complementary infinitive.)

Parat cōpiās movēre, *He prepares to move the troops.*

494. Statements that convey indirectly the thoughts or words of another, used as the objects of verbs of **saying, thinking, knowing, hearing, perceiving,** and the like, require subjects in the accusative and verbs in the infinitive.

1. (Direct) **Dīcit, "Puerī veniunt,"** *He says, "The boys are coming."*
2. (Indirect) **Dīcit puerōs venīre,** *He says that the boys are coming.*

(*a.*) With the passive third singular (impersonal) of these verbs the infinitive is the subject.

Caesarī nūntiātur eōs trānsīre, *It is reported to Caesar that they are crossing.*

495. 1. The present infinitive represents time or action as *going on,* from the standpoint of the introductory verb:

Dīcit / Dīxit **eōs pugnāre,** *He* {*says / said*} *(that) they* {*are / were*} *fighting.*

2. The future infinitive represents time or action as *subsequent to* that of the introductory verb:

Dīcit / Dīxit **eōs pugnātūrōs esse,** *He* {*says / said*} *(that) they* {*will / would*} *fight.*

3. The perfect infinitive represents time or action as *completed before* that of the introductory verb:

Dīcit / Dīxit **eōs pugnāvisse,** *He* {*says / said*} *(that) they* {*have / had*} *fought.*

SUMMARY OF PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES

496. PREFIXES

A great many Latin words are formed by joining prefixes (**prae,** *in front;* **fīxus,** *attached*) to *root* words. These same prefixes, most of which are prepositions, are those chiefly used in English, and by their use many new words are continually being formed.

Some prefixes change their final consonants to make them like the initial consonants of the words to which they are attached. This change is called assimilation (**ad,** *to;* **similis,** *like*).

Many prefixes in Latin and English may have intensive force, especially **con-, ex-, ob-, per-.** They are then best translated either by an English intensive, as *up* or *out,* or by an adverb, as *completely, thoroughly, deeply.* Thus **commoveō** means *move greatly,* **permagnus,** *very great,* **obtineō,** *hold on to,* **concitō,** *rouse up,* **excipiō,** *catch, receive.*

1. **ab** (**abs, ā**), *from:* **abs-tineō**; *ab-undance, abs-tain, a-vocation.*
2. **ad,** *to, toward:* **ad-iciō**; *ac-curate, an-nounce, ap-paratus, ad-vocate.*
3. **ante,** *before:* **ante-cēdō**; *ante-cedent.*
4. **bene,** *well:* **bene-dīcō**; *bene-factor.*
5. **bi-, bis-,** *twice, two:* **bi-ennium**; *bi-ennial.*
6. **circum,** *around:* **circum-eō**; *circum-ference.*
7. **con-,** *with, together:* **con-vocō**; *con-voke, col-lect, com-motion, cor-rect.*
8. **contrā,** *against: contra-dict.*
9. **dē,** *from, down from, not:* **dē-ferō**; *de-ter.*
10. **dis-,** *apart, not:* **dis-cēdō**; *dis-locate, dif-fuse, di-vert.*
11. **ex** (**ē**), *out of, from:* **ex-eō**; *ex-port, e-dit, ef-fect.*
12. **extrā,** *outside: extra-legal.*

13. **in,** *in, into, against:* **in-dūcō**; *in-habit, im-migrant, il-lusion, en-chant.*

14. **in-,** *not, un-:* **im-mēnsus**; *il-legal, im-moral, ir-regular.*

15. **inter,** *between, among:* **inter-clūdō**; *inter-class.*

16. **intrā,** *within, inside:* *intra-collegiate.*

17. **intrō-,** *within:* *intro-duce.*

18 **male,** *ill:* *male-factor, mal-formation.*

19. **multi-,** *much, many:* *multi-graph.*

20. **nōn,** *not:* *non-sense.*

21. **ob,** *against, toward:* **ob-tineō**; *oc-cur, of-fer, o-mit, op-pose, ob-tain.*

22. **per,** *through, thoroughly:* **per-moveō**; *per-fect.*

23. **post,** *after:* *post-pone.*

24. **prae,** *before, in front of:* **prae-ficiō**; *pre-cede.*

25. **prō,** *for, forward:* **prō-dūcō**; *pro-mote.*

26. **re-** (**red-**), *back, again:* **re-dūcō, red-igō**; *re-fer.*

27. **sē-,** *apart from:* **sē-cēdō**; *se-parate.*

28. **sēmi-,** *half, partly:* **sēmi-barbarus**; *semi-annual.*

29. **sub,** *under, up from under:* **suc-cēdō**; *suf-fer, sug-gest, sup-port, sub-let.*

30. **super** (**sur-**), *over, above:* **super-sum**; *super-fluous, sur-mount.*

31. **trāns** (**trā-**), *through, across:* **trā-dūcō**; *trans-fer.*

32. **ultrā,** *extremely:* *ultra-fashionable.*

33. **ūn-** (**ūni-**) *one:* *uni-form.*

497. SUFFIXES

Particles which are attached to the ends of words are called suffixes (**sub,** *under, after;* **fixus,** *attached*). Like the Latin prefixes, the Latin suffixes play a very important part in the formation of English words.

The meaning of suffixes is often far less definite than that of prefixes. In many cases they merely indicate the part of speech.

Suffixes are often added to words which already have suffixes. So *functionalistically* has six suffixes, all of Latin or Greco-Latin origin except the last. A suffix often combines with a preceding letter or letters to form a new suffix. This is especially true of suffixes added to perfect participles

whose base ends in **-s-** or **-t-**. In the following list no account is taken of such English suffixes as *-ant*, derived from the ending of the Latin present participle.

1. **-ālis** (*-al*), *pertaining to:* **līber-ālis**; *annu-al.*
2. **-ānus** (*-an, -ane, -ain*), *pertaining to:* **Rōm-ānus**; *capt-ain, hum-ane.*
3. **-āris** (*-ar*), *pertaining to:* **famili-āris**; *singul-ar.*
4. **-ārium** (*-arium, -ary*), *place where: aqu-arium, gran-ary.*
5. **-ārius** (*-ary*), *pertaining to:* **frūment-ārius**; *ordin-ary.*
6. **-āticum** (*-age*): *bagg-age.*
7. **-faciō, -ficō** (*-fy*), *make:* **cōn-ficiō**; *satis-fy.*
8. **-ia** (*-y*), **-cia, -tia** (*-ce*), **-antia** (*-ance, -ancy*), **-entia,** (*-ence, -ency*), *condition of:* **memor-ia, grā-tia, cōnst-antia, sent-entia**; *memor-y, provin-ce, gra-ce, const-ancy, sent-ence.*
9. **-icus** (*-ic*), *pertaining to:* **pūbl-icus**; *civ-ic.*
10. **-idus** (*-id*), *having the quality of:* **rap-idus**; *flu-id.*
11. **-ilis** (*-ile, -il*), **-bilis** (*-ble, -able, -ible*), *able to be:* **fac-ilis, laudā-bilis**; *fert-ile, no-ble, compar-able, terr-ible.*
12. **-īnus** (*-ine*), *pertaining to:* **mar-īnus**; *div-ine.*
13. **-iō** (*-ion*), **-siō** (*-sion*), **-tiō** (*-tion*), *act* or *state of:* **reg-iō, mān-siō, ōrā-tiō**; *commun-ion, ten-sion, rela-tion.*
14. **-ium** (*-y*), **-cium, -tium** (*-ce*): **remed-ium, sōlā-cium, pre-tium**; *stud-y, edifi-ce.*
15. **-īvus** (*-ive*), *pertaining to:* **capt-īvus**; *nat-ive.*
16. **-men** (*-men, -min-, -me*): **lū-men**; *cri-min-al, cri-me.*
17. **-mentum** (*-ment*), *means of:* **im-pedī-mentum**; *comple-ment.*
18. **-or** (*-or*), *state of:* **tim-or**; *terr-or.*
19. **-or, -sor, -tor** (*-sor, -tor*), *one who:* **scrīp-tor**; *inven-tor.*
20. **-ōrium** (*-orium, -ory, -or*), *place where: audit-orium, fact-ory, mirr-or.*
21. **-ōsus** (*-ous, -ose*), *full of:* **ōti-ōsus**; *copi-ous.*
22. **-tās** (*-ty*), *state of:* **līber-tās**; *integri-ty.*
23. **-tūdō** (*-tude*), *state of:* **magni-tūdō**; *multi-tude.*
24. **-tūs** (*-tue*), *state of:* **vir-tūs**; *vir-tue.*
25. **-ūra, -sūra, -tūra** (*-ure, -sure, -ture*): **fig-ūra, mēn-sūra, agricul-tūra**; *proced-ure, pres-sure, na-ture.*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The English pronunciation of proper names is indicated by a simple system. The vowels are as follows: ā as in *hate*, ă as in *hat*, ē as in *feed*, ĕ as in *fed*, ī as in *bite*, ĭ as in *bit*, ō as in *hope*, ŏ as in *hop*, ū as in *cute*, ŭ as in *cut*. In the ending *ēs* the *s* is soft as in *rose*. When the accented syllable ends in a consonant, the vowel is short; otherwise, it is long.

A

A., *abbreviation for* **Aulus, –ī, Au'lus**, *a Roman name.*

ā, ab, abs, *prep. w. abl.*, from, away from, by; *adv.*, away.

abdō, –dere, –didī, –ditus, put away, hide.

abdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead away.

abeō, –īre, –iī, –itus, go away, depart.

abiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, throw away, throw down, hurl.

abiēs, –ietis, *f.*, fir.

abrogō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, repeal, annul.

abs, *see* **ā, ab, abs.**

abscīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus, cut away, cut off, cut.

absēns, *gen.*, **absentis,** absent.

absentia, –ae, *f.*, absence.

absimilis, –e, unlike.

abstineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, hold *or* keep away; refrain, abstain.

absum, –esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away, be absent, be distant.

ac, *see* **atque.**

Acadēmia, –ae, *f.*, the Academy, *a gymnasium near Athens.*

accēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, approach; be added.

accelerō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hasten, make haste.

accidō, –ere, accidī, —, fall (to), befall, happen (*w. dat.*).

accīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus, cut into, cut partly through.

accipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, receive, hear.

acclīvis, –e, ascending.

acclīvitās, –tātis, *f.*, ascent, slope.

accommodō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, accommodate, fit on, adjust.

accumbō, –ere, –cubuī, –cubitus, recline (at table).

accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully.

accurrō, –ere, –currī *or* **–cucurrī, –cursus,** run to, run (towards), ride up.

accūsō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, blame, accuse.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, fierce.

acerbē, *adv.*, bitterly, painfully; **acerbius ferre,** suffer too severely from.

acerbitās, –tātis, *f.*, bitterness, severity; *pl.*, sufferings.

acerbus, –a, –um, bitter, disagreeable.

acervus, –ī, *m.*, pile, heap.

Achāia, –ae, *f.*, Achaia (Akā'ya), Greece.

aciēs, aciēī, *f.*, battle line.
ācriter, *comp.*, **ācrius,** *superl.*, **ācerrimē,** *adv.*, sharply, fiercely.
Acropolis, –is, *f.*, the Acrŏp'olis, *a hill in Athens.*
Actium, –tī, *n.*, Actium (Ak'shĭum), *a promontory in Epirus.*
acūmen, acūminis, *n.*, keenness.
acūtus, –a, –um, sharpened, sharp.
ad, *prep. w. acc.*, to, toward, for, near, at, until, after; *adv., w. numbers,* about.
adāctus, –a, –um, *part. of* **adigō.**
adaequō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make equal; be equal, equal.
Adam (*indeclinable*), Adam.
addō, –dere, –didī, –ditus, add.
addūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead to, pull in, bring, lead up, influence.
adeō, –īre, –iī, –itus, go to, approach.
adeō, *adv.*, to such a degree, so much.
adfore, *fut. inf. of* **adsum.**
adhaereō, –ēre, –haesī, –haesus, stick *or* cling to.
adhibeō, –ēre, –hibuī, –hibitus, hold toward, apply, employ, summon.
adhortor, –ārī, –ātus sum, encourage.
adhūc, *adv.*, up to this time.
adiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, throw to, add.
adigō, –igere, –ēgī, –āctus, drive to, bring to, bring near, hurl (to).
adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum, arrive at, gain.
aditus, –ūs, *m.*, approach, meeting, way of approach, access.
adiungō, –ere, –iūnxī, –iūnctus, join to, win over.
adiūtor, –ōris, *m.*, helper, mediator.
adiuvō, –āre, –iūvī, –iūtus, help, be of assistance, support.
administer, –trī, *m.*, minister.
administrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, manage, perform, carry on.
admīrātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, admiration, wonder.
admīror, –ārī, –ātus sum, wonder (at), admire.
admittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, admit, commit, allow (*something to be done*).
admodum, *adv.*, to a high degree, very much, about.
admoneō, –ēre, –monuī, –monitus, remind, warn, advise.
adolēscō, –ere, adolēvī, adultus, grow up, become full-grown.
adoptiō, –ōnis, *f.*, adoption.
adoptō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, choose, adopt (*of a child*).
adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, rise, rise against, attack.
adōrnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, decorate, adorn.
adsum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus, be near, be present, come, attend.
adulēscēns, –entis, *m.*, a youth.
adventus, –ūs, *m.*, (a coming to), arrival.
adversus, –a, –um, facing, opposite; **adversō colle,** up the hill.
adversus, *prep. w. acc.*, against, opposed to.
advolō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, fly to, hasten, rush.
aedēs, –ium, *f. pl.*, dwelling, home.

aedificium, –cī, *n.*, building, house.
aedificō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, build.
aedīlitās, –tātis, *f.*, office of an aedile, aedileship.
aeger, –gra, –grum, sick.
aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty, barely, reluctantly.
Aegyptus, –ī, *f.*, Egypt.
Aelia, –ae, *f.*, Aelia (Ē′lia), *a Roman name;* **Aelius, –lī,** *m.*, Aelius (Ē′lius), *a Roman name.*
Aemiliānus, –ī, *m.*, Aemilianus (Ēmiliā′nus), *a Roman name.*
Aemilius, Aemilī, *m.*, Aemilius (Ēmĭl′ius), *a Roman name.*
aequāliter, *adv.*, evenly, uniformly.
Aequī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Aequians (Ē′quians), *a people of Italy.*
aequinoctium, –tī, *n.*, equinox (*the time when day and night are equal*).
aequitās, –tātis, *f.*, contentment.
aequō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make equal.
aequus, –a, –um, even, equal, fair, just, calm; **aequō animō,** calmly.
aes, aeris, *n.*, bronze, money; **aes aliēnum,** (another's money), debt.
Aesculāpius, –pī, *m.*, Aesculapius (Esculā′pius), *god of healing.*
Aesopus, –ī, *m.*, Aesop (Ē′sop), *writer of fables.*
aestās, –tātis, *f.*, heat, summer.
aestimātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, valuation, estimate.
aestuārium, –rī, *n.*, inlet (*where the tide flows in*), salt marsh.
aestus, –ūs, *m.*, heat; swell, tide.
aetās, –tātis, *f.*, age, time of life.
aeternitās, –tātis, *f.*, immortality.
aeternus, –a, –um, everlasting, eternal.
Aethiopēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Ethiopians, *a people of Africa.*
afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, bring (to *or* against), assign, report.
afficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, affect, afflict with, visit with, fill (with joy).
affīgō, –ere, –fīxī, –fīxus, fasten to, attach.
afflictō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, dash against, strand, wreck.
afflīgō, –ere, –flīxī, –flīctus, strike against, afflict, damage, overthrow.
Āfrica, –ae, *f.*, Africa; **Āfricānus, –a, –um,** African; **Āfricānus, –ī,** *m.*, Africā′nus, *an honorary name of Scipio.*
Āfricus, –a, –um, African; *as noun* (*sc.* **ventus**), *m.*, southwest wind (*blowing from Africa to Italy*).
Agamemnon, –onis, *m.*, Agamem′non, *a Greek king.*
Agēnor, –oris, *m.*, Agenor (Ajē′nor), *a Greek name.*
ager, agrī, *m.*, field, land, country, farm.
agger, aggeris, *m.*, heap, mound; dike, rampart; siege terrace; material for a rampart.
aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, attack.
aggregō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, collect (into a herd), attach.
agmen, agminis, *n.*, line of march, column; **novissimum agmen,** rear; **prīmum agmen,** van *or* front.

agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, advance; live *or* spend (*of time*); do, act, perform; treat, discuss, plead (*with* **causam**); get on; **bellum agere,** carry on war; **grātiās agere,** thank.

Agora, –ae, *f.*, the Ăg′ora, *the market of Athens.*

agricola, –ae, *m.*, farmer.

Agrippa, –ae, *m.*, Agrip′pa, *a Roman name.*

āh! *interj.*, ah! **aha!** *interj.*, aha!

āla, –ae, *f.*, wing.

alacer, –cris, –cre, eager, ready.

alacritās, –tātis, *f.*, eagerness, spirit.

Albānus, –a, –um, Alban; *as noun, m. pl.*, the Albans, inhabitants of Alba.

albus, –a, –um, white.

alcēs, –is, *f.*, elk.

Alesia, –ae, *f.*, Alē′sia, *a town of the Mandubii, now* Alise-Sainte-Reine.

Alexander, –drī, *m.*, Alexander, *a Macedonian king.*

Alexandrīa, –ae, *f.*, Alexandria, *a city of Egypt.*

algeō, –ēre, alsī, —, shiver, feel cold.

aliās, *adv.*, at another time, otherwise; **aliās . . . aliās,** at one time . . . at another time.

aliēnus, –a, –um, another's, unfavorable, foreign, out of place.

aliō, *adv.*, to another place, elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for some time, awhile.

aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time or other, at length.

aliquis, aliquid, some one, some, any, something, anything.

aliter, *adv.*, otherwise.

alius, alia, aliud, other, another; **aliuș . . . alius,** one . . . another; **aliī . . . aliī,** some . . . others.

Allia, –ae, *f.*, the Ăl′lia River, *in Italy.*

Allobrogēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Allobroges (Allŏb′rojēs), *a Gallic tribe.*

Almō, –ōnis, *m.*, the Almo River, *in Italy.*

alō, –ere, aluī, alitus, feed, nourish, support, raise.

Alpēs, –ium, *f.*, the Alps.

alter, altera, alterum, the other (*of two*), another, second; **alter . . . alter,** the one . . . the other.

altitūdō, –dinis, *f.*, height, altitude, depth, thickness; **in altitūdinem,** in height (depth).

altus, –a, –um, high, deep, tall; **in altō,** in deep water.

amābilis, –e, lovely, worthy of love.

amāns, *gen.*, **amantis,** loving; *as noun,* lover.

amanter, *adv.*, lovingly.

Ambarrī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ambar′rī, *a Gallic tribe.*

Ambarvālia, –ium, *n. pl.*, the Ambarvā′lia, *a festival.*

Ambiānī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ambiā′nī, *a Belgian tribe.*

Ambiliātī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ambiliā′tī, *a Gallic tribe.*

Ambiorīx, –īgis, *m.*, Ambī′orix, *king of the Eburones.*

ambō, –ae, –ō, both.

Ambrōnēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Ambrō′nēs, *a Gallic tribe.*

ambulō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, walk.
amīcitia, –ae, *f.*, friendship.
amīcus, –a, –um, friendly; **amīcus, –ī,** *m.*, friend; **amīca, –ae,** *f.*, (girl) friend.
āmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go, lose.
amō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, love, like.
amor, –ōris, *m.*, love, affection.
amphitheātrum, –ī, *n.*, amphitheater.
amplē, fully; *comp.*, **amplius,** more.
amplificō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, increase, extend.
amplitūdō, –dinis, *f.*, size, breadth.
amplus, –a, –um, of great extent, numerous; distinguished, magnificent.
an, *conj.*, or, *introducing the second part of a double question;* **utrum (–ne) . . . an,** whether . . . or.
Ancalitēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Ancăl'itēs, *a tribe in Britain.*
anceps, *gen.*, **ancipitis,** indecisive, double; **proelium anceps,** battle on two fronts.
ancīle, –is, *n.*, shield.
ancora, –ae, *f.*, anchor; **in ancorīs,** at anchor.
Ancus, –ī, *m.*, Ăn'cus, *a king of Rome.*
Andecombogius, –gī, *m.*, Andecombō'gius, *a leader of the Remi.*
Andēs, –ium, *m. pl.*, the An'dēs, *a Gallic tribe.*
Androclus, –ī, *m.*, An'droclus, *name of a Roman slave.*
angulus, –ī, *m.*, corner, angle.
angustē, *adv.*, narrowly, in close quarters.
angustiae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, narrowness, narrow place, narrow pass, defile; difficulty, perplexity.
angustus, –a, –um, narrow, small, difficult; **in angustō,** at a crisis.
anima, –ae, *f.*, breath, spirit, soul.
animadvertō, –ere, –vertī, –versus, notice; punish (*w.* **in** *and acc.*).
animal, –ālis, *n.*, living being, animal.
animus, –ī, *m.*, soul, mind, spirit, courage, feeling, pastime; **in animō esse,** intend.
Aniō, Aniēnis, *m.*, the Ăn'io River, *in Latium.*
annus, –ī, *m.*, year.
annuus, –a, –um, yearly, annual.
ānser, –eris, *m.*, goose.
ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, before (*of time and space*), ago.
anteā, *adv.*, before.
antecēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, precede, march in advance; surpass.
anteferō, –ferre, –tulī, –lātus, bear before, place before; prefer.
antemna, –ae, *f.*, sail yard.
Antiochus, –ī, *m.*, Antiochus (Ăntī'okŭs), *an Oriental king.*
antīquitās, –tātis, *f.*, antiquity.
antīquus, –a, –um, ancient, of old.
Antistius, –tī, *m.*, Antis'tius, *a Roman name.*
Antōnīnus, –ī, *m.*, Antonī'nus, *a Roman name.*
Antōnius, –nī, *m.*, Antony, *a Roman name, esp.* Mark Antony.
ānulus, –ī, *m.*, ring.
anus, –ūs, *f.*, old woman.
Ap., *abbreviation for* **Appius, Appī,** *m.*, Ăp'pius, *a Roman name.*
aperiō, –īre, –peruī, –pertus, open, disclose.

apertē, *adv.*, openly, manifestly.

apertus, –a, –um, open, unprotected, exposed, unimpeded; **apertum latus,** exposed flank (*usually the right, which was not protected by shields*).

Apollō, –inis, *m.*, Apŏl'lo, *god of music, prophecy, and medicine.*

appāreō, –ēre, –pāruī, –pāritūrus, appear, become visible.

appellō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, call, call upon, name, speak to.

appellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus, drive to, bring up; *passive,* land.

appetō, –ere, –petīvī, –petītus, seek for, approach.

Appius, –a, –um, of Appius, Ăp'pian; **Appius, Appī,** *m.*, Ăp'pius, *a Roman name.*

applicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, apply to; **sē applicāre ad,** lean against.

appropinquō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, draw near to, approach (*w. dat.*).

Aprīlis, –e, of April.

apud, *prep. w. acc.*, among, at the house of, near, with.

Apūlia, –ae, *f.*, Apū'liă, *a district in Italy.*

aqua, –ae, *f.*, water.

aquila, –ae, *f.*, eagle; standard *of a legion, a silver eagle mounted on a staff.*

Aquileia, –ae, *f.*, Aquilē'ia, *a town of Cisalpine Gaul.*

aquilifer, –erī, *m.*, eagle-bearer, standard-bearer.

Aquītānia, –ae, *f.*, Aquitā'nia, *part of Gaul.*

Aquītānus, –a, –um, Aquitā'nian; *as noun, m.*, an Aquitā'nian.

Arar, –aris, *acc.* **–im,** *abl.* **–ī,** *m.*, the Arar River, *now* the Saône, *a branch of the Rhone.*

arbitrium, –trī, *n.*, decision, judgment; pleasure.

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, think, believe.

arbor, –oris, *f.*, tree.

arcessō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus, cause to come, summon.

Ardea, –ae, *f.*, Ar'dea, *a town in Italy.*

arduus, –a, –um, steep, hard.

ārea, –ae, *f.*, courtyard.

ārēna, –ae, *f.*, sand, arena.

Arēopagus, –ī, *m.*, the Areŏp'agus, *the highest judicial assembly of the Athenians, which met on Mars' Hill.*

argentum, –ī, *n.*, silver.

Argīlētum, –ī, *n.*, the Argiletum (Arjilē'tum), *a street in Rome.*

argilla, –ae, *f.*, clay.

argūmentum, –ī, *n.*, argument, proof.

āridus, –a, –um, dry; *as noun, n.*, dry land.

ariēs, –ietis, *m.*, ram, battering ram.

Arīminum, –ī, *n.*, Arĭm'inum, *a town in Italy.*

Ariovistus, –ī, *m.*, Ariovĭs'tus, *a German king.*

Aristīdēs, –is, *m.*, Aristī'dēs, *a Greek statesman.*

Aristotolēs, –is, *m.*, Ăr'istŏtle, *a Greek philosopher.*

arma, –ōrum, *n. pl.*, weapons, arms, armor, equipment.

armāmenta, –ōrum, *n. pl.*, implements; equipment, rigging.

armātūra, –ae, *f.*, armor, equipment; **levis armātūrae,** light-armed.

Arminius, –nī, *m.*, Armĭn'ius, *a German chief.*

armō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, arm, equip.

Arria, –ae, *f.*, Ăr'ria, *a Roman name.*

arripiō, –ere, –ripuī, –reptus, seize, snatch.

arrogantia, –ae, *f.*, arrogance, insolence.

Arrūns, –untis, *m.*, Ăr'runs, *an Etruscan.*

ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art.

articulus, –ī, *m.*, joint.

artifex, –ficis, *m.*, artist.

artificium, –cī, *n.*, employment, handicraft.

Arvālēs (Frātrēs), Arval Brothers, *twelve priests who yearly made offerings to the spirits of the field.*

Arvernus, –a, –um, Arver'nian; *as noun, m.*, an Arver'nian; *pl.*, the Arver'nians, *a Gallic tribe.*

arvum, –ī, *n.*, cultivated land.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel.

ascendō, –ere, ascendī, ascēnsus, climb (up), mount, ascend; *w.* **nāvem,** embark.

ascēnsus, –ūs, *m.*, ascent.

ascīscō, ascīscere, ascīvī, ascītus, attach (*to oneself*), receive.

ascrībō, –ere, ascrīpsī, ascrīptus, add to (*in writing*), apply.

Asia, –ae, *f.*, Asia.

aspectus, –ūs, *m.*, sight, look, aspect.

aspis, aspidis, *f.*, asp, viper.

assiduus, –a, –um, constant.

assistō, –ere, astitī, —, stand near.

assuēfaciō, –ere, –fēcī, –factus, make accustomed, train.

assurgō, –surgere, –surrēxī, –surrēctus, rise, stand up.

astrum, –ī, *n.*, star.

at, *conj.*, but, on the other hand.

āter, ātra, ātrum, black.

Athēna, –ae, *f.*, Athena, *Greek goddess of wisdom, corresponding to the Roman Minerva.*

Athēnae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens.

Athēniēnsis, –e, Athē'nian.

Athēniēnsēs, –ium, *m. pl.*, the Athē'nians, the people of Athens.

Athenodōrus, –ī, *m.*, Athenodō'rus, *a Greek philosopher.*

atomus, –ī, *f.*, atom.

atque (ac), *conj.*, and, as, than.

ātrāmentum, –ī, *n.*, ink.

Atrebās, –ātis, *m.*, an Atrebatian (Atrebā'shian); *pl.*, the Atrebatians, *or* Atrebā'tēs, *a Belgian tribe.*

ātrium, ātrī, *n.*, atrium, hall, house.

Ātrius, Ātrī, *m.*, A'trius, *a Roman name.*

Attalus, –ī, *m.*, Ăt'talus.

Atticus, –a, –um, Attic, Athenian.

attingō, –ere, –tigī, –tāctus, touch, reach.

attribuō, –ere, –tribuī, –tribūtus, assign, give.

Atuatucī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Atuatuci (Atuăt'usī), *a Belgian tribe.*

au! *interj.*, oh! ouch!

auctor, –ōris, *m.*, maker, author, adviser.

auctōritās, –tātis, *f.*, authority, influence.

audācia, –ae, *f.*, boldness.

audācter, *adv.*, boldly, recklessly.

audāx, –ācis, daring, rash.
audeō, –ēre, ausus sum, *semideponent,* dare, venture.
audiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, hear, hear of.
auferō, –ferre, abstulī, ablātus, take away, rob.
augeō, –ēre, auxī, auctus, increase.
augustus, –a, –um, majestic, magnificent; (*cap.*) of Augustus; **Augustus, –ī,** *m.*, Augus'tus, *the emperor.*
Aulercus, –ī, *m.*, an Auler'can; *pl.*, the Auler'cans, *a Gallic tribe.*
aura, –ae, *f.*, breeze.
Aurēlius, –lī, *m.*, Aurē'lius, *a Roman name.*
aureus, –a, –um, of gold, golden.
aurīga, –ae, *m.*, charioteer.
auris, –is, *f.*, ear.
aurum, –ī, *n.*, gold.
Aurunculeius, –ī, *m.*, Aurunculē'ius, *a Roman name.*
auspicium, –cī, *n.*, sign, omen; *pl.*, auspices.
aut, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.
autem, *conj.* (*never first word*), however, moreover, on the other hand.
auxilior, –ārī, –ātus sum, aid, help.
auxilium, –lī, *n.*, help, aid, assistance; *pl.*, reinforcements.
avārus, –a, –um, greedy, grasping.
Aventīnus (mōns), –ī, *m.*, the Aventīne Hill, *one of the seven hills of Rome.*
Avernus, –a, –um, of the lower world (*referring to Lake Avernus, the supposed entrance to the lower world*).
āversus, –a, –um, turned away; in the rear, retreating.
āvertō, –ere, āvertī, āversus, turn away, turn aside.
avidus, –a, –um, desirous, eager.
avis, –is, *f.*, bird.
Avītus, –ī, *m.*, Avī'tus, *a Roman name.*
avunculus, –ī, *m.*, uncle.
avus, –ī, *m.*, grandfather.
Axona, –ae, *m.*, the Axona River, *now* the Aisne, *in France.*

B

Baculus, –ī, *m.*, Băc'ulus, *a Roman name.*
bah! *interj.*, bah!
balneum, –ī, *n.*, bath.
balteus, –ī, *m.*, belt, sword belt.
Balventius, –tī, *m.*, Balventius (Balven'shius), *a Roman centurion.*
barba, –ae, *f.*, beard.
barbarus, –a, –um, foreign, barbarous.
barbarus, –ī, *m.*, a barbarian.
beātus, –a, –um, happy, prosperous.
Belgae, –ārum, *m. pl.*, the Belgians.
Belgium, –gī, *n.*, Belgium.
bellicōsus, –a, –um, warlike.
bellō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, carry on war, fight.
Bellovacī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Bellovaci (Bellŏv'asī), *a Belgian tribe.*
bellum, –ī, *n.*, war; **bellum gerere,** wage *or* carry on war.
bellus, –a, –um, beautiful, fine.
bene, *adv.*, well, well done; *comp.*, **melius,** better; *superl.*, **optimē,** best.

beneficium, –cī, *n.*, kindness.

Bēstia, –ae, *m.*, Bĕs′tia, *a Roman name.*

bibliothēca, –ae, *f.*, library.

bibō, –ere, bibī, —, drink.

Bibracte, –actis, *n.*, Bibrăc′te, *the chief town of the Haeduans.*

Bibrax, –actis, *f.*, Bī′brax, *a town of the Remi.*

Bibrocī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Bibroci (Bĭb′rosī), *a British tribe.*

Bibulus, –ī, *m.*, Bĭb′ulus, *a Roman name.*

bīduum, –ī, *n.*, period of two days, two days.

biennium, –nī, *n.*, period of two years, two years.

Bilbiō, –ōnis, *m.*, Bil′bio, *a Roman name.*

bīnī, –ae, –a, *pl. adj.*, two by two, two at a time, two apiece.

bipertītō, *adv.*, in two divisions.

bis, *adv.*, twice.

Bocchus, –ī, *m.*, Boc′chus, *father-in-law of Jugurtha.*

Boduognātus, –ī, *m.*, Boduognā′tus, *a chief of the Nervians.*

Boiī, Boiōrum, *m. pl.*, the Boi′ī, *a Gallic tribe.*

bonitās, –tātis, *f.*, goodness, richness, fertility.

bonus, –a, –um, good; *comp.*, **melior, melius,** better; *superl.*, **optimus, –a, –um,** best.

bōs, bovis, *m. and f.*, ox, cow.

bracchium, bracchī, *n.*, arm.

Brātuspantium, –tī, *n.*, Bratuspantium (Brătuspăn′shium), *a town of the Bellovaci.*

brevis, –e, short, brief.

brevitās, –tātis, *f.*, shortness, brevity; small stature.

Britannī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Britons.

Britannia, –ae, *f.*, Britain.

Britannicus, –a, –um, British.

brūma, –ae, *f.*, winter solstice, winter.

Brundisium, –sī, *n.*, Brundisium (Brundizh′ium), *a town in Italy.*

Brūtus, –ī, *m.*, Brutus: (1) Lucius Junius Brutus, *first consul;* (2) Marcus Junius Brutus, *one of Caesar's assassins;* (3) Decimus Junius Brutus, *another of Caesar's assassins.*

Būcephalum, –ī, *f.*, Bucephalum (Busef′alum), *a town in India founded by Alexander in honor of his horse;* **Būcephalus, –ī,** *m.*, Bucephalus, *Alexander's horse.*

bulla, –ae, *f.*, bulla, *a small ornament worn on the neck by children.*

C

C., *abbreviation for* **Gāius, Gāī,** *m.*, Gā′ius, *a Roman name.*

cadāver, –eris, *n.*, corpse.

cadō, –ere, cecidī, cāsus, fall, happen, result.

Caecilius, –a, –um, Caecilian (Sēsil′ian); **Caecilius, –lī,** *m.*, Caecilius (Sēsil′ius), *a Roman name;* **Caecilia, –ae,** *f.*, Caecilia, *a Roman name.*

caedēs, –is, *f.*, slaughter, murder.

caedō, –ere, cecīdī, caesus, cut, kill, cut to pieces.

Caelius (mōns), –ī, *m.*, the Caelian (Sē′lian) Hill, *one of the seven hills of Rome.*

caelum, –ī, *n.*, sky.

Caerōsī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Caerosi (Sērō'sī), *a Belgian tribe.*

caeruleus, –a, –um, sky-blue, blue.

Caesar, –aris, *m.*, Caesar.

caespes, –pitis, *m.*, cut sod, turf.

calamitās, –tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, defeat.

calceus, –ī, *m.*, shoe.

Caletī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Căl'etī, *a Belgian tribe.*

calidus, –a, –um, warm, hot.

cālīgō, cālīginis, *f.*, mist, fog.

Caligula, –ae, *m.*, Calĭg'ula, *a Roman emperor.*

callidus, –a, –um, crafty, clever.

cālō, –ōnis, *m.*, soldier's servant, camp-follower, driver.

Calpurnius, –nī, *m.*, Calpur'nius, *a Roman name.*

Camillus, –ī, *m.*, Camil'lus, *a Roman general.*

Campānia, –ae, *f.*, Campā'nia, *a district of Italy.*

campester, –tris, –tre, of a level field, level; in the plain.

campus, –ī, *m.*, plain, field; **campus Mārtius, campī Mārtiī,** *m.*, *a place of assembly at Rome.*

Camulogenus, –ī, *m.*, Camulogenus (Camuloj'enus), *an Aulercan chief.*

candidātus, –ī, *m.*, candidate.

Canīnius, –nī, *m.*, Canĭn'ius, *a Roman officer.*

canis, –is, *m. and f.*, dog.

Cannae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, Cannae (Can'ē), *a town in Italy.*

canō, –ere, cecinī, cantus, sing.

Cantium, –tī, *n.*, Kent, *a district in Britain.*

cantō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, sing.

Capēna (porta), porta Capena (Capē'na), *a gate in the wall of Rome.*

capillus, –ī, *m.*, hair.

capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, capture, hold, reach, receive, cheat, attract, betray; *w.* **cōnsilium,** adopt.

Capitōlium, –lī, *n.*, the Capitol (*temple of Jupiter, at Rome*); the Capitoline Hill.

capra, –ae, *f.*, she-goat.

captīva, –ae, *f.*, female captive.

captīvus, –ī, *m.*, prisoner.

captō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, strive.

Capua, –ae, *f.*, Căp'ua, *a city in Italy.*

caput, capitis, *n.*, head, person.

careō, –ēre, caruī, caritūrus, be without, go without (*w. abl.*)

cāritās, –tātis, *f.*, affection, esteem.

carmen, carminis, *n.*, song, poem.

Carneadēs, –is, *m.*, Carnē'adēs, *a Greek philosopher.*

Carnutēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Car'nutēs, *a Gallic tribe.*

carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh, meat.

carpō, –ere, carpsī, carptus, seize; *w.* **trāmitem,** pursue.

carrus, –ī, *m.*, cart, wagon.

Carthāginiēnsēs, –ium, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians (Carthajin'ians).

Carthāgō, –ginis, *f.*, Carthage, *a city in northern Africa.*

cārus, –a, –um, dear, expensive, esteemed.

Carvilius, –lī, *m.*, Carvĭl'ius, *a British king.*

casa, –ae, *f.*, hut, cabin.

Casca, –ae, *m.*, Casca, *a Roman name.*

cāseus, –ī, *m.*, cheese.

Cassī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Căs'sī, *a British tribe.*

Cassius, –sī, *m.*, Cassius (Cash'us): (1) Gaius Cassius Longinus, *one of Caesar's assassins;* (2) Lucius Cassius Longinus, *consul in* 107 B.C.

Cassivellaunus, –ī, *m.*, Cassivellau'nus, *leader of the Britons in* 54 B.C.

castellum, –ī, *n.*, little fort, fortress, redoubt, stronghold.

Casticus, –ī, *m.*, Căs'ticus, *a chief of the Sequanians.*

castigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, scold, punish.

Castor, –ōris, Castor, *a god.*

castra, –ōrum, *n.*, camp; **castra pōnere,** pitch camp; **castra movēre,** break camp.

cāsus, –ūs, *m.*, fall, chance, event, accident, misfortune, fate; **cāsū,** by chance.

Catilīna, –ae, *m.*, Căt'ilīne, *a Roman conspirator.*

Catō, –ōnis, *m.*, Cato (Kā'tō), *a famous Roman senator.*

Catulus, –ī, *m.*, Căt'ulus, *a Roman general.*

Caturīgēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Caturiges (Caturī'jēs), *a Gallic tribe living in the Alps.*

cauda, –ae, *f.*, tail.

Caudīnus, –a, –um, of Caudium, Caudine.

caupōna, –ae, *f.*, inn, tavern.

causa, –ae, *f.*, cause, reason; **causās agere, dīcere,** *or* **ōrāre,** plead cases; **causā,** by reason of, for the sake of (*w. gen. preceding*).

caveō, –ēre, cāvī, cautus, beware.

cēdō, –ere, cessī, cessus, move, retreat, yield.

celer, celeris, celere, swift.

celeritās, –tātis, *f.*, swiftness, speed.

celeriter, swiftly; *comp.*, **celerius.**

cēlō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hide, conceal.

Celtae, –ārum, *m. pl.*, the Celts.

cēna, –ae, *f.*, dinner.

Cēnimagnī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Cenimagni (Senimag'nī), *a tribe of Britain.*

cēnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, dine.

cēnseō, –ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, think, suggest, advise, give an opinion, favor.

cēnsor, –ōris, *m.*, censor, *a Roman official.*

cēnsus, –ūs, *m.*, census.

centum, hundred.

centuria, –ae, *f.*, century, company.

centuriō, –ōnis, *m.*, centurion, captain.

Cereālia, –ium, *n. pl.*, Cerealia (Sēreā'lia), *a Roman festival.*

Cerēs, Cereris, *f.*, Ceres (Sē'rēs), *goddess of agriculture.*

cernō, –ere, crēvī, crētus, separate, see, discern.

certāmen, certāminis, *n.*, contest, struggle, battle.

certē, *adv.*, certainly, at least.

certus, –a, –um, fixed, certain, sure; **certiōrem eum facere dē,** *w. abl.*, inform him about; **certum est,** be determined, resolved.

cervīcal, –ālis, *n.*, cushion, pillow.

cervīx, –īcis, *f.*, neck, shoulders.

cervus, –ī, *m.*, stag.
cessō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, cease from.
cēterī, –ae, –a, the other(s), the rest.
Ceutronēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Ceutrones (Sū'tronēs), *a Gallic tribe.*
Chlōrus, –ī, *m.*, Chlorus (Klō'rus), *a Greek name.*
Christiānus, –a, –um, Christian.
Christus, –ī, *m.*, Christ.
cibus, –ī, *m.*, food.
Cicerō, –ōnis, *m.*, Cicero (Sis'ero): (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, *a Roman orator and statesman;* (2) Quintus Tullius Cicero, *his brother, one of Caesar's officers.*
Cimbrī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Cimbri (Sim'brī), *a German tribe.*
Cincinnātus, –ī, *m.*, Cincinnatus (Sinsinā'tus), *a famous Roman.*
Cingetorīx, –īgis, *m.*, Cingetorix (Sinjet'orix), *a British king.*
cingō, –ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, surround, inclose, invest.
cinis, cineris, *m.*, ashes.
circēnsis, –e, of the Circus.
circiter, *adv.*, about.
circuitus, –ūs, *m.*, going around, way around, roundabout way, distance around.
circum, *prep. w. acc.*, around.
circumcīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus, cut around.
circumclūdō, –ere, –clūsī, –clūsus, shut in, surround.
circumdō, –dare, –dedī, –datus, put around, surround.
circumeō, –īre, –iī, –itus, go around, ride around, surround; visit.
circumiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, throw around, place around.
circummūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, wall around, hem in.
circumplector, –plectī, –plexus sum, interweave, surround.
circumsiliō, –īre, –siluī, —, hop around.
circumsistō, –ere, –stetī, —, take a stand around, stand around, surround.
circumspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus, look about for, look around at; consider.
circumstō, –āre, –stetī, —, stand around.
circumveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, surround.
circus, –ī, *m.*, circle, circus; **Circus Maximus,** the Circus Maximus, *at Rome (large enough to seat* 100,000 *spectators).*
citerior, –ius, *comp. adj.*, on this side, nearer, hither.
cito, *adv.*, swiftly, quickly; **citius,** *comp.*, sooner.
citrā, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of.
cīvicus, –a, –um, of citizens, civic.
cīvīlis, –e, civil.
cīvis, –is, *m.*, citizen.
cīvitās, –tātis, *f.*, citizenship, state.
clam, *adv.*, secretly.
clāmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, cry out, shout, declare.
clāmor, –ōris, *m.*, shout, uproar.
clangor, –ōris, *m.*, cackling, noise.
clārus, –a, –um, clear, brilliant, famous, loud.
classis, –is, *f.*, fleet.

Claudia, –ae, *f.*, Claudia, *a Roman name;* **Claudius, –dī,** *m.*, Claudius, *the emperor;* Appius Claudius: (1) *one of the decemvirs;* (2) *builder of the Appian Way.*

claudō, –ere, clausī, clausus, close.

clēmentia, –ae, *f.*, clemency.

Cleopātra, –ae, *f.*, Cleopā'tra, *queen of Egypt.*

cliēns, –entis, *m.*, client, vassal.

cloāca, –ae, *f.*, sewer.

Cloelia, –ae, *f.*, Cloelia (Clē'lia), *a Roman maiden.*

Cn., *abbreviation for* **Gnaeus, –ī,** *m.*, Gnaeus (Nē'us), *a Roman name.*

coacervō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, heap together, pile up.

Coclēs, –itis, *m.*, Cō'clēs; Horatius Cocles, *a famous Roman.*

coeō, –īre, –iī, –itus, unite, band together.

coepī, coepisse, coeptus (*used only in perf. tenses*), have begun, began.

cōgitātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, thought.

cōgitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, think, consider, plan.

cognāta, –ae, *f.*, relative.

cognātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, family, group of kinsmen.

cognōscō, –ere, cognōvī, cognitus, become acquainted with, learn, recognize; *perf. tenses,* have learned, know, understand.

cōgō, –ere, coēgī, coāctus, drive together, collect, compel.

cohors, cohortis, *f.*, cohort, company

cohortātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, inciting, encouragement.

cohortor, –ārī, –ātus sum, incite, encourage; address.

Collātīnus, –ī, *m.*, Collatī'nus, *a Roman name.*

collaudō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, praise, commend.

colligō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tie together, fasten together.

colligō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus, bring together; **sē colligere,** rally.

collis, –is, *m.*, hill.

collocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, place.

colloquium, –quī, *n.*, conference, conversation, interview.

colloquor, –loquī, –locūtus sum, converse, confer, talk.

collum, –ī, *n.*, neck.

colō, –ere, coluī, cultus, till, cultivate, dwell in, worship.

colōnia, –ae, *f.*, colony.

color, –ōris, *m.*, color.

coma, –ae, *f.*, hair.

combūrō, –ere, –ussī, –ustus, burn up, consume.

comes, –itis, *m. and f.*, companion.

Comitium, –tī, *n.*, Comitium (Comish'ium), *the assembly place of the Romans;* **comitia, –ōrum,** *n. pl.*, election, assemblies.

commeātus, –ūs, *m.*, going to and fro, trip; supplies, provisions.

commemorō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, bring to mind; recount, mention.

commendō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, put under one's protection, intrust.

commīlitō, –ōnis, *m.*, fellow soldier.

committō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, join together, commit, do, intrust; **proelium committere,** begin battle.

Commius, –mī, *m.*, Com'mius, *an Atrebatian.*

commodē, *adv.*, well, suitably, conveniently, effectively, profitably, easily.

commodus, –a, –um, suitable, convenient, better; *as noun,* **commodum, –ī,** *n.*, advantage, profit.

commoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus, move away, disturb, stir up; influence; *w.* **bellum,** begin.

commūnicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, communicate, share, unite, add.

commūnis, –e, common, accessible.

commūtātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, change, complete change, reversal.

commūtō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, change wholly, exchange.

comparō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, get ready, prepare, prepare for; provide, procure, establish.

compellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus, drive together, collect; drive.

comperiō, –perīre, –perī, –pertus, obtain knowledge of, find out, discover.

competītor, –ōris, *m.*, rival, competitor.

complector, –plectī, –plexus sum, embrace.

compleō, –ēre, –ēvī, –ētus, fill up, fill, complete.

complexus, –ūs, *m.*, embrace, arms.

complūrēs, –a *and* **–ia,** several, many.

comportō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, collect, bring in.

compositus, –a, –um, composed.

comprehendō, –ere, –hendī, –hēnsus, seize, grasp; *w.* **ignem,** catch.

cōnātus, –ūs, *m.*, attempt.

concēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, withdraw, yield, grant.

concidō, –ere, –cidī, —, fall, fall down, be slain.

concīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus, cut to pieces; cut up, intersect; kill.

concilium, –lī, *n.*, assembly, meeting, council, counsel.

concipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, perceive, conceive.

concitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, rouse.

conclāmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, cry out, exclaim, shout.

conclūdō, –ere, –clūsī, –clūsus, shut in, inclose.

concordia, –ae, *f.*, harmony.

concurrō, –ere, –currī, –cursus, run together, rush, flock.

concursō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, run to and fro, run about.

concursus, –ūs, *m.*, a running together, collision, meeting, onset.

condiciō, –ōnis, *f.*, condition, terms.

condō, –dere, –didī, –ditus, found.

Condrūsī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Condrū'sī, *a Belgian tribe.*

condūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, bring together, hire, rent.

cōnferō, –ferre, contulī, collātus, bring together, compare, collect, contribute, place; **sē cōnferre,** gather.

cōnfertus, –a, –um, crowded together, in dense array.

cōnfestim, *adv.*, at once.

cōnficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, (do thoroughly), complete, exhaust, overcome, make, furnish.

cōnfīdō, –ere, –fīsus sum, *semi-deponent,* have confidence (in), rely on, be confident, hope.

cōnfirmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make firm, encourage, establish, set, strengthen, assert.

cōnfīsus, –a, –um, *part. of* **cōnfīdō.**

cōnflīctor, –ārī, –ātus sum, struggle, be harassed.

cōnfundō, –ere, –fūdī, –fūsus, (pour together), confuse, disturb.

congredior, –gredī, –gressus sum, meet, meet in arms, join battle, make an alliance.

congregō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, (herd together), unite, associate.

coniciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, throw (forcibly), throw together, place.

coniūnctim, *adv.,* in common, together.

coniungō, –ere, –iūnxī, –iūnctus, join with, unite.

coniūnx, –iugis, *m. and f.,* husband, wife.

coniūrātiō, –ōnis, *f.,* oath-bound alliance, conspiracy, plot, revolt.

coniūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, swear together, conspire.

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, attempt, try, endeavor, venture.

conquīrō, –quīrere, –quīsīvī, –quīsītus, seek for, hunt up, bring together, procure.

cōnsanguineus, –a, –um, related by blood; *as noun, m.,* kinsman, blood relation.

cōnscendō, –ere, –scendī, –scēnsus, climb, scale; *w.* **nāvēs,** embark in.

cōnscius, –a, –um, conscious, aware of.

cōnscrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus, write, enlist, enroll; **patrēs cōnscrīptī,** senators.

cōnsecrātus, –a, –um, sacred, hallowed, consecrated.

cōnsecūtus, –a, –um, *part. of* **cōnsequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, –ōnis, *f.,* agreement, unanimity.

cōnsēnsus, –ūs, *m.,* agreement.

cōnsentiō, –īre, –sēnsī, –sēnsus, agree, combine.

cōnsequor, –sequī, –secūtus sum, follow, overtake, attain.

cōnservō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, save, preserve, spare.

Cōnsidius, –dī, *m.,* Consĭd'ius, *a Roman officer.*

cōnsīdō, –ere, –sēdī, –sessus, sit down, hold a meeting, encamp, settle.

cōnsilium, –lī, *n.,* plan, prudence, advice, counsel; council.

cōnsimilis, –e, very similar, much like.

cōnsistō, –ere, –stitī, –stitus, stand still, stand, stop, halt, take one's place, settle, consist in.

cōnsōbrīnus, –ī, *m.,* son of a mother's sister, first cousin.

cōnsōlor, –ārī, –ātus sum, console, comfort.

cōnspectus, –ūs, *m.,* sight.

cōnspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus, catch sight of, see.

cōnspicor, –ārī, –ātus sum, get sight of, see, notice.

cōnstantia, –ae, *f.,* courage, firmness, steadfastness.

cōnstīpō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, crowd together, pack closely.

cōnstitī, *see* **cōnsistō.**

cōnstituō, –ere, –stituī, –stitūtus,

set up, establish, appoint, determine, decide, station.

cōnstō, –āre, –stitī, –statūrus, stand together; be evident, be agreed, depend upon.

Cōnsuālia, –ium, *n.*, Consuā'lia, *a festival of* **Cōnsus,** *a god of agriculture.*

cōnsuēscō, –ere, –suēvī, –suētus, become accustomed; *in perf. system,* be accustomed, have the habit, be wont..

cōnsuētūdō, –dinis, *f.*, custom, habit, practice, mode of life.

cōnsul, –ulis, *m.*, consul.

cōnsulāris, –e, of consular rank.

cōnsulātus, –ūs, *m.*, consulship.

cōnsulō, –ere, –suluī, –sultus, consult (for).

cōnsultō, *adv.*, purposely, designedly.

cōnsultō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, take counsel, deliberate, consult.

cōnsūmō, –ere, –sūmpsī, –sūmptus, (take wholly), exhaust, spend, destroy.

cōnsurgō, –ere, –surrēxī, –surrēctus, rise together, rise.

Cōnsus, –ī, *m.*, Consus (Cŏn'sus) (*see* **Cōnsuālia**).

contāgiō, –ōnis, *f.*, contact; evil association.

contegō, –ere, –tēxī, –tēctus, cover.

contemnō, –ere, –tempsī, –temptus, despise.

contemptus, –ūs, *m.*, despising, contempt.

contendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus, struggle, hasten, contend, strive.

continēns, *gen.*, **continentis,** *adj.*, continuous; *as noun, f.*, continent, mainland.

contineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, hold together, detain, contain, keep, hem in, bound, restrain; **sē continēre,** stay, remain.

contingō, –ere, –tigī, –tāctus, touch, reach, extend to.

continuus, –a, –um, continuous, successive, without interruption.

cōntiō, –ōnis, *f.*, assembly, council.

contrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, against, contrary to, opposite, on the other hand.

contrahō, –ere, –trāxī, –trāctus, draw *or* bring together, contract.

contrārius, –a, –um, opposite.

contrōversia, –ae, *f.*, dispute, disagreement, quarrel.

contumēlia, –ae, *f.*, insult, abuse.

convallis, –is, *f.*, valley, ravine.

conveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come together, assemble, meet; **convenit,** be agreed upon, suit.

conventus, –ūs, *m.*, meeting, assembly.

convertō, –ere, –vertī, –versus, turn; **signa conversa īnferre,** wheel and charge; **itinere conversō,** turning around.

convocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, call together, summon.

coorior, –orīrī, –ortus sum, arise, spring up, come up.

cōpia, –ae, *f.*, supply, opportunity, plenty, means; *pl.*, forces, troops, riches.

coquus, –ī, *m.*, cook.

cor, cordis, *n.*, heart.

cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person.

Corellius, –lī, *m.*, Corel'lius, *a Roman name.*

Corinthus, –ī, *f.*, Corinth, *a city in Greece.*

Coriolānus, –ī, *m.*, Coriolā'nus, *a famous Roman.*

Coriosolitēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Coriosŏl'itēs, *a Gallic tribe.*

Cornēlia, –ae, *f.*, Cornē'lia, *a Roman name;* **Cornēlius, –lī,** *m.*, Cornē'lius, *a Roman name.*

cornicen, –cinis, *m.*, hornblower.

cornū, –ūs, *n.*, horn, antler; wing (*of an army*), flank.

corōna, –ae, *f.*, crown, wreath.

corpus, corporis, *n.*, body.

corrigō, –ere, –rēxī, –rēctus, improve, correct.

corrumpō, –ere, –rūpī, –ruptus, ruin, bribe, corrupt.

Corsica, –ae, *f.*, Corsica.

Corvīnus, –ī, *m.*, Corvī'nus, *a Roman name.*

cotīdiānus, –a, –um, belonging to every day, daily.

cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily.

Cotta, –ae, *m.*, Cotta, *a Roman officer.*

crās, *adv.*, to-morrow.

Crassus, –ī, *m.*, Crassus, *a Roman name.*

crēber, –bra, –brum, frequent, close together, numerous.

crēditor, –ōris, *m.*, creditor.

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, believe, intrust (*w. dat.*).

cremō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, burn.

creō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, create, elect, appoint.

crēscō, –ere, crēvī, crētus, grow, increase.

Crīspus, –ī, *m.*, Crispus, *a Roman name.*

Critognātus, –ī, *m.*, Critognā'tus, *an Arvernian.*

crocodīlus, –ī, *m.*, crocodile.

crocus, –ī, *m.*, saffron color.

cruciātus, –ūs, *m.*, torture.

crūdēlis, –e, cruel.

crūdēlitās, –tātis, *f.*, cruelty.

crūdēliter, *adv.*, cruelly, harshly.

crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg.

cubiculum, –ī, *n.*, bedroom.

cubīle, –lis, *n.*, bed, resting place.

culpa, –ae, *f.*, blame.

cultūra, –ae, *f.*, tillage, cultivation.

cultus, –ūs, *m.*, way of living, civilization.

cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with.

cum, *conj.*, when, since, although; **cum prīmum,** as soon as; **cum . . . tum,** not only . . . but also.

cumulus, –ī, *m.*, heap.

cunctor, –ārī, –ātus sum, delay, hesitate.

cupiditās, –tātis, *f.*, desire.

Cupīdō, –dinis, *m.*, Cupid, *god of love.*

cupidus, –a, –um, eager, desirous.

cupiō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus, desire, long for.

cūr, *adv.*, why.

cūra, –ae, *f.*, care, concern, anxiety.

cūria, –ae, *f.*, senate house; **Cūria Iūlia,** *a senate house begun by Julius Caesar.*

Cūriātiī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Curiatii (Curiā'shĭī), *three Alban brothers.*

Curius, –rī, *m.*, Curius, *a Roman name.*

cūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, care for, arrange, see (to it) that.

currō, –ere, cucurrī, cursus, run.

currus, –ūs, *m.*, chariot.
Cursor, –ōris, *m.*, Cur′sor (*surname of L. Papirius*).
cursus, –ūs, *m.*, running, speed, race, course; **cursus honōrum,** course of offices, political career.
custōdia, –ae, *f.*, guard, watch.
custōdiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, guard, watch.
custōs, –ōdis, *m.*, guard.

D

D., *abbreviation for* **Decimus, –ī,** *m.*, Decimus (Dĕs′imus), *a Roman name.*
Daedalus, –ī, *m.*, Daedalus (Dĕd′alus), *a mythical character.*
damnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, condemn.
damnum, –ī, *n.*, loss.
Dāmōn, –ōnis, *m.*, Dā′mon, *friend of Pythias.*
Dāmyx, –ycis, *f.*, Dā′myx, *a Greek name.*
Darēs, –ētis, *m.*, Dā′rēs, *a Greek name.*
Dāvus, –ī, *m.*, Dā′vus, *a name.*
dē, *prep. w. abl.*, from, down from, concerning, about, for, during.
dea, –ae, *f.*, goddess.
dēbellō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, crush (*in war*).
dēbeō, –ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, ought, owe, be obliged to.
dēbitum, –ī, *n.*, debt.
dēcēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, depart, go away, die.
decem, ten.
decemvirī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, decemvirs (*forming a board of ten men*).
dēcernō, –ere, –crēvī, –crētus, decide, intrust.
dēcertō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, fight it out, contend, decide.
decimus, –a, –um, tenth.
dēcipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, deceive.
Decius, –cī, *m.*, Decius (Dē′shius), *a Roman name.*
dēclīvis, –e, sloping downward; *as noun, n. pl.*, slopes, declivities.
dēcrētum, –ī, *n.*, decree, decision.
dēcrētus, –a, –um, *part. of* **dēcernō.**
decumānus, –a, –um, of the tenth; **porta decumāna,** rear gate.
decuriō, –ōnis, *m.*, decurion.
dēcurrō, –ere, –cucurrī *or* **–currī, –cursus,** run down, hurry, hasten.
dēdecus, –coris, *n.*, disgrace.
dēdicātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, dedication.
dēdicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, set aside, dedicate.
dēditīcius, –a, –um, surrendered; *as noun, m. pl.*, prisoners of war, captives.
dēditiō, –ōnis, *f.*, surrender.
dēdō, –dere, –didī, –ditus, hand over, surrender, devote.
dēdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead away, withdraw, bring, conduct, reduce, launch.
dēfectiō, –ōnis, *f.*, falling away (from allegiance), desertion, revolt.
dēfendō, –ere, –fendī, –fēnsus, defend, repel.
dēfēnsiō, –ōnis, *f.*, defense.
dēfēnsor, –ōris, *m.*, protector, defender; *pl.*, guards, garrison.
dēferō, –ferre, –tulī, –lātus, carry away, carry, refer, bestow, offer, enroll, report; *passive,* fall.
dēfessus, –a, –um, wearied, faint.

dēficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, fail, revolt, rebel.
dēfīgō, –ere, –fīxī, –fīxus, drive in.
dēfīniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, set bounds to, limit, define.
dēflectō, –ere, –flexī, –flexus, turn aside.
dēfugiō, –ere, –fūgī, –fugitūrus, flee from, shrink from, avoid, shun.
dēiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, throw down, throw, drive; disappoint.
deinceps, *adv.,* in turn, continuously.
deinde, *adv.,* then.
dēlātus, –a, –um, *part. of* **dēferō.**
dēlēctus, –a, –um, *part. of* **dēligō.**
dēleō, –ēre, –ēvī, –ētus, destroy, wipe out, annihilate.
dēlīberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, weigh carefully, consider, discuss.
dēliciae, –ārum, *f. pl.,* delight, pet.
dēligō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tie down, fasten, moor.
dēligō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus, select.
delphīnus, –ī, *m.,* dolphin.
dēmigrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, move away, depart.
dēminuō, –ere, –minuī, –minūtus, take from, diminish.
dēmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let down, send down; **sē dēmittere,** descend.
dēmōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, point out, show, mention.
Dēmosthenēs, –is, *m.,* Dēmŏs'thenēs, *a Greek orator.*
dēmulceō, –ēre, –mulsī, –mulctus, stroke (down).
dēmum, *adv.,* at length.
dēnique, *adv.,* finally, after all, at last; at least.
dēns, dentis, *m.,* tooth.
dēnsus, –a, –um, thick.
Dentātus, –ī, *m.,* Dentā'tus (*surname of M'. Curius*).
dēnūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, announce, declare.
dēpellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus, drive away, expel, avert.
dēperdō, –perdere, –perdidī, –perditus, lose.
dēpereō, –īre, –periī, –peritūrus, go to destruction, be lost, be wrecked.
dēpōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, put down *or* aside, lay down, place.
dēportō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, carry away.
dērēctus, –a, –um, straight.
dēscendō, –ere, –scendī, –scēnsus, descend, resort.
dēscēnsus, –ūs, *m.,* descent.
dēscrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus, write down, copy.
dēserō, –ere, –seruī, –sertus, desert.
dēsertor, –ōris, *m.,* runaway, deserter.
dēsīderō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, long for; *passive,* be lost.
dēsidia, –ae, *f.,* idleness, indolence.
dēsiliō, –īre, –siluī, –sultus, jump down.
dēsinō, –ere, –siī, –situs, cease, desist from.
dēsistō, –ere, –stitī, –stitus, stand away, desist, cease.
dēspectus, –ūs, *m.,* downward look, view.
dēspērātiō, –ōnis, *f.,* hopelessness, desperation, despair.

dēspērō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, lose hope, despair (of).

dēspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus, look down on, despise.

dēspoliō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, rob, despoil, deprive.

dēstinō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make fast, bind.

dēstitī, *see* **dēsistō.**

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, fail, be lacking, be needed (*w. dat.*).

dēterior, –ius, poorer, less.

dēterreō, –ēre, –terruī, –territus, frighten off, deter, hinder, prevent.

dētestābilis, –e, abominable, detestable.

dētineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, detain, occupy, retain.

dētrahō, –ere, –trāxī, –trāctus, draw off, take off.

dētrīmentum, –ī, *n.*, loss, defeat.

dēturbō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, drive down, overthrow, dislodge.

deus, –ī, *m.*, god.

dēveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come, arrive.

dēvorō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, swallow, devour.

dēvoveō, –ēre, –vōvī, –vōtus, devote, sacrifice.

dexter, –tra, –trum, right (*hand*).

Diablintēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Diablin'tēs, *a Gallic tribe.*

dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell, speak, name; **salūtem dīcere,** pay one's respects; **causam dīcere,** plead a case.

dictātor, –ōris, *m.*, dictator.

dictum, –ī, *n.*, word, saying.

diēs, diēī, *m. and f.*, day, time; **in diēs,** day by day.

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, spread, put off, defer; differ; **inter sē differre,** differ from one another.

difficilis, –e, difficult, perilous.

difficultās, –tātis, *f.*, hardship; difficulty.

diffīdō, –ere, –fīsus sum, *semi-deponent*, distrust, despair.

diffundō, –ere, –fūdī, –fūsus, spread out, extend.

digitus, –ī, *m.*, finger.

dignē, worthily.

dignitās, –tātis, *f.*, worth, position.

dignus, –a, –um, worthy.

diiūdicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, determine.

dīlābor, –lābī, –lāpsus sum, fall.

dīligenter, *adv.*, attentively, carefully, diligently.

dīligentia, –ae, *f.*, care, diligence.

dīmētior, –mētīrī, –mēnsus sum, measure, lay out (*perf. part. often with passive force*).

dīmidius, –a, –um, half; *as noun, n.*, half.

dīmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go, lose, abandon, send away, dismiss, discharge.

Dionȳsius, –sī, *m.*, Dionysius (Dīonĭsh'ĭŭs), *a tyrant of Syracuse.*

dīripiō, –ere, –ripuī, –reptus, plunder, destroy.

Dīs, Dītis, *m.*, Dis, Pluto, *god of Hades.*

discēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go away, depart; *w.* **ab,** abandon.

discidium, –dī, *n.*, quarrel, division.

disciplīna, –ae, *f.*, discipline, training, instruction, learning, system.
discō, –ere, didicī, —, learn, be taught, become acquainted with.
discordia, –ae, *f.*, discord, disagreement.
discrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus, apportion, administer.
disiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, drive apart, disperse, scatter.
dispergō, –spergere, –spersī, –spersus, scatter, disperse.
dispōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, station here and there, arrange.
disputātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, argument, discussion.
disputō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, investigate, discuss, argue.
dissēnsiō, –ōnis, *f.*, difference of opinion, dissension, strife.
dissimilis, –e, unlike.
dissipō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, scatter.
distineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, keep apart, hold back, hinder.
distrahō, –ere, –trāxī, –trāctus, draw apart, separate.
distribuō, –ere, –tribuī, –tribūtus, divide, distribute, assign.
dītissimus, *see* **dīves.**
diū, *adv.*, for a long time; *comp.*, **diūtius**; *superl.*, **diūtissimē.**
dīversus, –a, –um, different.
dīves, *gen.*, **dīvitis,** *adj.*, rich; *comp.*, **dītior,** *superl.*, **dītissimus.**
Dīviciācus, –ī, *m.*, Diviciacus (Divishiā'cus): (1) *a Haeduan;* (2) *a king of the Suessiones.*
dīvidō, –ere, –vīsī, –vīsus, divide, separate.
dīvīnus, –a, –um, godlike, divine.
dīvus, –ī, *m.*, deity, god.
dō, dare, dedī, datus, give; **poenam** *or* **supplicium dare,** pay the penalty; **in fugam dare,** put to flight.
doceō, –ēre, docuī, doctus, teach, show; **doctus, –a, –um,** learned, skilled.
documentum, –ī, *n.*, proof, warning.
Dolābella, –ae, *m.*, Dŏlabel'la, *a Roman name.*
doleō, –ēre, doluī, dolitūrus, grieve, be sorry for, hurt.
dolor, –ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.
domesticus, –a, –um, belonging to a home, domestic, civil, native.
domicilium, –lī, *n.*, home, dwelling place.
domina, –ae, *f.*, mistress (*of a household*).
dominor, –ārī, –ātus sum, be master, bear sway.
dominus, –ī, *m.*, master, lord, ruler.
Domitiānus, –ī, *m.*, Domitian (Domish'ian), *the emperor.*
domus, –ūs, *f.*, house, home.
dōnec, *adv.*, until.
dōnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, give, present, reward.
dōnum, –ī, *n.*, gift, present; bribe.
dormiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, sleep.
dōs, dōtis, *f.*, dowry.
druidēs, –um, *m. pl.*, druids, *the priests of the religion of Gaul and Britain.*
Drūsus, –ī, *m.*, Drū'sus, *a Roman name.*
dubitātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, doubt, uncertainty.
dubitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, doubt, hesitate.
dubius, –a, –um, doubtful, critical.

dūcō, –ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, construct, consider; marry.
dulcis, –e, sweet, agreeable; *as noun, n. pl.*, sweets, cakes.
dum, *conj.*, while, until, as long as.
Dumnorīx, –īgis, *m.*, Dŭm′norix, *a Haeduan, brother of Diviciacus.*
dumtaxat, *adv.*, only, merely.
duo, –ae, –o, two.
duodecim, twelve; **duodecimus, –a, –um,** twelfth.
duplex, *gen.*, **duplicis,** twofold, double.
duplicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, double.
dūritia, –ae, *f.*, hardship.
dūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, harden.
dūrus, –a, –um, hard, cruel.
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, guide, general.
Dyrrachium, –chī, *n.*, Dyrrachium, *now* Durazzo, *a city on the east coast of the Adriatic.*

E

ē, ex, *prep. w. abl.*, from, out of, of, as a result of, in accordance with.
ebur, eboris, *n.*, ivory.
eburneus, –a, –um, of ivory, ivory.
Eburōnēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Eburō′nēs, *a Belgian tribe.*
ecce! *interj.*, behold!
ēdictum, –ī, *n.*, public command, order.
ēdiscō, –discere, –didicī, —, learn thoroughly, learn by heart.
ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus, put forth, publish, inflict, utter.
ēducō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, bring up, educate.
ēdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead out *or* forth; **gladium ēdūcere,** draw a sword.
effēminō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make effeminate, weaken.
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, carry out, report, make known.
efficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, make (out), bring about, accomplish, complete, produce.
effodiō, –ere, –fōdī, –fossus, dig out *or* up.
effugiō, –ere, –fūgī, –fugitūrus, escape, shun.
ego, meī, I.
ēgredior, –gredī, –gressus sum, go *or* march out, leave, disembark.
ēgregiē, *adv.*, excellently.
ēgregius, –a, –um, distinguished, excellent, eminent.
ēgressus, –ūs, *m.*, going out, landing.
ēheu! *interj.*, alas!
ēiciō, –ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, throw out, cast up, stick out, expel; **sē ēicere,** rush out.
ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, slip away, escape.
elephantus, –ī, *m.*, elephant.
ēlevō, –āre, —, –ātus, make light of.
ēligō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus, pick out, select.
ēmendō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, correct.
ēmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let drop, send forth, hurl, shed.
emō, –ere, ēmī, ēmptus, get, buy.
ēn! *interj.*, lo! behold! look!
Enchōriō, –ōnis, *m.*, Enchorion (Enkō′rion), *a Greek name.*
enim, *conj.* (*never first word*), for.
ēnotō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, take notes on, note down.
ēnūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tell in public, announce, disclose.

eō, īre, iī, itus, go.
eō, *adv.*, there.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place; to the same end.
Ēpīrus, –ī, *f.*, Ēpī'rus, *a district in northern Greece.*
epistula, –ae, *f.*, letter.
Eporēdorīx, –īgis, *m.*, Eporē'dorix, *a Haeduan.*
epulae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, feast.
eques, –itis, *m.*, horseman, knight; *pl.*, cavalry.
equester, –tris, –tre, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry.
equidem, *adv., w. first person,* for my part.
equitātus, –ūs, *m.*, cavalry, body of horsemen.
equus, –ī, *m.*, horse.
ergō, *adv.*, therefore.
ērigō, –ere, –rēxī, –rēctus, raise up.
ēripiō, –ere, –ripuī, –reptus, snatch away, remove, save; **sē ēripere,** save one's self, escape.
errō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, wander; be mistaken.
error, –ōris, *m.*, error, delusion.
ēruptiō, –ōnis, *f.*, sally, sortie, raid.
Ēsquiliae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, the Es'quilīne Hill, *one of the seven hills of Rome;* **Ēsquilīnus, –a, –um,** Es'quilīne.
essedārius, –rī, *m.*, chariot fighter.
essedum, –ī, *n.*, war chariot.
Essuviī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Essū'viī, *a Gallic tribe.*
et, *conj.*, and, even; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.
etiam, *adv.*, also, even, too.
Etrūria, –ae, *f.*, Etrū'ria, *a district in Italy.*
Etrūscus, –a, –um, Etruscan; *as noun, m. pl.*, the Etruscans, the people of Etruria.
etsī, *conj.*, even if, although.
Eurydicē, –ēs, *f.*, Eurydice (Ūrid'-i-sē), *wife of Orpheus.*
ēvādō, –ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus, go out, escape.
ēvellō, –ere, –vellī, –vulsus, pull out.
ēveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come out, turn out, happen.
ēventus, –ūs, *m.*, outcome, event, result; accident, lot.
ēvertō, –ere, ēvertī, ēversus, overturn.
ēvocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, call out, call away, summon.
ēvolō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, fly out, rush forth.
ēvolvō, –ere, –volvī, –volūtus, unroll, open.
ex, *see* **ē.**
exāctus, –a, –um, *part. of* **exigō.**
exagitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, drive about, harass.
exāminō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, weigh, test.
exanimō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, exhaust, kill.
exaudiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, hear clearly, hear.
excēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go away *or* forth, depart, withdraw, develop into.
excelsus, –a, –um, high.
excīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus, cut out, cut down.
excipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, take out, capture, take up, follow.

excitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, arouse, call forth, erect, raise.
exclāmō, –āre. –āvī, –ātus, shout, cry out, exclaim.
exclūdō, –ere, –clūsī, –clūsus, shut out, prevent.
excruciō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, torture.
excūsātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, excuse.
excūsō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, offer excuses, excuse.
excutiō, –ere, –cussī, –cussus, shake off.
exemplum, –ī, *n.*, sample, example, precedent, model.
exeō, –īre, –iī, –itus, go out *or* forth; escape.
exerceō, –ēre, –ercuī, –ercitus, occupy, train, exercise.
exercitātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, exercise.
exercitātus, –a, –um, trained, experienced.
exercitus, –ūs, *m.*, (trained) army.
exhauriō, –īre, –hausī, –haustus, draw out, remove.
exigō, –igere, –ēgī, –āctus, drive out, demand, pass, end.
exiguē, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly.
exiguitās, –tātis, *f.*, scantiness, shortness, smallness.
exiguus, –a, –um, small, scanty, little.
exīstimō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, think, consider.
exitus, –ūs, *m.*, (a going forth), outcome, departure.
exōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, calm, appease.
expediō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, set free, prepare.
expedītus, –a, –um, unencumbered, lightly equipped, without luggage; free, easy.
expellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus, drive out.
experior, –perīrī, –pertus sum, test, try, find; **expertus, –a, –um,** tried, proved (by experience).
expleō, –plēre, –plēvī, –plētus, fill up, make up, supply.
explicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, unfold, unroll, develop, explain.
explōrātor, –ōris, *m.*, scout.
explōrātus, –a, –um, ascertained, assured, certain.
explōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, investigate, explore.
expōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, put out, set on shore, display, point out, draw up.
exprimō, –ere, –pressī, –pressus, press out, express, portray.
expugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, capture by assault, capture.
exsanguis, –e, bloodless.
exsequor, –sequī, –secūtus sum, follow up, enforce.
exsilium, –lī, *n.*, exile.
exsiliō, –īre, –siluī, —, leap up.
exsistō, –ere, –stitī, —, stand *or* come forth, appear, arise, spring up.
exspectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, look out for, await, wait, expect.
exspīrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, breathe one's last, expire.
exstinguō, –ere, –stīnxī, –stīnctus, put out, kill, destroy.
exstō, –stāre, —, —, stand out.
exstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus, pile up, build.

exterior, –ius, outer, exterior.
exterreō, –ēre, –terruī, –territus, terrify.
extrā, *prep. w. acc.,* outside of, beyond, outside the range of.
extrahō, –ere, –trāxī, –trāctus, draw *or* drag out, waste.
extraōrdinārius, –a, –um, out of the common order, extraordinary.
extrēmus, –a, –um, farthest, last, extreme, end of; **ad extrēmum,** at last, finally.

F

faber, fabrī, *m.,* workman, mechanic.
Fabius, –bī, *m.,* Fā'bius, *a Roman name, esp.* Quintus Fabius Maximus, *a Roman statesman and general;* **Fabius, –a, –um,** Fā'bian.
Fabricius, –cī, *m.,* Fabricius (Fabrish'ius), *a famous Roman.*
fābula, –ae, *f.,* story, play.
faciēs, –ēī, *f.,* face, appearance.
facile, *adv.,* easily.
facilis, –e, easy.
facinus, facinoris, *n.,* crime.
faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus, do, make, hold; **verba facere,** speak, make a speech; **certiōrem eum facere dē,** inform him about; **iter facere,** march, travel.
factiō, –ōnis, *f.,* faction, party.
factum, –ī, *n.,* deed.
facultās, –tātis, *f.,* faculty, power, supply, opportunity; *pl.,* means.
fācundus, –a, –um, eloquent, interesting.
fāgus, –ī, *f.,* beech tree.
Falērīī, –ōrum, *m. pl.,* Falē'rīī, *a town in Italy.*
Faliscus, –a, –um, Falis'can; *as noun, m. pl.,* the Falis'cans, people of Falerii.
fallō, –ere, fefellī, falsus, deceive.
falsō, *adv.,* by mistake, falsely.
falsus, –a, –um, false.
falx, falcis, *f.,* hook, wall hook.
fāma, –ae, *f.,* report, fame, reputation.
famēs, –is, *f.,* hunger.
familia, –ae, *f.,* household, family, clan.
familiāris, –e, (belonging to the family), friendly, private; *as noun,* friend.
fās, *found only in nom. and acc., n.,* justice, right; **fās esse,** be lawful, be proper.
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum, confess.
fatīgō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, weary, fatigue, exhaust.
fātum, –ī, *n.,* fate.
faucēs, –ium, *f. pl.,* throat.
faveō, –ēre, fāvī, fautus, be favorable to, favor (*w. dat.*).
favor, -ōris, *m.,* favor.
fēlīcitās, –tātis, *f.,* good fortune, success.
fēlīciter, *adv.,* fortunately; Good luck!
fēlīx, *gen.,* **fēlīcis,** happy, fortunate, successful.
fēmina, –ae, *f.,* woman, female.
fera, –ae, *f.,* wild beast.
ferē, *adv.,* almost, about, generally.
fēriae, –ārum, *f. pl.,* holidays; **fēriae Latīnae,** *festival of the allied Latins.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, bring, receive, assert, propose (*of a law*); *passive,* rush.
ferōx, *gen.,* **ferōcis,** bold, fierce.
ferrāmentum, –ī, *n.,* iron tool.
ferreus, –a, –um, made of iron, iron.
ferrum, –ī, *n.,* iron, sword.
fertilis, –e, fertile, fruitful.
fertilitās, –tātis, *f.,* fertility.
ferus, –a, –um, wild, savage, fierce, cruel.
fervefactus, –a, –um, hot, burning.
fervēns, *gen.,* **ferventis,** red-hot, hot.
festīnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make haste, hasten.
fēstīvus, –a, –um, charming.
fidēlis, –e, trustworthy, faithful.
Fīdentīnus, –ī, *m.,* Fidentī'nus, *a Roman name.*
fidēs, –eī, *f.,* trust, protection, pledge of good faith, word, loyalty.
fīdūcia, –ae, *f.,* trust, confidence, reliance.
figūra, –ae, *f.,* form, shape.
fīlia, –ae, *f.,* daughter.
fīlius, –lī, *m.,* son.
fingō, –ere, fīnxī, fictus, shape, form, invent, imagine.
fīniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, limit, bound, mark off, determine.
fīnis, fīnis, *m.,* end, limit; *pl.,* borders, boundaries, territory.
fīnitimus, –a, –um, neighboring; *as noun, m.,* neighbor.
fiō, fierī, factus sum, become, be made, be done, happen.
firmiter, *adv.,* steadily, firmly.
firmus, –a, –um, strong, steadfast, firm, solid.
Flaccus, –ī, *m.,* Flaccus, *a Roman name.*
Flāminīnus, –ī, *m.,* Flaminī'nus, *a Roman name.*
flamma, –ae, *f.,* blaze, flame.
flammeum, –ī, *n.,* (flame-colored) bridal veil.
flectō, –ere, flexī, flexus, bend, curve, turn.
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, cry, weep.
flētus, –ūs, *m.,* weeping.
flōreō, –ēre, flōruī, —, prosper, flourish.
flōs, flōris, *m.,* flower.
flūctus, –ūs, *m.,* wave.
flūmen, flūminis, *n.,* river.
fluō, –ere, flūxī, flūxus, flow.
fōns, fontis, *m.,* spring, source.
fore = futūrum esse, *from* **sum.**
forīs, *adv.,* out of doors, outside.
fōrma, –ae, *f.,* shape, image, form.
fors, fortis, *f.,* chance, luck.
forsan, *adv.,* perhaps.
fortasse, *adv.,* perhaps.
forte, *adv.,* by chance.
fortis, –e, strong, brave.
fortiter, bravely.
fortūna, –ae, *f.,* fortune, chance, luck, fate, good fortune; *pl.,* property, possessions; **extrēma fortūna,** utmost peril.
forum, –ī, *n.,* market place; **Forum** (*at Rome*).
fossa, –ae, *f.,* trench.
fovea, –ae, *f.,* pitfall.
frangō, –ere, frēgī, frāctus, break, wreck.
frāter, frātris, *m.,* brother.

frāternus, –a, –um, of a brother, brotherly, fraternal.
fraus, fraudis, *f.*, fraud, wrong.
frequēns, *gen.*, frequentis, in great numbers, often, regular.
frīgidus, –a, –um, cold.
frīgus, frīgoris, *n.*, cold, wintry weather; *pl.*, cold seasons, cold.
frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead; front.
Frontō, –ōnis, *m.*, Fronto, *a Roman name.*
frūctus, –ūs, *m.*, enjoyment, fruit, interest, profit, income.
frūgālitās, –tātis, *f.*, economy, thrift.
frūgēs, –um, *f. pl.*, fruits, crops.
frūmentārius, –a, –um, of grain; abounding in grain, fertile; **rēs frūmentāria,** grain supply, provisions.
frūmentum, –ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, crops.
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, uselessly.
fuga, –ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam dare,** put to flight.
fugiō, –ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, avoid, resort to.
fugitīvus, –a, –um, fugitive; *as noun, m.*, runaway, deserter.
fulmen, fulminis, *n.*, lightning.
Fulvia, –ae, *f.*, Ful'via, *a Roman name.*
Fulvius, –vī, *m.*, Ful'vius, *a Roman name.*
fūmus, –ī, *m.*, smoke.
funda, –ae, *f.*, sling, slingshot.
fundāmentum, –ī, *n.*, foundation.
Fundānus, –ī, *m.*, Fundā'nus, *a Roman name.*
funditor, –ōris, *m.*, slinger.
funditus, *adv.*, completely, from the bottom.
fundō, –ere, fūdī, fūsus, pour, shed, rout, scatter.
fūnis, –is, *m.*, rope.
fūnus, fūneris, *n.*, funeral.
fūr, fūris, *m. and f.*, thief.
furcula, –ae, *f.*, fork; **Caudīnae furculae,** Caudine Forks, *narrow fork-shaped defiles near Caudium.*
Furiae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, the Furies, *avenging and tormenting spirits.*
Fūriānus, –ī, *m.*, Fūriā'nus, *a Roman name.*
Fūrius, –a, –um, Fū'rian.
Fūrius, –rī, *m.*, Fū'rius, *a Roman name.*
furor, –ōris, *m.*, madness, frenzy.
furtim, *adv.*, by stealth.
fūrtum, –ī, *n.*, theft.
futūrus, –a, –um, *fut. part. of* **sum.**

G

Gabīnius, –nī, *m.*, Gabĭn'ius, *a Roman name.*
Gāia, –ae, *f.*, Gā'ia, *a Roman name.*
Gāius, Gāī, *m.*, Gā'ius, *a Roman name.*
Galba, –ae, *m.*, Galba, *a Roman name, esp. the emperor* Galba.
galea, –ae, *f.*, helmet (*of leather, often strengthened with metal*).
Gallia, –ae, *f.*, Gaul.
Gallicus, –a, –um, Gallic, of Gaul.
gallīna, –ae, *f.*, hen.
Gallus, –ī, *m.*, a Gaul; *pl.*, the Gauls.
Garunna, –ae, *m.*, the Garonne, *a river of southwestern Gaul.*

gaudeō, –ēre, gāvīsus sum, *semi-deponent,* rejoice.
gaudium, –dī, *n.,* joy.
Geidumnī, –ōrum, *m. pl.,* the Geidumni, (Jedŭm'nī) *a Belgian tribe.*
gemitus, –ūs, *m.,* groan.
gemma, –ae, *f.,* precious stone, gem.
Genava, –ae, *f.,* Geneva, *a city of the Allobroges.*
gener, –erī, *m.,* son-in-law.
gēns, gentis, *f.,* tribe, family, nation, people.
genus, generis, *n.,* birth, race, kind, class, family, type.
Germānia, –ae, *f.,* Germany.
Germānicus, –a, –um, German.
Germānus, –a, –um, German; *as noun,* **Germānī, –ōrum,** *m. pl.,* the Germans.
gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus, carry on, manage, do, hold, wear; *passive,* go on; **bellum gerere,** wage war; **sē gerere,** act.
gladiātor, –ōris, *m.,* gladiator.
gladiātōrius, –a, –um, gladiatorial.
gladius, –dī, *m.,* sword.
glāns, glandis, *f.,* acorn, slingshot.
glōria, –ae, *f.,* glory, fame.
Gracchus, –ī, *m.,* Gracchus (Grăk'us), *a famous Roman.*
gradātim, *adv.,* by degrees, of different grades.
gradior, gradī, gressus sum, step, walk.
Graecē, *adv.,* in Greek.
Graecia, –ae, *f.,* Greece.
Graecus, –a, –um, Greek; *as noun, m. pl.,* the Greeks.
Graiocelī, –ōrum, *m. pl.,* the Graioceli (Grāyō'selī), *a Gallic tribe.*
grātia, –ae, *f.,* gratitude, favor, influence; **grātiam habēre,** feel grateful; **grātiās agere,** thank; **grātiam referre,** show one's gratitude, requite; **grātiā,** by reason of, for the sake of (*w. gen. preceding*).
grātulātiō, –ōnis, *f.,* rejoicing, congratulation.
grātus, –a, –um, pleasing, grateful.
gravis, –e, heavy, serious, severe, important.
gravitās, –tātis, *f.,* weight, dignity.
graviter, *adv.,* seriously, severely, forcibly.
gremium, –mī, *n.,* lap, bosom.
Grudiī, –ōrum, *m. pl.,* the Grū'diī, *a Belgian tribe.*
gubernātor, –ōris, *m.,* pilot, governor.
gustō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, taste.

H

ha! *interj.,* ha!
habeō, –ēre, habuī, habitus, have, hold, regard, consider; **grātiam habēre,** feel grateful (*w. dat.*); **ōrātiōnem habēre,** deliver an oration.
habitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, live.
Hadriānus, –ī, *m.,* Hā'drian, *the emperor.*
Haeduus, –a, –um, Haeduan (Hĕd'uan); *as noun, m.,* a Haeduan; *pl.,* the Haeduans, *a Gallic tribe.*
haereō, –ēre, haesī, haesus, stick, cling.
Hannibal, –alis, *m.,* Hannibal, *a Carthaginian general.*
Harūdēs, –um, *m. pl.,* the Harū'dēs, *a German tribe.*

hastātus, –a, –um, of spearmen; *as noun, m. pl.,* spearmen, *first line of a Roman army.*

hauriō, –īre, hausī, haustus, drain, drink, swallow.

heia! *interj.,* ah ha!

Helvētius, –a, –um, Helvetian (Helvē′shian); *as noun, m. pl.,* the Helvetians, *a Gallic tribe.*

Hercynius, –a, –um, Hercynian (Hersin′ian); **Hercynia silva,** *a forest in southern Germany.*

hērēditās, –tātis, *f.,* inheritance.

hērēs, –ēdis, *m. and f.,* heir, heiress.

Hermodōrus, –ī, *m.,* Hermodō′rus, *a Greek name.*

heu! *interj.,* alas!

heus! *interj.,* say! listen!

Hibernia, –ae, *f.,* Ireland.

hībernus, –a, –um, of winter; **hīberna, –ōrum** (*sc.* **castra**), *n. pl.,* winter quarters.

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.,* this, the latter; he, she, it.

hīc, *adv.,* here.

hiemō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, spend the winter, be in winter quarters.

hiems, hiemis, *f.,* winter.

Hierosolyma, –ōrum, *n. pl.,* Jerusalem.

hilaris, –e, gay, cheerful.

hinc, *adv.,* hence.

Hispānia, –ae, *f.,* Spain.

Hispānus, –a, –um, Spanish; *as noun, m. pl.,* the Spaniards.

historia, –ae, *f.,* history.

hodiē, *adv.,* to-day.

Homērus, –ī, *m.,* Homer, *a Greek poet.*

homō, hominis, *m.,* man, human being.

honestē, *adv.,* honorably.

honestus, –a, –um, honorable.

honor, –ōris, honor, office.

hōra, –ae, *f.,* hour.

Horātiī, –ōrum, *m. pl.,* the Horatii (Horā′shiī), *three Roman brothers.*

Horātius, –tī, *m.,* Horace, *a Roman poet;* Horatius (Horā′shius) Cocles.

horrēns, *gen.,* **horrentis,** bristly, shaggy.

horreō, –ēre, horruī, —, shudder, dread.

horridus, –a, –um, savage, frightful.

Hortēnsia, –ae, *f.,* Hortensia (Horten′shia), *a Roman woman.*

hortor, –ārī, –ātus sum, incite, encourage, urge.

hortus, –ī, *m.,* garden.

hospes, hospitis, *m.,* guest, guest-friend.

Hostīlius, –lī, *m.,* Hostīl′ius, *a Roman king.*

hostis, –is, *m.,* enemy (*usually pl.*).

hūc, *adv.,* to this side, to this, here.

hūmānitās, –tātis, *f.,* culture.

hūmānus, –a, –um, human, civilized.

humilis, –e, low, humble.

I

iaceō, –ēre, iacuī, —, lie, lie dead.

iaciō, –ere, iēcī, iactus, throw, cast, hurl, build.

iactūra, –ae, *f.,* throwing, sacrifice.

iaculum, –ī, *n.,* missile, dart, javelin.

iam, *adv.,* already, immediately, now, at last; **nōn iam,** no longer.

Iāniculum, –ī, *n.,* Janĭc′ulum, *one of the hills of Rome.*

iānua, –ae, *f.*, door.
ibi, *adv.*, there, then.
Ībis, –idis, *f.*, Ī'bis, *a poem by Ovid.*
Iccius, –cī, *m.*, Iccius (Ic'shius), *a leader of the Remi.*
ictus, –ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow, shot.
īdem, eadem, idem, *dem. pron.*, same, likewise.
identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly, again and again.
idōneus, –a, –um, suitable.
Īdūs, Īduum, *f. pl.*, the Ides, *the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth day of all other months.*
igitur, *adv.*, therefore.
ignis, –is, *m.*, fire.
ignōminia, –ae, *f.*, disgrace, shame.
ignōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, be ignorant of, not know.
ignōscō, –ere, ignōvī, ignōtus, pardon, excuse.
ignōtus, –a, –um, unknown, strange.
illātus, –a, –um, *part. of* **īnferō.**
ille, illa, illud, *dem. pron.*, that, the famous, the former; he, she, it.
illigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tie to, tie.
illō, *adv.*, there, to that point.
illūc, *adv.*, to that place *or* side.
illūstris, –e, brilliant, noble.
Īllyricum, –ī, *n.*, Illȳr'icum, *a district along the east coast of the Adriatic.*
imāgō, imāginis, *f.*, likeness, apparition, statue.
imbēcillitās, –tātis, *f.*, weakness, feebleness.
imitātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, imitation.
imitor, –ārī, –ātus sum, imitate.
immānis, –e, huge, savage.
immānitās, –tātis, *f.*, ferocity.
immātūrus, –a, –um, untimely.
immittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go, send against, send in, spur on.
immolō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, sacrifice.
immortālis, –e, undying, immortal.
immūnis, –e, free from burdens, untaxed.
impedīmentum, –ī, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.
impediō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, hinder, obstruct.
impedītus, –a, –um, hindered, burdened, embarrassed, occupied; inaccessible, difficult.
impellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus, drive in, drive on, influence.
impendeō, –ēre, —, —, hang over.
impendō, –ere, –pendī, –pēnsus, spend.
imperātor, –ōris, *m.*, commander, general, emperor.
imperātum, –ī, *n.*, order, command.
imperītus, –a, –um, not experienced, ignorant, unacquainted with.
imperium, –rī, *n.*, command, control, might, military power, empire, government, sway; **nova imperia = novae rēs,** a revolution.
imperō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, command, order, rule, govern, levy (*w. dat.*).
impetrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, gain one's request, procure.
impetus, –ūs, *m.*, attack, fury.
impius, –a, –um, impious.
impōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, put on, impose.

importō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, carry in, bring in, import.
improbitās, –tātis, *f.*, dishonesty, wickedness.
imprōvīsus, –a, –um, unforeseen, unexpected; **dē imprōvīsō,** suddenly.
imprūdentia, –ae, *f.*, ignorance.
impulsus, –a, –um, *part. of* **impellō.**
īmus, –a, –um, lowest (depths); *see* **īnferior.**
in, *prep. w. acc.*, into, to, towards, against; *w. abl.*, in, on.
inānis, –e, empty.
incēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, move, advance.
incendium, –dī, *n.*, fire, burning.
incendō, –ere, –cendī, –cēnsus, set on fire, burn, rouse.
incertus, –a, –um, uncertain, in disorder.
incidō, –ere, –cidī, —, fall into *or* upon, happen; **incidere in,** fall in with.
incīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus, cut into, notch.
incipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, take to, begin.
incitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, urge on, arouse; *w. reflexive,* rush.
incognitus, –a, –um, not examined, unknown.
incolō, –ere, –coluī, —, inhabit, dwell, live.
incolumis, –e, unharmed, safe, uninjured.
incommodē, *adv.*, inconveniently, unfortunately.
incommodum, –ī, *n.*, inconvenience, misfortune, loss, defeat.
incrēdibilis, –e, extraordinary.
incumbō, –ere, –cubuī, –cubitus, lie upon, bend one's energy.
incursiō, –ōnis, *f.*, inroad, raid.
inde, *adv.*, then, from there.
Indī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, inhabitants of India.
indicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, reveal.
Indicus, –a, –um, of *or* with India.
indignitās, –tātis, *f.*, unworthiness, insult, outrage.
indignus, –a, –um, unworthy, undeserved, shameful.
indīligēns, *gen.*, **indīligentis,** careless, negligent.
indīligenter, *adv.*, carelessly, negligently.
indūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead *or* bring in; influence, induce.
induō, –ere, –duī, –dūtus, put on, impale.
ineō, –īre, –iī, –itus, enter upon; *w.* **cōnsilium,** form.
inermis, –e, unarmed.
īnfāmia, –ae, disgrace, dishonor.
īnfāmis, –e, *adj.*, infamous, notorious.
īnfāns, –fantis, *m. and f.*, infant.
īnfectus, –a, –um, not done, unaccomplished.
īnfēlīx, *gen.*, **īnfēlīcis,** unlucky, unhappy, unfruitful.
īnferior, –ius, lower, below, inferior, farther down; *superl.*, **īnfimus** *and* **īmus,** lowest, bottom.
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, bring in *or* to, place upon, inflict (*w. acc. and dat.*); **bellum īnferre,** make war; **signa īnferre,** charge.
īnfēstus, –a, –um, unsafe.

īnficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, stain, paint.
īnfimus, *see* **īnferior.**
īnfīnītus, –a, –um, endless, countless.
īnfirmitās, –tātis, *f.*, weakness, sickness.
īnfirmus, –a, –um, not strong, weak.
īnflectō, –ere, –flexī, –flexus, bend down, bend.
īnflō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, puff up, inflate.
īnfluō, –ere, –flūxī, –flūxus, flow in, empty into.
īnfrā, *adv.*, below, farther on; *prep. w. acc.*, below.
ingenium, –nī, *n.*, natural capacity, ability.
ingenuus, –a, –um, free-born, free.
ingrātus, –a, –um, ungrateful.
ingredior, –gredī, –gressus sum, step into, enter.
iniciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, thrust into, put into, throw upon.
inimīcus, –a, –um, unfriendly, hostile; *as noun, m.*, enemy.
inīquitās, –tātis, *f.*, unevenness, unfavorableness, unfairness.
inīquus, –a, –um, uneven, unfavorable, unjust.
initium, –tī, *n.*, beginning; **initium capere,** begin.
iniungō, –ere, –iūnxī, –iūnctus, join to, impose on.
iniūria, –ae, *f.*, wrong, injustice, injury; **iniūriā,** unjustly.
iniūstus, –a, –um, unjust; **iniūstē,** *adv.*, unjustly.
innītor, innītī, innīxus *or* **innīsus sum,** lean on, rest on.
innocēns, *gen.*, **innocentis,** harmless, innocent.
innuō, –ere, –nuī, —, beckon.
inopia, –ae, *f.*, need, lack, poverty.
inopīnāns, *gen.*, **inopīnantis,** not expecting, unawares.
inops, *gen.*, **inopis,** poor, wretched, weak.
inquam, *defective verb*, say; **inquit,** said, said he (*inserted parenthetically after one or more words of a direct quotation*).
īnscientia, –ae, *f.*, ignorance.
īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum, follow up, follow closely, pursue.
īnserō, –ere, –seruī, –sertus, put in, insert.
īnsidiae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, plot, ambush, treachery.
īnsignis, –e, remarkable, notable, conspicuous; *as noun,* **īnsigne, –is,** *n.*, ornament, signal.
īnsiliō, –īre, –siluī, —, leap upon.
īnsinuō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, wind in; **sē īnsinuāre,** work one's way in.
īnsistō, –ere, –stitī, —, stand (in *or* upon), press on, adopt.
īnstituō, –ere, –stituī, –stitūtus, establish, decide upon, begin, train, build, provide.
īnstitūtum, –ī, *n.*, custom, habit, practice, institution.
īnstō, –āre, īnstitī, —, press on, threaten.
īnstrūmentum, –ī, *n.*, tool, instrument, stock.
īnstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus, arrange, draw up, provide, instruct.
īnsuēfactus, –a, –um, accustomed, trained.

īnsula, –ae, *f.*, island.
īnsum, inesse, īnfuī, —, be in, be found in.
integer, –gra, –grum, untouched, fresh, unimpaired.
intellegenter, *adv.*, intelligently.
intellegō, –ere, –lēxī, –lēctus, realize, understand.
intendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus, direct, stretch out.
intentus, –a, –um, fixed, intent.
inter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, for, among; **inter sē,** with each other.
intercēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go between, intervene, take place.
intercipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, intercept, cut off.
interclūdō, –ere, –clūsī, –clūsus, shut off, cut off, hinder, prevent.
interdīcō, –ere, –dīxī, –dictus, debar from, forbid.
interdiū, *adv.*, in the daytime, by day.
intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.
intereō, –īre, –iī, –itus, perish, be killed, be destroyed.
interficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, kill, destroy.
intericiō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, throw between, put among, scatter in; intersperse; **brevī spatiō interiectō,** after a short interval.
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.
interior, –ius, interior, interior of; inland; **interiōrēs,** those within.
intermittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go between, stop, cease, interrupt, leave off, intervene.
interneciō, –ōnis, *f.*, slaughter, annihilation.
interpōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, put between, cause; allege, promise, pledge.
interpres, –pretis, *m. and f.*, mediator, interpreter.
interpretor, –ārī, –ātus sum, explain, interpret.
interrogō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, ask, question.
intersum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus, (be between), be present, take part (in), attend to (*w. dat.*).
intervāllum, –ī, *n.*, interval, distance.
interventus, –ūs, *m.*, coming between, coming on.
intrā, *prep. w. acc.*, within.
intrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, enter.
intrōdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead in, bring in.
introeō, –īre, –iī, –itus, go in, enter.
intrōmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, send in, admit.
inūsitātus, –a, –um, unusual, uncommon, strange.
inūtilis, –e, useless.
inveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come upon, find.
inventor, –ōris, *m.*, discoverer, author.
invictus, –a, –um, unconquered, invincible.
invideō, –ēre, –vīdī, –vīsus, be envious toward, envy (*w. dat.*).
invidia, –ae, *f.*, envy.
inviolātus, –a, –um, not treated with violence, inviolate, inviolable.

invītus, –a, –um, against one's will, under compulsion, unwilling.

iō! *interj.*, oh! ah! hurrah!

iocor, iocārī, iocātus sum, jest, joke.

iocus, –ī, *m.*, joke; *pl.*, **iocī** *or* **ioca.**

Iovis, Iovī, *see* **Iuppiter.**

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive pron.*, self, very.

īra, –ae, *f.*, anger, wrath.

īrācundus, –a, –um, easily made angry, quick-tempered.

īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum, be angry.

īrātus, –a, –um, angry.

irrideō, –ēre, –rīsī, –rīsus, laugh at, jeer.

irritus, –a, –um, void, useless.

irrumpō, –ere, –rūpī, –ruptus, break in, rush in.

is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, this, that; he, she, it.

iste, ista, istud, *dem. pron.*, that.

Isthmius, –a, –um, Isthmian, of the Isthmus (*of Corinth*).

ita, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus, yes; **ita utī,** just as.

Italia, –ae, *f.*, Italy.

Italicus, –a, –um, Italian.

itaque, *adv.*, and so, therefore.

item, *adv.*, also, besides, likewise.

iter, itineris, *n.*, march, way, road, journey; **iter facere,** march, travel; **iter magnum,** long stage, forced march.

iterum, *adv.*, again, for the second time.

iubeō, –ēre, iussī, iussus, order, command.

iucundus, –a, –um, pleasant.

Iūdaea, –ae, *f.*, Judē'a.

iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*, judge, juror.

iūdicium, –cī, *n.*, trial, judgment, decision.

iūdicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, judge, decide.

iūgerum, –ī, *n.*, acre.

iugulō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, execute.

iugum, –ī, *n.*, yoke, ridge, summit, hill.

Iugurtha, –ae, *m.*, Jugur'tha, *king of Numidia.*

Iūlia, –ae, *f.*, Julia, *a Roman name*; **Iūlius, –lī,** *m.*, Julius, *a Roman name.*

iungō, –ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join to (*w. dat.*), join, unite.

iūnior, –ius, *comp. of* **iuvenis,** younger.

Iūnius, –nī, *m.*, Junius, *a Roman name.*

Iūnō, –ōnis, *f.*, Juno, *a goddess, wife of Jupiter.*

Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, Jupiter, *king of the gods.*

Iūra, –ae, *m.*, Jura, *a range of mountains.*

iūre, *adv.*, justly.

iūrgium, –gī, *n.*, quarrel.

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law, power.

iūstitia, –ae, *f.*, justice.

iūstē, *adv.*, justly.

iūstus, –a, –um, just, right, cogent, regular, proper.

iuvenis, –is, *m.*, youth.

iuventūs, –tūtis, *f.*, youth, young people.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid, benefit.

iūxtā, *adv.*, close by.

K

Kalendae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, the Calends, *the first day of the month.*

L

L., *abbreviation for* **Lūcius, Lūcī,** *m.*, Lucius (Lū′shius), *a Roman name.*

Labiēnus, –ī, *m.*, Lăbiē′nus, *one of Caesar's officers.*

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, slip, glide by.

labor, –ōris, *m.*, work, toil, trouble, hardship.

labōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, labor, work, suffer, be hard pressed.

labrum, –ī, *n.*, lip, edge.

lac, lactis, *n.*, milk.

Lacedaemon, –onis, *f.*, Sparta, *a district in Greece.*

lacerō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tear to pieces, attack.

lacessō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus, attack.

lacrima, –ae, *f.*, tear.

lactūca, –ae, *f.*, lettuce.

lacus, –ūs, *m.*, lake.

laedō, –ere, laesī, laesus, injure.

Laelia, –ae, *f.*, Laelia (Lē′lia), *a Roman name.*

laetitia, –ae, *f.*, joy, delight.

Laetus, –ī, *m.*, Laetus (Lē′tus), *a Roman name.*

Laevīnus, –ī, *m.*, Laevinus (Lēvī′nus), *a Roman name.*

Lāneis, –idis, *f.*, Laneis (Lā′neis), *a Greek name.*

lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone.

Lār, Laris, *m.*, *a household god.*

lārva, –ae, *f.*, ghost.

lassitūdō, –dinis, *f.*, weariness.

lātē, *adv.*, widely, extensively; **longē lātēque,** far and wide.

lateō, latēre, latuī, —, lurk, escape notice.

later, –eris, *m.*, brick.

Latīnē, *adv.*, in Latin.

Latīnus, –a, –um, *adj.*, Latin, belonging to Latium; *as noun,* **Latīnī, –ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Latins.

lātitūdō, –dinis, *f.*, width, extent; **in lātitūdinem,** in width, sideways.

Latobrīgī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Latobrigi (Lătobrī′jī), *a Gallic tribe.*

latrō, –ōnis, *m.*, robber, bandit.

latrōcinium, –nī, *n.*, raid.

lātus, –a, –um, wide, broad.

latus, lateris, *n.*, side, flank.

laudō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, praise.

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise.

lavō, –āre, lāvī, lautus, wash, bathe.

laxō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, extend, open out.

lēctor, –ōris, *m.*, reader.

lēgātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, embassy.

lēgātus, –ī, *m.*, envoy; lieutenant general.

legiō, –ōnis, *f.*, legion.

legiōnārius, –a, –um, belonging to a legion, legionary.

legō, –ere, lēgī, lēctus, gather, choose, read, read aloud.

Lemannus, –ī, *m.*, *w.* **lacus,** Lake Geneva.

Lemovīcēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Lemovices (Lĕmovī′sēs), *a Gallic tribe.*

lēnis, –e, gentle.

lēniter, *adv.*, gently.

lentē, *adv.*, slowly.

leō, –ōnis, *m.*, lion.
Lepidus, –ī, *m.*, Lepidus, *a Roman name.*
lepus, leporis, *m.*, hare.
lētum, –ī, *n.*, death.
Levācī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Levaci (Levā′sī), *a Belgian tribe.*
levis, –e, light (*in weight*).
levitās, –tātis, *f.*, lightness, changeableness, inconstancy.
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law, condition; *w.* **ferō,** propose a law.
Lexoviī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Lexō′viī, *a Gallic tribe.*
libellus, –ī, *m.*, little book.
liber, librī, *m.*, book.
līber, –era, –erum, free.
līberāliter, *adv.*, like a free man, courteously, liberally.
līberī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, children.
līberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, set free.
lībertās, –tātis, *f.*, freedom.
lībertus, –ī, *m.*, freedman.
librārius, –rī, *m.*, bookseller.
licet, –ēre, licuit *or* **licitum est,** it is permitted, one may.
Licinius, –nī, *m.*, Licinius (Lisĭn′ius), *a Roman name.*
līctor, –ōris, *m.*, lictor, attendant of a magistrate.
lignātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, getting wood.
ligō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tie, bind.
Ligustīnus, –ī, *m.*, Ligustī′nus, *a Roman name.*
līmen, līminis, *n.*, threshold, door.
Lingonēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Lin′gonēs, *a Gallic tribe.*
lingua, –ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
littera, –ae, *f.*, letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.*, letter (*epistle*), literature.
lītus, lītoris, *n.*, shore.
Līvius, –vī, *m.*, Livy, *a Roman historian;* **Līvia, –ae,** *f.*, Livia, *wife of Augustus.*
locuplēs, *gen.*, **locuplētis,** *adj.*, rich.
locus, –ī, *m.* (*pl.*, **loca, locōrum,** *n.*), place, rank, room.
longē, *comp.*, **longius,** *superl.*, **longissimē,** *adv.*, far away, far, by far; **longē lātēque,** far and wide.
longinquus, –a, –um, distant, remote, protracted.
longitūdō, –dinis, *f.*, length; **in longitūdinem,** in length.
longurius, –rī, *m.*, long pole.
longus, –a, –um, long.
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, talk, speak.
lōrum, –ī, *n.*, strap, thong.
Lūcānius, –nī, *m.*, Lucā′nius, *a centurion.*
Lucrētia, –ae, *f.*, Lucretia (Lucrē′shia), *a Roman name.*
Lucrētius, –tī, *m.*, Lucretius (Lucrē′shius), *a Roman name.*
Lūcullus, –ī, *m.*, Lucullus, *a Roman general.*
lūdificō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make sport of, make a fool of.
lūdō, –ere, lūsī, lūsus, play.
lūdus, –ī, *m.*, game, play, school (*as a place for exercise*).
lūgeō, –ēre, lūxī, lūctus, bewail, mourn for.
Lugotorīx, –īgis, *m.*, Lugŏt′orix, *a British chieftain.*
lūmen, lūminis, *n.*, light; eye.
lūna, –ae, *f.*, moon; the moon goddess (Diana).
Lupercālia, –ium, *n. pl.*, the Lupercā′lia, *a Roman festival.*

Lutātius, –tī, *m.*, Lutatius (Lutā'shius); Lutatius Catulus, *a Roman general.*

Lutecia, –ae, *f.*, Lutecia (Lutē'shia), *a town of the Parisii, now* Paris.

lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light; **prīmā** *or* **ortā lūce,** at dawn.

lūxuria, –ae, *f.*, luxury, extravagance.

M

M., *abbreviation for* **Mārcus, –ī,** *m.*, Marcus, *a Roman name.*

M'., *abbreviation for* **Mānius, –nī,** *m.*, Manius, *a Roman name.*

Macedonia, –ae, *f.*, Macedonia, *a country northeast of Greece.*

Macedonicus, –a, –um, Macedonian.

māchinātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, mechanical contrivance, machine, engine.

Macrīnus, –ī, *m.*, Macrī'nus, *a friend of Pliny.*

maestus, –a, –um, sad, despondent.

Maevius, –vī, *m.*, Maevius (Mē'vius), *a centurion.*

magis, *adv.*, more; *superl.*, **maximē,** very, very greatly, especially.

magister, –trī, *m.*, master, teacher.

magistrātus, –ūs, *m.*, magistrate, magistracy.

magnificus, –a, –um, noble, grand.

magnitūdō, –dinis, *f.*, greatness, size, amount.

magnopere, *adv.*, greatly.

magnus, –a, –um, big, large, great; *comp.*, **maior, maius,** greater; *superl.*, **maximus, –a, –um,** greatest, very great.

maiestās, –tātis, *f.*, dignity, honor.

maior, *see* **magnus; maiōrēs (nātū),** older men, ancestors.

male, *adv.*, badly, unsuccessfully; *comp.*, **peius,** worse; *superl.*, **pessimē,** worst.

mālō, mālle, māluī, —, prefer.

mālum, –ī, *n.*, apple.

malus, –a, –um, bad, evil; *comp.*, **peior, peius,** worse; *superl.*, **pessimus, –a, –um,** very bad, worst.

mālus, –ī, *m.*, upright pole, mast.

Māmurius, –rī, *m.*, Mamur'ius, *a Roman name.*

mandātum, –ī, *n.*, order, commission.

mandō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, commit, intrust, give, command; **fugae sē mandāre,** take to flight.

Mandubiī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Mandū'biī, *a Gallic tribe.*

Mandubracius, –cī, *m.*, Mandubracius (Mandubrā'shius), *a British chief.*

maneō, –ēre, mānsī, mānsus, remain, continue, endure, abide.

manicae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, gloves, long sleeves.

manipulāris, –e, belonging to a maniple; *as noun,* *m.*, soldier of a maniple; comrade.

manipulus, –ī, *m.*, maniple.

Mānlius, –lī, *m.*, Măn'lius, *a Roman name.*

mānō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, flow.

manūmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, make free, emancipate.

manus, –ūs, *f.*, hand, group, force.

mappa, –ae, *f.*, napkin.

Marathōn, –ōnis, *f.*, Mar'athon, *a town in Greece.*

Mārcellus, –ī, *m.*, Marcel'lus, *a Roman general.*

Mārcius, –cī, *m.*, Marcius (Mar′shius), *a Roman name.*

Mārcus, –ī, *m.*, Marcus, *a Roman name.*

mare, maris, *n.*, sea.

margō, marginis, *m.*, edge, margin.

maritimus, –a, –um, near the sea, of the sea, naval; **ōra maritima,** seacoast.

marītus, –ī, *m.*, husband.

Marius, –rī, *m.*, Marius, *a Roman general and consul.*

marmoreus, –a, –um, of marble.

Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, Mars, *god of war;* **Mārtius, –a, –um,** of Mars; of the month of March.

Mārtius, –tī, *m.*, Martius (Mar′shius), *a Roman name.*

mās, maris, masculine; *as noun, m.*, male.

māter, mātris, *f.*, mother.

māteria, –ae, *f.*, matter, timber, wood.

mātrimōnium, –nī, *n.*, marriage; **in mātrimōnium dare,** give in marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry, take as wife.

Matrona, –ae, *m.*, the Marne River.

mātrōna, –ae, *f.*, wife, married woman, matron.

mātūrē, *adv.*, in season, soon, quickly.

mātūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hurry, make haste.

mātūrus, –a, –um, ripe, early, mature.

Maurētānia, –ae, *f.*, Mauretā′nia, *a country in Africa.*

maximē, *see* **magis.**

maximus, –a, –um, *see* **magnus.**

Maximus, –ī, *m.*, Maximus, *a Roman surname, as* Q. Fabius Maximus.

mēcum = cum mē.

medicus, –ī, *m.*, doctor.

mediocris, –e, moderate.

mediocritās, –tātis, *f.*, moderation, mean.

mediterrāneus, –a, –um, inland.

medius, –a, –um, middle, middle of, midst of; halfway between.

mel, mellis, *n.*, honey.

melior, *see* **bonus.**

mellītus, –a, –um, sweet as honey.

membrum, –ī, *n.*, member, part of the body.

meminī, meminisse (*perf. translated as pres.*), remember.

memoria, –ae, *f.*, memory; **memoriā tenēre,** remember.

Menapiī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Menā′piī, *a Belgian tribe.*

Menēnius, –nī, *m.*, Menē′nius Agrippa, *a prominent Roman.*

mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind.

mēnsa, –ae, *f.*, table.

mēnsis, –is, *m.*, month.

mēnsūra, –ae, *f.*, measurement.

mentiō, –ōnis, *f.*, (a calling to mind), mention.

mercātor, –ōris, *m.*, trader, merchant.

mercātūra, –ae, *f.*, trade; *pl.*, commercial transactions.

mercēs, mercēdis, *f.*, pay.

Mercurius, –rī, *m.*, Mercury, *the god of trade and gain and the messenger of the gods.*

mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus, deserve, earn.

mergō, –ere, mersī, mersus, dive.

merīdiānus, –a, –um, of midday, of noon.
merīdiēs, –ēī, *m.*, midday, noon; south.
meritum, –ī, *n.*, service, merit.
Messāla, –ae, *m.*, Messā'la, *a Roman consul.*
messus, *see* **metō.**
Metella, –ae, *f.*, Metĕl'la, *a Roman name;* **Metellus, –ī,** *m.*, Metĕl'lus, *a Roman name.*
mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, measure, measure out.
metō, –ere, messuī, messus, reap, harvest.
metus, –ūs, *m.*, fear, dread.
meus, –a, –um, mine, my.
migrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, depart.
mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier.
mīlitāris, –e, military, capable of bearing arms.
mīlitia, –ae, *f.*, military service.
mīlle, thousand; *pl.*, **mīlia.**
Miltiadēs, –is, *m.*, Miltī'adēs, *a Greek general.*
Minerva, –ae, *f.*, Minerva, *goddess of wisdom.*
minimē, *see* **minus.**
minimus, –a, –um, *see* **parvus.**
minor, *see* **parvus.**
Mīnōtaurus, –ī, *m.*, the Mĭn'otaur, *a monster with the head of a bull and the body of a man.*
minuō, –ere, minuī, minūtus, lessen, reduce; settle, ebb.
minus, *adv.*, less; **sī minus,** if not; *superl.*, **minimē,** least, by no means.
mīrāculum, –ī, *n.*, wonderful thing.
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, wonder, admire, wonder at.
mīrus, –a, –um, wonderful, astonishing.
misellus, –a, –um, poor (little).
Mīsēnum, –ī, *n.*, Mīsē'num, *a promontory near Naples.*
miser, –era, –erum, wretched, unhappy, poor.
miseria, –ae, *f.*, wretchedness.
misericordia, –ae, *f.*, pity, compassion, mercy.
Mithridātēs, –is, *m.*, Mithridā'tēs, *king of Pontus* (*Asia Minor*).
Mithridāticus, –a, –um, Mithridatic.
mittō, –ere, mīsī, missus, let go, send, throw.
mōbilitās, –tātis, *f.*, ease of movement, quickness, changeableness.
moderātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, self-control, moderation.
moderātus, –a, –um, moderate.
moderor, moderārī, moderātus sum, control, check.
modestē, *adv.*, modestly.
modius, –dī, *m.*, peck, *a measure.*
modo, *adv.*, only, merely, lately; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** not only . . . but also.
modus, –ī, *m.*, measure, limit, manner, kind, plan, way; **quem ad modum,** as, how.
moenia, –ium, *n. pl.*, walls of defense, city walls, walls.
molestē, *adv.*, with difficulty, with vexation; **molestē ferre,** be annoyed at, be indignant.
mollitia, –ae, *f.*, softness, weakness.
Mona, –ae, *f.*, the Isle of Man, *between England and Ireland.*
moneō, –ēre, monuī, monitus, remind, advise, direct, warn.

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.
mōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, point out, show.
monumentum, –ī, *n.*, memorial, monument.
mora, –ae, *f.*, delay.
morbus, –ī, *m.*, disease, sickness.
Morinī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Mor′inī, *a Belgian tribe.*
morior, morī, mortuus sum, die.
moror, –ārī, –ātus sum, delay.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mortālis, –e, mortal.
mortuus, –a, –um, dead.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, whim; *pl.*, character.
mōtus, –ūs, *m.*, motion, disturbance, uprising.
moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move, stir up; **castra movēre,** break camp.
mox, *adv.*, soon.
Mūcius, –cī, *m.*, Mucius (Mū′shius) Scaevola, *a famous Roman.*
mūla, –ae, *f.*, mule.
mulier, mulieris, *f.*, woman.
mulsum, –ī, *n.*, honey-wine.
multitūdō, –dinis, *f.*, multitude, great number.
multum, *adv.*, much; *comp.*, **plūs,** more; *superl.*, **plūrimum,** most.
multus, –a, –um, much; *pl.*, many; *comp.*, **plūrēs, plūra,** more, several; *superl.*, **plūrimus, –a, –um,** most, very many.
mundus, –ī, *m.*, world, universe.
mūniceps, mūnicipis, *m.*, fellow citizen.
mūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, fortify, defend, protect; **viam mūnīre,** build a road.
mūnītiō, –ōnis, *f.*, fortifying, fortification, ramparts, material for fortifying.
mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, duty, service, gift; *pl.*, shows, games, show (of gladiators).
mūrālis, –e, of a wall, wall.
Mūrēna, –ae, *m.*, Murē′na, *a Roman name.*
mūrus, –ī, *m.*, wall, rampart.
Mūs, Mūris, *m.*, Mus (Mo͞os), *a Roman name.*
mūtābilis, –e, changeable, fickle.
mutilus, –a, –um, mutilated, broken.
mūtō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, change.
mūtus, –a, –um, mute, speechless, still.
Myrōn, –ōnis, *m.*, Myron (Mī′ron), *a Greek sculptor.*

N

nactus, –a, –um, *part. of* **nancīscor.**
nam, *conj.*, for.
Namnetēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Nam′netēs, *a Gallic tribe.*
nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus *or* **nānctus sum,** get, obtain, secure, meet with, find.
nārrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tell, relate.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born, arise, be found; **duōs annōs nātus,** two years old.
Nāsīca, –ae, *m.*, Nasī′ca, *a Roman name.*
Nāsō, –ōnis, *m.*, Nā′so, *surname of the poet Ovid.*
nātālis, –e, of birth; **diēs nātālis,** birthday.
nātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, race, nation.
natō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, swim.

nātūra, –ae, *f.*, nature, character.
nātus, –a, –um, *part. of* **nāscor.**
nātus, –ūs, *m.* (*abl. sing. only*), birth.
nauta, –ae, *m.*, sailor.
nāvālis, –e, naval.
nāvicula, –ae, *f.*, small vessel, boat.
nāvigātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, sailing, navigation, voyage.
nāvigium, –gī, *n.*, boat.
nāvigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, sail.
nāvis, nāvis, *f.*, ship; **nāvis longa,** war galley; **nāvis onerāria,** transport.
nāvō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, do earnestly; **operam nāvāre,** do one's utmost.
nē, *conj.*, not, that not, lest; *adv.*, **nē . . . quidem** (*emphatic word between*), not even.
–ne (*enclitic*), *introduces questions.*
nec, *see* **neque.**
necessāriō, *adv.*, from necessity, necessarily.
necessārius, –a, –um, necessary.
necesse, *neuter adj.*, necessary.
necessitās, –tātis, *f.*, necessity.
necō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, kill, slay, destroy.
nefārius, –a, –um, abominable, unspeakable.
nefās, *n.*, *indeclinable,* sin, wrong.
neglegō, –ere, –lēxī, –lēctus, disregard, neglect.
negō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, deny, say no.
negōtium, –tī, *n.*, business, trouble; **negōtium dare,** instruct, direct.
nēmō, *dat.*, **nēminī,** *acc.*, **nēminem** (*no other forms*), no one.
nepōs, nepōtis, *m.*, grandson.
Nepōs, –ōtis, *m.*, Nē'pos, *a Roman historian.*
nēquāquam, *adv.*, by no means, not at all.
neque (*or* **nec**), and not, nor; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.
nēquīquam, *adv.*, without a reason, in vain.
Nerō, –ōnis, *m.*, Nero, *the emperor.*
Nerva, –ae, *m.*, Nerva, *the emperor.*
Nervius, –vī, *m.*, a Nervian; *pl.*, the Nervians, *or* Ner'viī, *a Belgian tribe.*
nervus, –ī, *m.*, string (of a musical instrument).
neu, *see* **nēve.**
neuter, –tra, –trum, neither (*of two*).
nēve *or* **neu,** *conj.*, and that . . . not, and lest, and not, nor.
nex, necis, *f.*, death, murder.
niger, –gra, –grum, black.
nihil, nothing, not at all, not.
nihilum, –ī, *n.*, nothing; **nihilō minus,** none the less, nevertheless.
nīl = **nihil.**
nimis, too much.
nimium, *adv.*, too, too much.
nisi, *conj.*, unless, except.
nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.
nōbilis, –e, distinguished, noble.
nōbilitās, –tātis, *f.*, nobility, rank; nobles, aristocracy.
nōbīscum = **cum nōbīs.**
noceō, –ēre, nocuī, nocitus, do harm to (*w. dat.*).
noctū, *adv.*, by night, in the night.

nocturnus, –a, –um, of night, night; during the night.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, not wish.
nōmen, nōminis, *n.*, name.
nōmināt̄im, *adv.*, by name, expressly.
nōminō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, name.
nōn, *adv.*, not; **nōn iam,** no longer.
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.
nōnus, –a, –um, ninth.
Nōreia, –ae, *f.*, Norē'ia, *a city of the Norici.*
Nōricus, –a, –um, Norican; *as noun, m. pl.*, the Norici (Nŏr'isī), *a tribe living near the Danube.*
nōs, nostrum, we (*pl. of* **ego**).
nōscō, –ere, nōvī, nōtus, learn; *in perf. tenses,* have learned, know.
noster, –tra, –trum, our.
nōtus, –a, –um, known, familiar, well-known.
novem, nine.
Noviodūnum, –ī, *n.*, Noviodunum, *a town of the Suessiones, now* Soissons.
novus, –a, –um, new, strange; **novissimum agmen** *or* **novissimī,** the rear; *w.* **rēs** *or* **imperia,** a revolution.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night; **ad multam noctem,** till late at night; **prīmā nocte,** at nightfall.
noxia, –ae, *f.*, offense, crime.
nūbēs, –is, *f.*, cloud.
nūbō, –ere, nūpsī, nūptus, veil, be married.
nūdō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make bare, strip, expose.
nūdus, –a, –um, naked, bare, unprotected.
nūllus, –a, –um, no, none; *as noun, m.*, no one.
num, *adv.*, whether.
Numa, –ae, *m.*, Numa, *a Roman king.*
Numantia, –ae, *f.*, Numantia (Numan'shia), *a city in Spain.*
numerus, –ī, *m.*, number, quantity, importance.
Numidia, –ae, *f.*, Numidia, *a country in Africa;* **Numidae, –ārum,** *m. pl.*, the Numidians.
nummus, –ī, *m.*, piece of money, money, coin.
numquam, *adv.*, never.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, report, announce.
nūntius, –tī, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report.
nūper, *adv.*, recently.
nūptiae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, marriage, wedding.
nūptus, –a, –um, *see* **nūbō.**
nūtus, –ūs, *m.*, nod, nodding.

O

Ō! *interj.*, O!
ob, *prep. w. acc.*, toward, on account of, for.
obiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, throw against, oppose, put in the way.
oblīviscor, –līvīscī, –lītus sum, forget.
obscūrus, –a, –um, dark.
observō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, observe, regard.
obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*, hostage.

obsideō, –ēre, –sēdī, –sessus, besiege, blockade.
obstinātus, –a, –um, resolved.
obstō, –āre, –stitī, –status, stand in the way, hinder.
obstringō, –ere, –strīnxī, –strictus, bind; lay under obligations.
obtestor, obtestārī, obtestātus sum, call as a witness; entreat.
obtineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, hold, obtain.
occāsiō, –ōnis, *f.*, opportunity, favorable moment.
occāsus, –ūs, *m.*, going down; **occāsus sōlis,** sunset, west.
occidō, –ere, –cidī, –cāsus, fall, set.
occīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus, kill.
occultē, *adv.*, secretly.
occultō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hide, conceal.
occultus, –a, –um, secret; **in occultō,** in a secret place, secretly.
occupātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, employment; *pl.*, business.
occupātus, –a, –um, busy.
occupō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, seize, occupy.
occurrō, –ere, –currī, –cursus, run against, meet (*w. dat.*), occur.
Ōceanus, –ī, *m.*, ocean (*esp. the Atlantic Ocean*).
ocellus, –ī, *m.*, (little) eye.
Ocelum, –ī, *n.*, Ocelum (O'selum), *a town in the Alps.*
Octāviānus, –ī, *m.*, Octaviā'nus, Octavian, *the emperor Augustus.*
Octāvius, –vī, *m.*, Octā'vius, *a Roman name.*
octāvus, –a, –um, eighth.
octō, eight.
oculus, –ī, *m.*, eye.
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus (*perf. translated as pres.*), hate.
odium, odī, *n.*, hatred.
odor, –ōris, *m.*, scent, odor, smell.
Oedipūs, –ī, *m.*, Oedipus (Ed'ipus), *a Greek king.*
offendō, –ere, –fendī, –fēnsus, offend.
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus, bear to, present, offer, confer; **sē offerre,** rush against.
officium, –cī, *n.*, duty, allegiance.
ōh! *interj.*, oh! **oho!** *interj.*, oho!
ōlim, *adv.*, once, formerly, sometime.
Olympia, –ae, *f.*, Olympia, *a city in Greece.*
Olympicus, –a, –um, Olympic.
Olympiēum, –ī, *n.*, *temple of the Olympian Jupiter.*
ōmen, ōminis, *n.*, omen, sign.
omittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go, drop, disregard.
omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, entirely, in all, at all.
omnis, omne, all, every, whole.
onerārius, –a, –um, for freight; **nāvis onerāria,** transport.
onus, oneris, *n.*, load, weight.
opācus, –a, –um, gloomy.
opera, –ae, *f.*, work, effort, aid; **tuā operā,** through your efforts; **dare operam,** do one's best.
opīniō, –ōnis, *f.*, opinion, impression, expectation; reputation.
oportet, –ēre, oportuit, it is fitting, *or* necessary, ought (*w. acc. and infin.*).
oppidum, –ī, *n.*, town, stronghold.
Oppius, –a, –um, Oppian, of Oppius, introduced by Oppius.

opportūnitās, –tātis, *f.*, convenience, opportunity, advantage.

opportūnus, –a, –um, fit, opportune, useful, advantageous, fortunate.

opprimō, –ere, –pressī, –pressus, overwhelm, surprise, crush, seize.

oppugnātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, assault, siege, method of attacking.

oppugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, attack, besiege.

ops, opis, *f.*, aid, might, influence; *pl.*, wealth, resources, influence.

optimē, *see* **bene.**

optimus, *see* **bonus.**

opus, operis, *n.*, work.

opus, *n.*, *indeclinable*, necessity, need; **opus esse,** be necessary.

ōra, –ae, *f.*, shore, coast.

ōrātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, speech.

ōrātor, –ōris, *m.*, speaker, orator.

orbis, –is, *m.*, circle; *w.* **terrārum,** the world (*i.e. the circle of lands around the Mediterranean*).

Orchadēs, –um, *f. pl.*, the Orkney Islands.

Orcus, –ī, *m.*, Orcus, *god of Hades.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, order, rank; **ex ōrdine,** in turn.

Orestilla, –ae, *f.*, Orestĭl'la, *a Roman name.*

Orgetorīx, –īgis, *m.*, Orgetorix (Orjĕt'orix), *a Helvetian.*

Oriēns, Orientis, *m.*, the East, the Orient.

orīgō, orīginis, *f.*, beginning, origin.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, arise, rise, begin, be descended from.

ōrnātus, –ūs, *m.*, dress, apparel.

ōrnātus, –a, –um, fitted out, equipped.

ōrnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, adorn, equip.

ōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, beg, ask, plead; **causās ōrāre,** plead cases.

Orpheus, –ī, *m.*, Orpheus (Or'fūs), *a famous musician.*

ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, expression.

os, ossis, *n.*, bone.

Osismī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Osĭs'mī, *a Gallic tribe.*

ostendō, –ere, ostendī, ostentus, (stretch out), show, display.

Ōstia, –ae, *f.*, Ŏs'tia, *a seaport town at the mouth of the Tiber.*

Othō, –ōnis, *m.*, Otho, *the emperor.*

ōtium, ōtī, *n.*, leisure, rest.

Ovidius, –dī, *m.*, Ŏvid, *a poet.*

ōvum, –ī, *n.*, egg.

P

P., *abbreviation for* **Pūblius, –lī,** Pub'lius, *a Roman name.*

pābulum, –ī, *n.*, food for cattle, forage, pasture.

pācō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make peaceful *or* quiet; subdue, conquer.

Paemānī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Paemani (Pēmā'nī), *a Belgian tribe.*

paene, *adv.*, almost.

Paestum, –ī, *n.*, Paestum (Pĕs'tum), *a town in southern Italy.*

Paetus, –ī, *m.*, Paetus (Pē'tus), *a Roman name.*

pāgus, –ī, *m.*, district, canton.

Palaestīna, –ae, *f.*, Palestine.

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

Palātīnus, –a, –um, Palatine; **Palātīnus (mōns),** the Palatine Hill, *one of the seven hills of Rome.*

Palātium, –tī, *n.*, the Palatium, *one of the seven hills of Rome.*

Palēs, –is, *f.*, Pā'lēs, *goddess of shepherds.*

palma, –ae, *f.*, palm, hand.

palūdāmentum, –ī, *n.*, cloak.

palūs, –ūdis, *f.*, marsh.

pandō, –ere, pandī, passus, extend.

panis, –is, *m.*, bread.

pannus, –ī, *m.*, cloth, "colors."

pantomīmus, –ī, *m.*, ballet dancer.

Papīrius, –rī, *m.*, Papĭr'ius, *a Roman name.*

pār, *gen.*, **paris,** equal (*w. dat.*), fair, same; *as noun, n.*, pair.

paradīsus, –ī, *m.*, Paradise.

parātus, –a, –um, prepared, ready.

parcē, *adv.*, sparingly.

parcō, –ere, pepercī, parsus, spare, save (*w. dat.*).

parēns, –entis, *m. and f.*, parent.

Parentālia, –ium, *n. pl.*, the Parentā'lia, *a Roman festival.*

pāreō, –ēre, pāruī, pāritus, (appear), be obedient to, obey (*w. dat.*).

Parīlia, –ium, (**Palīlia**), *n. pl.*, the Parĭl'ia, *a festival of Pales.*

pariō, –ere, peperī, partus, produce; gain, accomplish.

Parīsiī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Parĭs'iī, *a Gallic tribe.*

parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, get, get ready (for), prepare.

pars, partis, *f.*, part, side, direction.

Parthenōn, –ōnis, *m.*, the Par'thenon, *a temple of Athena at Athens.*

Parthī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Parthians, *a people of Asia.*

partim, partly; **partim . . . partim,** partly . . . partly, some . . . others.

partior, partīrī, partītus sum, divide, distribute.

partus, –a, –um, *part. of* **pariō.**

parvulus, –a, –um, very small; petty.

parvus, –a, –um, small; *comp.*, **minor, minus,** smaller, less; *superl.*, **minimus, –a, –um,** smallest, least, youngest; **parvā vōce,** in a low voice.

passer, passeris, *m.*, sparrow.

passus, –ūs, *m.*, pace (*about five feet*); **mīlle passūs,** mile.

passus, –a, –um, *part. of* **pandō** *and of* **patior.**

pāstor, –ōris, *m.*, shepherd.

patefaciō, –ere, –fēcī, –factus, lay open, open.

patēns, *gen.*, **patentis,** open, accessible, passable.

pateō, –ēre, patuī, —, stand open, be accessible, be free, extend.

pater, patris, *m.*, father, senator, patrician; **paterfamiliās,** master of the house; **patrēs cōnscrīptī,** senators.

patienter, *adv.*, with fortitude.

patientia, –ae, *f.*, endurance, patience.

patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, endure, allow, permit.

patria, –ae, *f.*, fatherland, country.

patrius, –a, –um, of a father, paternal, ancestral.

patrōnus, –ī, *m.*, patron.

paucī, –ae, –a, few, only a few.

paucitās, –tātis, *f.*, small number, fewness.

Paula, –ae, *f.*, Paula, *a Roman name.*
paulātim, *adv.*, little by little, gradually, by degrees; a few at a time.
paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time.
paulō *and* **paulum,** *adv.*, shortly, a little.
Paulus, –ī, *m.*, Paulus, *a Roman name.*
pauper, *gen.*, **pauperis,** *adj.*, poor.
paupertās, –tātis, *f.*, poverty.
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace, truce.
pecūnia, –ae, *f.*, money, property.
pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle; *pl.*, herds.
pedes, peditis, *m.*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry.
pedester, –tris, –tre, of foot soldiers, of infantry; on foot.
peditātus, –ūs, *m.*, infantry.
Pedius, –dī, *m.*, Pedius, *a Roman name.*
peior, *see* **malus.**
pellis, –is, *f.*, skin.
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, drive, defeat.
pendō, –ere, pependī, pēnsus, hang, weigh, pay.
penūria, –ae, *f.*, want, scarcity.
per, *prep. w. acc.*, through, by, during, along.
peragō, –ere, –ēgī, –āctus, complete.
percurrō, –ere, –cucurrī *or* **–currī, –cursus,** run through, run along.
percutiō, –ere, –cussī, –cussus, strike (through), transfix.
perdiscō, –ere, –didicī, —, learn thoroughly.
perdō, –dere, –didī, –ditus, lose, destroy.
perdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead through, extend, prolong, bring, bring over, conduct.
perendinus, –a, –um, after tomorrow.
pereō, –īre, –iī, –itus, be lost.
perequitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, ride through, drive through.
perferō, –ferre, –tulī, –lātus, carry through, announce, endure.
perficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, bring about, finish, accomplish, construct.
perfidia, –ae, *f.*, faithlessness, treachery.
perfuga, –ae, *m.*, deserter, fugitive.
perfugiō, –ere, –fūgī, —, flee for refuge, go over, escape, desert.
Periclēs, –is, *m.*, Pĕr'iclēs, *a Greek statesman.*
perīculōsus, –a, –um, dangerous.
perīculum, –ī, *n.*, danger, trial.
perītus, –a, –um, skilled, experienced, acquainted with.
perlegō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus, read through.
permaneō, –ēre, –mānsī, –mānsus, stay, remain, continue, hold out.
permittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go through, allow, intrust (*w. dat.*).
permoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus, move deeply, induce.
permulceō, –ēre, –mulsī, –mulsus, stroke.
perniciēs, –ēī, *f.*, destruction, overthrow, ruin.
perpaucī, –ae, –a, very few.
perpetuus, –a, –um, constant, lasting, continuous; **in perpetuum,** forever.

perrumpō, –ere, –rūpī, –ruptus, break through, force a passage.

Persae, –ārum, *m. pl.*, the Persians.

perscrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus, write out.

Perseus, –ī, *m.*, Perseus, *king of Macedonia.*

persevērō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, persist, persevere.

Persicus, –a, –um, Persian.

persōna, –ae, *f.*, mask, character, person.

perspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus, look through, see, examine, learn, find out, understand.

persuādeō, –ēre, –suāsī, –suāsus, persuade (*w. dat.*), teach.

perterreō, –ēre, –terruī, –territus, frighten thoroughly, alarm.

pertinācia, –ae, *f.*, obstinacy.

pertineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, extend to, pertain to, belong.

perturbātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, confusion, alarm.

perturbō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, throw into confusion, alarm.

perveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come (through), arrive, reach.

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot; **pedibus,** on foot.

pessimus, –a, –um, *see* **malus.**

pestilentia, –ae, *f.*, plague, pestilence.

petō, –ere, petīvī, petītus, beg, seek, ask; go to.

Petrosidius, –dī, *m.*, Petrosĭd'ius, *a Roman name.*

Pharsālus, –ī, *f.*, Pharsā'lus, *a city in Thessaly.*

Phīdias, –ae, *m.*, Phidias (Fĭd'ias), *a Greek sculptor.*

Philippī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, Philippi (Filĭp'ī), *a city in Macedonia.*

Philippidēs, –is, *m.*, Philĭp'pidēs, *a Greek name.*

Philippus, –ī, *m.*, Philip, *a Greek name, esp.* King Philip *of Macedonia.*

philosophia, –ae, *f.*, philosophy.

philosophus, –ī, *m.*, philosopher.

Phōciōn, –ōnis, *m.*, Phocion (Fō'shiun), *a Greek statesman.*

phōnascus, –ī, *m.*, singing teacher.

Phrygius, –a, –um, Trojan (*Troy was in Phrygia*).

Pīcēnum, –ī, *n.*, Picenum (Pīsē'num), *a district of Italy.*

Pictonēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Pĭc'tonēs, *a Gallic tribe.*

pila, –ae, *f.*, ball.

pīlum, –ī, *n.*, javelin; **mūrāle pīlum,** wall javelin (*heavier than the others*).

pīlus, –ī, *m.*, first maniple (*of a cohort*); **prīmus pīlus,** first maniple (*of a legion*); **prīmī pīlī centuriō,** first centurion (*of a legion*), chief centurion, *often called* **prīmipīlus.**

pīnus, –ūs, *f.*, pine tree.

pīpiō, –āre, —, —, chirp.

pīrāta, –ae, *m.*, pirate.

piscor, piscārī, piscātus sum, fish.

Pīsō, –ōnis, *m.*, Pī'so, *a Roman name.*

pius, –a, –um, dutiful, loyal.

Pius, –ī, *m.*, Pīus, *a Roman name.*

placeō, –ēre, placuī, placitus, be pleasing to, please (*w. dat.*); *impers.*, it seems best to, (he) decides, it is decided by.

plācō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, appease.

plānitiēs, –ēī, *f.*, level ground, plain.
plānus, –a, –um, level, plane.
Platō, –ōnis, *m.*, Plā'tō, *a Greek philosopher.*
Plautius, –tī, *m.*, Plautius (Plau'shius), *a Roman name.*
Plautus, –ī, *m.*, Plau'tus, *a Roman dramatist.*
plēbs (plēbēs), plēbis, *f.*, people, common people.
plēnus, –a, –um, full, complete.
plērīque, –aeque, –aque, most, the most, the majority.
plērumque, *adv.*, usually.
Pleumoxiī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Pleumoxii (Plumŏx'iī), *a Belgian tribe.*
Plīnius, –nī, *m.*, Pliny, *a Roman author.*
plōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, weep, wail.
plumbum, –ī, *n.*, lead; **plumbum album,** (white lead), tin.
plūrēs, plūra, more, *see* **multus.**
plūrimum, *see* **multum; plūrimum posse** *or* **valēre,** be very powerful.
plūrimus, *see* **multus.**
plūs, *see* **multum, multus; plūs posse,** be more powerful.
Pnyx, Pyknos, *f.*, the Pnyx (P'nĭks), *a place at Athens where the assemblies of the citizens were held.*
pōculum, –ī, *n.*, drinking cup.
poēma, poēmatis, *n.*, poem.
poena, –ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment; **poenam dare,** pay the penalty.
Poenī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians (*of Phoenician origin*).
poēta, –ae, *m.*, poet.
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, promise.
Pollux, –ūcis, *m.*, Pollux, *a god.*
pompa, –ae, *f.*, parade, procession.
Pompeius, –peī, *m.*, Pompey, *a Roman general and statesman.*
Pompilius, –lī, *m.*, Pompil'ius: Numa Pompilius, *a Roman king.*
Pomptīnus, –a, –um, Pŏn'tīne; *w.* **palūdēs,** the Pŏn'tīne Marshes, *south of Rome.*
pondō, in weight, pounds.
pondus, ponderis, *n.*, weight.
pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus, put, place, set, serve, lay aside; *passive*, be situated, depend upon; **castra pōnere,** pitch camp.
pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
pontifex, pontificis, *m.*, priest.
Pontiliānus, –ī, *m.*, Pontiliā'nus, *a Roman name.*
Pontus, –ī, *m.*, Pon'tus, *the region south of the Black Sea.*
poposcī, *see* **poscō.**
populus, –ī, *m.*, people; *pl.*, peoples, nations.
Porcius, –cī, *m.*, Porcius (Por'shius), *a Roman name.*
Porsena, –ae, *m.*, Por'sena, *an Etruscan king.*
porta, –ae, *f.*, gate; **porta Capēna,** *a gate in the wall of Rome.*
porticus, –ūs, *f.*, porch, colonnade.
portō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, carry.
portus, –ūs, *m.*, harbor, port.
poscō, –ere, poposcī, —, demand, call for.
possessiō, –ōnis, *f.*, possession, property, farm.

possum, posse, potuī, —, can, can do, be able (*w. infin.*); **multum (plūs, plūrimum) posse,** be very powerful.

post, *adv. and prep. w. acc.,* behind, (*of place*); after, later (*of time*).

posteā, *adv.,* afterwards; **posteā quam,** *conj.,* after.

posterus, –a, –um, following, next; *as noun, m. pl.,* posterity, descendants.

postquam, *conj.,* after.

postrēmō, *adv.,* at last, finally.

postrīdiē, *adv.,* on the next day, the day after.

postulō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, demand.

Postumius, –mī, *m.,* Postumius, *a Roman name.*

potēns, *gen.,* **potentis,** *adj.,* powerful.

potestās, –tātis, *f.,* power, authority, chance, permission.

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, get possession of (*w. abl.*).

potius, *adv.,* rather, more, sooner.

prae, *prep. w. abl.,* before; in comparison with, in view of; for.

praeacūtus, –a, –um, sharpened at the end, pointed.

praecēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go before, surpass.

praeceps, *gen.,* **praecipitis,** *adj.,* headlong, steep.

praeceptum, –ī, *n.,* command, rule, precept.

praecipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, order, direct.

praecō, –ōnis, *m.,* announcer, herald.

praeda, –ae, *f.,* booty, prey.

praedicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, announce, declare, boast.

praedor, praedārī, praedātus sum, take booty, plunder.

praefectus, –a, –um, *part. of* **praeficiō**; *as noun, m.,* commander, officer.

praeferō, –ferre, –tulī, –lātus, bear before, put before, prefer; **sē praeferre,** surpass.

praeficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, set over, put in command of.

praefīgō, –ere, –fīxī, –fīxus, fasten before, set up in front.

praemittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, send ahead, send forward.

praemium, –mī, *n.,* reward.

Praeneste, –is, *n.,* Praeneste, *a town in Italy.*

praeparō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, get ready, prepare.

praerumpō, –ere, –rūpī, –ruptus, tear away in front, break off.

praesaepiō, –īre, –saepsī, –saeptus, block (up).

praescrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus, write beforehand, direct.

praescrīptum, –ī, *n.,* previous direction, order.

praesēns, *gen.,* **praesentis,** *adj.,* present, in person.

praesentia, –ae, *f.,* presence, readiness, present.

praesertim, *adv.,* especially, particularly.

praesidium, –dī, *n.,* garrison, guard, protection, aid.

praestāns, *gen.,* **praestantis,** *adj.,* remarkable, preëminent.

praestō, –āre, –stitī, –stitus, stand before, excel (*w. dat.*); perform, show; *impers.,* it is better, it is preferable.

praesum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus, be in charge of, rule (*w. dat.*).

praeter, *prep. w. acc.*, past, beyond; except, besides, contrary to.

praetereā, *adv.*, in addition, furthermore, besides.

praetereō, –īre, –iī, –itus, go by, pass, omit, pass over.

praeterquam, *adv.*, except, other than.

praetextātus, –a, –um, clothed with *or* wearing the toga praetexta.

praetor, –ōris, *m.*, praetor (*Roman magistrate charged with the administration of justice*).

praeustus, –a, –um, charred at the end.

praevaleō, –ēre, –valuī, –valitus, prevail.

prandium, –dī, *n.*, luncheon.

precor, precārī, precātus sum, request, entreat.

prehendō, –ere, –hendī, –hēnsus, grasp, take hold of, seize.

premō, –ere, pressī, pressus, press, press hard, oppress, crush, crowd.

prēndō, –ere, prēndī, prēnsus, grasp, seize.

pretium, –tī, *n.*, price; reward.

prex, precis, *chiefly in pl.*, *f.*, entreaty, prayer, curse.

prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before.

prīmipīlus, –ī, *m.*, first centurion (*of a legion*), chief centurion.

prīmō, *adv.*, at first.

prīmum, *adv.*, first, at first, for the first time; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.

prīmus, –a, –um, first; **in prīmīs,** especially.

prīnceps, prīncipis, *adj. and noun, m.*, chief, first man, leader, emperor.

prīncipātus, –ūs, *m.*, first place, supremacy, leadership.

prior, prius, former, first.

Prīscus, –ī, *m.*, Priscus, *a Roman name, esp.* Tarquinius Priscus, *a Roman king.*

prīstinus, –a, –um, original, former.

prius, *comp. adv.*, before; **prius quam,** *see* **priusquam.**

priusquam, *conj.*, before.

prīvātus, –a, –um, private; *as noun, m.*, private citizen.

prō, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of, before, for, in behalf of, on account of, instead of, in accordance with, in proportion to.

probitās, –tātis, *f.*, honesty.

probō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, test, prove, approve.

prōcēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go forth, advance, proceed.

Procillus, –ī, *m.*, Procillus (Prosĭl′us), *a Roman name.*

procul, *adv.*, at a distance, far off.

prōcumbō, –ere, –cubuī, –cubitus, fall forward, fall prostrate; lean forward, lie down.

prōcūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, take care of, attend to.

prōcurrō, –ere, –cucurrī *or* **–currī, –cursus,** run forward, rush forward, charge.

prōditor, –ōris, *m.*, traitor.

prōdō, –dere, –didī, –ditus, give forth, hand down, give up, betray.

prōdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead forth *or* out, prolong.

proelium, –lī, *n.*, battle.

profectiō, –ōnis, *f.*, setting out, departure.
prōferō, –ferre, –tulī, –lātus, carry out, bring out.
professor, –ōris, *m.*, professor.
prōficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, accomplish.
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out, start.
profiteor, profitērī, professus sum, declare publicly, promise, offer.
profugiō, –ere, –fūgī, –fugitūrus, flee forth, escape.
profundō, –ere, –fūdī, –fūsus, cause to flow.
prōgnātus, –a, –um, descended.
prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, step forward, advance.
prohibeō, –ēre, –hibuī, –hibitus, prevent, keep from, cut off.
prōiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, throw forward, prostrate, abandon; hold before (one's self).
prōmissus, –a, –um, (let go, let grow), long, hanging down.
prōmoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus, move forward, push onward.
prōmulsis, –idis, *f.*, first course (of a banquet).
prōmunturium, –rī, *n.*, promontory.
prōnuba, –ae, *f.*, matron *or* maid of honor.
prōnūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, announce, recite.
prope, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, almost, near.
prōpellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus, drive away, dislodge.
properō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hasten.
propinquitās, –tātis, *f.*, nearness, vicinity; relationship.
propinquus, –a, –um, near; *as noun,* *m.*, relative.
propior, –ius, nearer.
propitius, –a, –um, propitious, favorable.
prōpōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, set forth, explain, present, offer, propose (*of a law*).
proprius, –a, –um, (one's) own, fitting, characteristic of.
propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.
propterea, *adv.*, on that account; **propterea quod,** because.
prōpugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, go forth to fight, fight on the offensive; resist.
Propylaea, –ōrum, *n. pl.*, the Propylaea (Propīlē'a), *entrance to the Acropolis at Athens.*
prōscrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus, post up, advertise.
prōsequor, –sequī, –secūtus sum, follow up, pursue, address.
prōspectus, –ūs, *m.*, view, prospect, sight.
prosperitās, –tātis, *f.*, success, prosperity.
prōspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus, foresee, look out for.
prōsternō, –ere, –strāvī, –strātus, overthrow, ruin.
prōsum, prōdesse, profuī, —, benefit, profit (*w. dat.*).
prōtinus, *adv.*, immediately.
prōvehō, –ere, –vexī, –vectus, carry forward; *passive,* advance.
prōvideō, –ēre, –vīdī, –vīsus, foresee, provide, act with foresight.
prōvincia, –ae, *f.*, province.
prōvinciālis, –e, provincial, of a province.

prōvocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, call out, challenge.
proximē, *adv.*, most recently.
proximus, –a, –um, nearest, last, next (*w. dat.*), very near.
prūdentia, –ae, *f.*, foresight, good sense.
pūblicē, *adv.*, publicly.
Pūblicola, –ae, *m.*, Publĭc'ola, *a Roman consul.*
pūblicus, –a, –um, public.
Pūblius, Pūblī, *m.*, Pub'lius, *a Roman name.*
pudīcitia, –ae, *f.*, modesty.
puella, –ae, *f.*, girl.
puer, puerī, *m.*, boy, child.
puerīlis, –e, of a boy, boyish.
puerīliter, *adv.*, foolishly.
pueritia, –ae, *f.*, boyhood.
pugna, –ae, *f.*, fight, battle.
pugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, fight.
pulcher, –chra, –chrum, beautiful.
Pullō, –ōnis, *m.*, Pŭl'lō, *a Roman centurion.*
pulsus, –a, –um, *part. of* **pellō.**
pulvis, pulveris, *m.*, (cloud of) dust.
pūmex, –icis, *m.*, pumice stone.
Pūnicus, –a, –um, Punic, Carthaginian.
pūpa, –ae, *f.*, doll.
puppis, –is, *f.*, stern.
putō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, think, consider.
Pydna, –ae, *f.*, Pyd'na, *a city in Macedonia.*
Pyrēnaeī montēs, *m. pl.*, the Pyrenees Mountains.
Pyrrhus, –ī, *m.*, Pyr'rhus, *king of Epirus.*
Pythias, –ae, *m.*, Pyth'ias, *friend of Damon.*

Q

Q., *abbreviation for* **Quīntus, –ī,** *m.*, Quintus, *a Roman name.*
quā, *adv.*, where.
quadrīgae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, four-horse team, chariot.
quadringentī, –ae, –a, four hundred.
quaerō, –ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, seek, inquire.
quaestiō, –ōnis, *f.*, investigation.
quaestor, –ōris, *m.*, quaestor, *a Roman official.*
quaestus, –ūs, *m.*, gain, profit, getting of money.
quālis, –e, what kind of, of what sort, such as, as.
quam, *adv. and conj.*, how, how much, as; *w. comp.*, than; *w. superl.*, as . . . as possible; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.
quamquam, *conj.*, although.
quandō, *adv. and conj.*, when, at any time, ever.
quantus, –a, –um, how great, how much, as (great as); **quantō . . . tantō,** the . . . the.
quārē, why; and for that reason, therefore.
quārtus, –a, –um, fourth; **quārtus decimus,** fourteenth.
quasi, *adv. and conj.*, as if, as it were.
quater, *num. adv.*, four times.
quattuor, four.
–que (*always joined to the second word*), and.
queror, querī, questus sum, complain.
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that.

quī, quae, quod, *interrog. adj.*, what.
quia, *conj.*, because.
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever.
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *and* (*adj.*) **quoddam,** *indef. pron.*, a certain one *or* thing; *adj.*, certain, some.
quidem (*follows emphasized word*), indeed, at least, to be sure.
quiēs, quiētis, *f.*, rest, sleep, quiet.
quiēscō, –ere, quiēvī, quiētus, be quiet, be still.
quīn etiam, moreover.
Quīnctius, –tī, *m.*, Quinctius (Kwĭnk′shius), *a Roman name.*
quīnquāgintā, fifty.
quīnque, five.
Quīntiliānus, –ī, *m.*, Quintil′ian, *a Roman writer.*
quīntus, –a, –um, fifth.
Quīntus, –ī, *m.*, Quĭn′tus, *a Roman name.*
Quirīnālis (mōns), –is, *m.*, the Quĭr′ĭnal, *one of the seven hills of Rome.*
quirītātus, –ūs, *m.*, wail, scream.
quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who, what.
quis, quid, *indef. pron.*, **quis, qua, quod,** *indef. adj.*, any, any one.
quisnam, quidnam, *interrog. pron.*, **quīnam, quaenam, quodnam,** *adj.*, who (what) in the world.
quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam *and* (*adj.*) **quodpiam,** *indef. pron.*, any one, any, some one, some.
quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron.*, anyone, anything; *adj.*, any.
quisque, quidque, *indef. pron.*, each one, each thing; **nōbilissimus quisque,** all the highest nobles.
quisquis, quicquid, *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever.
quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs *and* (*adj.*) **quodvīs,** *indef. pron.*, any one you please; *as adj.*, any you please, whatever.
quō, *rel. and interrog. adv.*, where, whither, to which.
quō, *conj.*, that thereby, in order that; **quō minus,** that not, from.
quoad, *conj.*, until, as long as.
quod, *conj.*, because; **quod sī,** but if, and yet if.
quondam, *adv.*, once (upon a time).
quoniam, *conj.*, since, because.
quoque, *adv.*, also.
quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many; as many as, as.
quotannīs, *adv.*, every year.
quotiēns, *adv.*, as often as.

R

rādīx, –īcis, *f.*, root.
raeda, –ae, *f.*, carriage, omnibus.
rāmus, –ī, *m.*, branch, prong.
rāna, –ae, *f.*, frog.
rapiditās, –tātis, *f.*, rush, swiftness.
rapiō, –ere, rapuī, raptus, seize, carry off.
rārus, –a, –um, rare, scattered, far apart.
ratiō, –ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account, plan, manner, reason, consideration, method, theory.
ratis, –is, *f.*, raft, float.
Rauracī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Rauracī (Rau′rasī), *a Gallic tribe.*
rebelliō, –ōnis, *f.*, renewal of hostilities, revolt.
Rebilus, –ī, *m.*, Reb′ilus, *a Roman name.*

recēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go back, withdraw, retire.

recēns, *gen.*, **recentis,** *adj.*, fresh, new, recent.

recēnseō, –ēre, –cēnsuī, –cēnsus, count again, number, review.

receptus, –ūs, *m.*, retreat, way of retreat, place of refuge.

recessus, –ūs, *m.*, retreat, means of retreat, chance to retreat.

recipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, take back, receive, regain; **sē recipere,** retreat, withdraw, recover.

recitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, recite, read aloud.

reclīnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, bend back; *passive*, lean; **sē reclīnāre,** lean, recline.

recordor, –ārī, –ātus sum, recollect, recall.

rēctē, *adv.*, rightly.

rēctus, –a, –um, straight; *as noun, n.*, right.

recubō, –āre, —, —, recline.

recuperō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, get back, recover.

recūsō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make objections, refuse, reject.

reddō, –dere, reddidī, redditus, return, render, make, restore.

redeō, –īre, rediī, reditus, go back, return.

redigō, –igere, redēgī, redāctus, drive *or* bring back, reduce.

redimō, –ere, redēmī, redēmptus, buy back, ransom.

redintegrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, restore, renew, recruit; begin again.

reditus, –ūs, *m.*, return.

Redonēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Rĕd'-onēs, *a Gallic tribe.*

redūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead back, bring back.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, bring *or* carry back, bring, bear off, report, give back, reproduce; **pedem referre,** fall back.

reficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, repair, refresh, restore.

refugiō, –ere, –fūgī, –fugitūrus, flee back, flee for safety, escape.

Regillēnsis, –e, of Regillus (Rejĭl'-us), *a lake on the shore of which the Romans defeated the Latins.*

rēgīna, –ae, *f.*, queen.

Rēgīnus, –ī, *m.*, Reginus (Rejī'-nus), *one of Caesar's officers.*

regiō, –ōnis, *f.*, district, region.

rēgius, –a, –um, royal.

rēgnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, reign, rule.

rēgnum, –ī, *n.*, royal power, kingdom, rule.

regō, –ere, rēxī, rēctus, rule, guide.

Rēgulus, –ī, *m.*, Regulus, *a Roman name.*

reiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, throw, hurl *or* drive back, reject.

relābor, relābī, relāpsus sum, slip back, vanish.

relanguēscō, –ere, –languī, —, become weak, be relaxed.

religiō, –ōnis, *f.*, sense of duty, fear of the gods, superstition, religion; *pl.*, religious matters.

relinquō, –ere, –līquī, –lictus, leave (behind), abandon.

reliquus, –a, –um, remaining, rest (of), left.

remaneō, –ēre, –mānsī, –mānsūrus, remain behind, remain.

remedium, –dī, *n.*, remedy.
rēmigō, –āre, —, —, row.
remigrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, go back, return.
remissus, –a, –um, relaxed, mild.
remittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, relax, send *or* throw back, remit.
remōtus, –a, –um, remote.
removeō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus, move back, remove, withdraw.
rēmus, –ī, *m.*, oar.
Rēmus, –ī, *m.*, a Reman, one of the Remi; *pl.*, the Rē′mī, *a Belgian tribe.*
renūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, report.
repellō, –pellere, reppulī, repulsus, drive back, repulse.
repente, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly.
repentīnus, –a, –um, sudden, unlooked for, hasty.
reperiō, –perīre, repperī, repertus, find, discover.
repetō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus, seek back, seek again.
reportō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, carry *or* bring back.
reprehendō, –ere, –hendī, –hēnsus, reprove, censure.
reprimō, –ere, –pressī, –pressus, press back, stop.
repudiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, put away, divorce.
repulsa, –ae, *f.*, defeat.
requīrō, –ere, –quīsīvī, –quīsītus, miss, long for.
rēs, reī, *f.*, thing, matter, affair; **rēs frūmentāria,** grain supplies; **rēs mīlitāris,** military affairs, military science, art of war; **rēs pūblica,** public affairs, government, state; **rēs gestae,** deeds, occurrences; **quā ex rē, quam ob rem,** wherefore, therefore.
rescindō, –ere, –scidī, –scissus, cut down, break down, tear apart.
reservō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, reserve, keep.
resideō, –ēre, –sēdī, —, be left, remain.
resistō, –ere, restitī, —, stand against, resist (*w. dat.*).
respiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus, look back (at), consider.
respondeō, –ēre, –spondī, –spōnsus, answer.
respōnsum, –ī, *n.*, answer.
restituō, –ere, –stituī, –stitūtus, restore, reinstate.
resūmō, –ere, –sūmpsī, –sūmptus, take up again, resume.
rēte, rētis, *n.*, net, snare.
retineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, hold back, restrain, keep.
retrahō, –ere, –trāxī, –trāctus, drag back.
retrō, *adv.*, back.
reverentia, –ae, *f.*, respect, regard.
revereor, reverērī, reveritus sum, respect, revere.
revertō, –ere, –vertī, –versus, return (*sometimes deponent*).
revocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, recall, call back.
rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king.
Rhēnus, –ī, *m.*, the Rhine River.
rhētor, –oris, *m.*, orator, rhetorician.
Rhodanus, –ī, *m.*, the Rhone River, *in France.*

Rhodopēius, –a, –um, of Rhodope, Thracian.
rīdeō, –ēre, rīsī, rīsus, laugh (at).
rīpa, –ae, *f.,* bank (*of a river*).
rogō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, ask.
rogus, –ī, *m.,* funeral pyre.
Rōma, –ae, *f.,* Rome.
Rōmānus, –a, –um, Roman; *as noun, m. and f.,* a Roman; *m. pl.,* the Romans.
Rōmulus, –ī, *m.,* Rŏm′ulus, *founder of Rome.*
rosa, –ae, *f.,* rose.
rōstrum, –ī, *n.,* beak, ship's beak.
rotundus, –a, –um, round.
rubeō, –ēre, —, —, be red.
Rubicō, –ōnis, *m.,* the Rubicon, *a river in Italy.*
rubus, –ī, *m.,* bramble.
Rūfīnus, –ī, *m.,* Rufī′nus, *a Roman name.*
Rūfus, –ī, *m.,* Rufus, *a Roman name.*
ruīna, –ae, *f.,* ruin.
rūmor, –ōris, *m.,* rumor, report.
rumpō, –ere, rūpī, ruptus, break, destroy.
rūpēs, –is, *f.,* cliff, rock.
rūrsus, *adv.,* again.
rūsticus, –a, –um, rural, rustic.

S

Sabīna, –ae, *f.,* a Sabine woman.
Sabīnī, –ōrum, *m. pl.,* the Sā′bīnes, *a people of Italy.*
Sabīnus, –a, –um, Sā′bīne.
Sabīnus, –ī, *m.,* Sabī′nus, *a Roman name.*
Sabis, –is, *acc.,* **–im,** *m.,* the Sambre River.
sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred.
sacrificium, –cī, *n.,* sacrifice.
sacrificō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, sacrifice.
sacrum, –ī, *n.,* sacred vessel; *pl.,* religious rites.
saepe, *adv.,* often.
saepēs, –is, *f.,* hedge.
sagitta, –ae, *f.,* arrow.
sagittārius, –rī, *m.,* bowman, archer.
sagulum, –ī, *n.,* cloak.
Saliī, –ōrum, *m. pl.,* the Sā′liī *or* "Jumpers" (*priests of Mars*).
saliō, –īre, saluī, saltus, jump, spring.
Sallustius, –tī, *m.,* Sallust, *a Roman historian.*
saltō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, dance.
salūbris, –e, *adj.,* wholesome.
salūs, –ūtis, *f.,* health, safety, greeting; **salūtem dīcere,** pay one's respects.
Samnītēs, –ium, *m. pl.,* the Sam′nītes, *a people of Italy.*
sānctus, –a, –um, sacred, inviolable.
sanguis, sanguinis, *m.,* blood.
saniēs, —, *f.,* matter.
Santonī, –ōrum, *m. pl.,* the Săn′tonī, *a Gallic tribe.*
sānus, –a, –um, sound.
sapiēns, *gen.,* **sapientis,** wise.
sapientia, –ae, *f.,* wisdom.
sapiō, –ere, –īvī, —, be wise.
Sardinia, –ae, *f.,* Sardinia, *an island near Italy.*
satis (*or* **sat**), *adv. and indecl. adj.,* enough, sufficiently, rather.
satisfaciō, –ere, –fēcī, –factus, satisfy; make amends; placate (*w. dat.*).
saucius, –a, –um, wounded.

saxum, –ī, *n.*, large stone, rock.
scaena, –ae, *f.*, stage.
scaenicus, –a, –um, of the theater; *w.* **lūdī,** stage plays.
Scaevola, –ae, *m.*, Scaevola (Sĕv'ola), *a Roman hero.*
scālae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, flight of steps, ladder, scaling ladder.
scapha, –ae, *f.*, boat, skiff.
scelus, sceleris, *n.*, crime.
scēptrum, –ī, *n.*, sceptre.
schola, –ae, *f.*, school.
scholasticus, –a, –um, scholastic, belonging to a school; **scholasticus, –ī,** *m.*, scholar, student.
scientia, –ae, *f.*, knowledge.
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know, know how.
scīpiō, –ōnis, *m.*, staff.
Scīpiō, –ōnis, *m.*, Scipio (Sĭp'io), *a Roman name.*
scrība, –ae, *m.*, secretary, scribe.
scrībō, –ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write.
Scrībōniānus, –ī, *m.*, Scriboniā'nus, *a Roman name.*
scrobis, –is, *m. and f.*, pit, wolf-hole.
scūtum, –ī, *n.*, shield.
Scythae, –ārum, *m. pl.*, the Scythians (Sĭth'ians), *wild tribes living beyond the Black Sea.*
sē, *acc. and abl. of* **suī.**
sēcēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, secede, withdraw.
sēcrētō, *adv.*, in private.
sēcrētum, –ī, *n.*, secret place.
sectiō, –ōnis, *f.*, booty.
sēcum = cum sē.
Secunda, –ae, *f.*, Secŭn'da, *a Roman name.*
secundum, *prep. with acc.*, following, along, beside, in addition to.
secundus, –a, –um, second, favorable.
secūris, –is, *f.*, ax.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sedeō, –ēre, sēdī, sessus, sit, remain encamped.
sedēs, –is, *f.*, dwelling place, tomb.
Sedullus, –ī, *m.*, Sedul'lus, *a leader of the Lemovices.*
Segontiācī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Segontiaci (Sĕgonshiā'sī), *a tribe of Britain.*
Segovax, –actis, *m.*, Sĕg'ovax, *a British chieftain.*
Segusiāvī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Segusiavi (Sĕgūshiā'vī), *a Gallic tribe.*
sella, –ae, *f.*, chair, seat.
semel, *adv.*, once; **semel atque iterum,** again and again.
sēmibarbarus, –a, –um, half-barbarian.
semper, *adv.*, always.
sēmuncia, –ae, *f.*, half an ounce.
senātor, –ōris, *m.*, senator.
senātus, –ūs, *m.*, senate.
senectūs, –tūtis, *f.*, old age.
senex, senis, *m.*, old man; *adj.*, old.
senior, *gen.*, **seniōris,** *comparative of* **senex.**
Senonēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Sĕn'onēs, *a Gallic tribe.*
sententia, –ae, *f.*, feeling, opinion, vote.
sentēs, –ium, *m. pl.*, thorns, briers.
sentiō, –īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, think, realize, learn, vote.
sēparō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, separate.

sepeliō, –īre, sepelīvī, sepultus, bury.
septem, seven.
septentriōnēs, –um, *m. pl.*, seven plow-oxen (*the seven stars of the constellation Great Bear*), north.
septimus, –a, –um, seventh.
sepulchrum, –ī, *n.*, tomb.
sepultūra, –ae, *f.*, burial.
Sēquana, –ae, *m.*, the Seine River.
Sēquanus, –a, –um, Sequā'nian; *as noun, m. pl.*, the Sequanians, *a Gallic tribe.*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow, pursue.
Sergia, –ae, *f.*, Sergia (Ser'jia), *a Roman name*; **Sergius, –gī,** *m.*, Sergius (Ser'jius), *a Roman name.*
sērius, *comp. adv.*, later.
sermō, –ōnis, *m.*, conversation, talk.
serō, –ere, sēvī, satus, sow, plant.
serva, –ae, *f.*, female slave, maid-servant.
Servīlius, –lī, *m.*, Servil'ius, *a Roman name.*
servitūs, –tūtis, *f.*, slavery.
Servius, –vī, *m.*, Ser'vius, *a Roman name, esp.* Servius Tullius, *a Roman king.*
servō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, save, guard, preserve.
servus, –ī, *m.*, slave.
sēsē, *acc. and abl. of* **suī.**
seu, *see* **sīve.**
sevēritās, –tātis, *f.*, strictness, severity.
sex, six.
Sextīlis, –is (*sc.* **mēnsis**), *m.*, the sixth month (*afterwards called August*).
Sextius, –tī, *m.*, Sex'tius, *a Roman name.*
sextus, –a, –um, sixth; **sextus decimus,** sixteenth.
sī, *conj.*, if.
sīc, *adv.*, so, in this way, thus.
Sicilia, –ae, *f.*, Sicily.
sīcut *or* **sīcutī,** *adv.*, just as, as if.
sīdus, sīderis, *n.*, heavenly body, star.
signifer, –ferī, *m.*, standard bearer.
significātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, sign, signal.
significō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make signs, indicate, make known.
signum, –ī, *n.*, sign, standard, signal.
Sīlānus, –ī, *m.*, Silā'nus, *a Roman name.*
silentium, –tī, *n.*, silence.
silva, –ae, *f.*, forest, woods.
silvestris, –e, of a forest, wooded.
similis, –e, like.
simpliciter, *adv.*, plainly.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time; **simul atque** (*or* **ac**), as soon as.
simulācrum, –ī, *n.*, likeness, image, statue.
simulō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, feign, pretend.
sīn, *conj.*, but if.
sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
singillātim, *adv.*, one by one, singly.
singulāris, –e, remarkable, one by one.
singulī, –ae, –a, *pl. only*, one at a time; one each, single.
sinister, –tra, –trum, left (*hand*).
situs, –ūs, *m.*, situation, position, site.

sīve *or* **seu**, *conj.*, or if, or; **sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu)**, whether . . . or, either . . . or.

socer, –erī, *m.*, father-in-law.

societās, –tātis, *f.*, association.

socius, –cī, *m.*, comrade, ally.

Sōcratēs, –is, *m.*, Sŏc'ratēs, *a Greek philosopher.*

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.

sōlācium, –cī, *n.*, comfort.

solea, –ae, *f.*, sandal, shoe, horseshoe.

soleō, –ēre, solitus sum, *semideponent*, be accustomed.

sōlitūdō, –dinis, *f.*, wilderness, solitude.

solitum, –ī, *n.*, the customary, what is usual.

sollicitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, stir, urge, incite to revolt, tamper with.

Solōn, –ōnis, *m.*, Sōlon, *an Athenian lawgiver.*

solum, –ī, *n.*, bottom, ground, soil.

sōlum, *adv.*, only, merely.

sōlus, –a, –um, alone, sole, only.

solūtus, –a, –um, free.

solvō, –ere, solvī, solūtus, loose, pay, break, break down; *w.* **nāvem**, set sail.

somnus, –ī, *m.*, sleep.

sonus, –ī, *m.*, sound.

sordidus, –a, –um, dirty.

soror, –ōris, *f.*, sister.

sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, decision by lot.

Sosiī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, Sō'siī, *a firm of booksellers at Rome.*

Sp., *abbreviation for* **Spurius, –rī**, *m.*, Spurius, *a Roman name.*

Spartacus, –ī, *m.*, Spartacus, *leader in a revolt of the gladiators.*

Spartānī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Spartans, people of Sparta, *in Greece.*

spatium, –tī, *n.*, space, time, period, distance.

speciēs, speciēī, *f.*, appearance, pretense, kind.

spectāculum, –ī, *n.*, spectacle, sight.

spectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, look at, see, face.

speculātor, –ōris, *m.*, spy.

speculātōrius, –a, –um, for observation; **speculātōrium nāvigium**, scout boat.

specus, –ūs, *m.*, cave, cavern.

spērō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hope (for).

spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.

spīna, –ae, *f.*, thorn.

spoliō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, strip, rob, deprive.

spondeō, –ēre, spopondī, spōnsus, promise solemnly, betroth.

spōnsus, –ī, *m.*, betrothed.

sponte, *w.* **suā**, of his (their) own accord, voluntarily.

Spūrinna, –ae, *m.*, Spurin'na, *a Roman name.*

st! *interj.*, hush!

stabilis, –e, that stands firm, stable.

stabilitās, –tātis, *f.*, firmness, stability.

Stadium, –dī, *n.*, the Stadium (*track for foot-racing*), *at Athens.*

Statilius, –lī, *m.*, Statīl'ius, *a Roman name.*

statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately.

statiō, –ōnis, *f.*, station, post, guard, sentry, picket.

statua, –ae, *f.*, statue.

statuō, –ere, statuī, statūtus, place, establish, determine.

statūra, –ae, *f.*, height, stature.

stilus, –ī, *m.*, style *or* stylus (*instrument used in writing on wax tablets*).

stimulus, –ī, *m.*, goad, spur.

stīpendiārius, –a, –um, paying tribute, tributary; *as noun, m.*, payer of tribute, tributary.

stīpendium, –dī, *n.*, tribute, pay; campaign.

stō, stāre, stetī, status, stand.

Stōicus, –a, –um, Stoic, belonging to the Stoic philosophy.

strāmentum, –ī, *n.*, thatch.

stringō, –ere, strīnxī, strictus, draw tight, draw.

studeō, –ēre, studuī, —, be eager for, be devoted to, study, strive for (*w. dat.*).

studiōsē, *adv.*, eagerly.

studium, –dī, *n.*, eagerness, interest, zeal, study, pursuit.

stultitia, –ae, *f.*, folly, stupidity.

stultus, –a, –um, foolish.

stupidus, –a, –um, stupid.

suāvitās, –tātis, *f.*, sweetness.

sub, *prep.*, under, close to, at the foot of, just before (*w. acc. after verbs of motion; w. abl. after verbs of rest or position*).

subdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead up, withdraw; draw up from below, beach.

subeō, –īre, –iī, –itus, go under, enter, come up, press forward, undergo.

subiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, hurl from below, place under, make subject, expose, conquer.

subigō, –igere, –ēgī, –āctus, drive under, reduce; constrain.

subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.

sublātus, –a, –um, *part. of* **tollō.**

subministrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, aid by giving, furnish.

submittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, send to help, furnish as reinforcement, send.

submoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus, drive off, drive back.

subruō, –ere, –ruī, –rutus, dig under, undermine.

subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, follow up, follow closely.

subsidium, –dī, *n.*, support, aid, protection, reserve, auxiliary troops, giving of relief.

subsum, –esse, —, —, be near, be at hand.

subveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come to help, assist, relieve, rescue (*w. dat.*).

succēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, come up, succeed, follow.

successus, –ūs, *m.*, advance, success.

succurrō, –ere, –currī, –cursus, run to help, run up (*w. dat.*).

sūdārium, –rī, *n.*, handkerchief.

sudis, –is, *f.*, stake.

Suēbus, –a, –um, Sueban (Swē′ban); *as noun, m. and f.*, a Sueban; *m. pl.*, the Suebans, *or* Suebi, *a German tribe.*

Suessiōnēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Suessiones (Swessiō′nēs), *a Belgian tribe.*

sufficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, suffice.

suffrāgium, –gī, *n.*, ballot, vote.

suī, *reflexive pron.*, of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves.

Sulla, –ae, *m.*, Sul'la, *a Roman general.*

Sulpicius, –a, –um, Sulpician; *as noun, m.*, Sulpicius (Sŭlpish'-ius), *a Roman name.*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be, exist.

summa, –ae, *f.*, chief point, head, sum, total, control; **summa imperī,** supreme command.

summus, –a, –um, highest, surface of, very great; complete, perfect; **summus mōns,** top of the mountain.

sūmō, –ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take, assume.

sūmptuōsē, *adv.*, extravagantly.

sūmptus, –ūs, *m.*, expense.

superbē, *adv.*, arrogantly.

superbus, –a, –um, haughty.

Superbus, –ī, *m.*, Super'bus, *a Roman name.*

superfundō, –ere, –fūdī, –fūsus, pour over *or* upon, scatter.

superior, –ius, higher, superior, former, upper.

superō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, overcome, conquer, surpass, prevail, excel, survive.

superstitiō, –ōnis, *f.*, superstition.

supersum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus, be left over, remain, survive.

superus, –a, –um, on high, above.

supplex, *gen.*, **supplicis,** *adj.*, (kneeling), suppliant, beseeching.

supplicātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, public prayer, thanksgiving.

supplicium, –cī, *n.*, punishment, torture; **supplicium dare,** suffer punishment.

suprā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, above, before, previously.

surculus, –ī, *m.*, sprout, shoot.

surgō, –ere, surrēxī, surrēctus, rise.

suscipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, take up, undertake, incur.

suspendō, –ere, –pendī, –pēnsus, hang.

suspīciō, –ōnis, *f.*, suspicion.

suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum, suspect, conjecture.

sustineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, keep up *or* back, maintain, endure, bear, withstand, hold out.

sustulī, *see* **tollō.**

suus, –a, –um, *reflexive adj.*, his, her, its, their; his own, her own, *etc.;* **sua,** their possessions.

Syrācūsae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, Syracuse, *a city in Sicily.*

T

T., *abbreviation for* **Titus, –ī,** *m.*, Tī'tus, *a Roman name.*

taberna, –ae, *f.*, shop.

tabula, –ae, *f.*, table, tablet (of the law); list, writing tablet.

taceō, –ēre, tacuī, tacitus, be silent, say nothing of.

taciturnitās, –tātis, *f.*, silence.

Tacitus, –ī, *m.*, Tacitus (Tăs'itus), *a Roman historian.*

tālea, –ae, *f.*, bar.

talentum, –ī, *n.*, talent, *a sum of money* (approximately $1180).

tālis, –e, such.

tam, *adv.*, so, as much; **tam . . . quam,** as . . . as.

tamen, *adv.*, still, nevertheless.

Tamesis, –is, *acc.*, **–im,** *m.*, the Thames River.

tametsī, *conj.*, although.
tamquam, *adv.*, as if.
Tanaquil, **–īlis**, *f.*, Tăn′aquĭl, *wife of King Tarquin the Elder.*
tandem, *adv.*, at last.
tangō, **–ere**, **tetigī**, **tāctus**, touch.
tantulus, **–a**, **–um**, so little.
tantum, *adv.*, only.
tantus, **–a**, **–um**, so great.
tardē, slowly.
tardō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, delay, hinder, check.
tardus, **–a**, **–um**, slow, late.
Tarentīnī, **–ōrum**, *m. pl.*, the Tar′entīnes, inhabitants of Tarentum.
Tarentum, **–ī**, *n.*, Taren′tum, *a city in Italy.*
Tarquinius, **–nī**, *m.*, Tarquin′ius, Tarquin; *two Roman kings:* (1) Tarquin the Elder; (2) Tarquin the Proud.
taurus, **–ī**, *m.*, bull.
Taurus, **–ī**, *m.*, Tau′rus, *a Roman name.*
Taximagulus, **–ī**, *m.*, Tăximăg′ulus, *a British chieftain.*
tēctum, **–ī**, *n.*, roof, house.
tegimentum, **–ī**, *n.*, covering.
tegō, **–ere**, **tēxī**, **tēctus**, cover, conceal.
tellūs, **–ūris**, *f.*, earth.
tēlum, **–ī**, *n.*, missile, weapon.
temerē, *adv.*, without plan, rashly, without good reason.
temeritās, **–tātis**, *f.*, rashness, indiscretion.
tēmō, **–ōnis**, *m.*, pole (*of a chariot*), tongue.
temperātus, **–a**, **–um**, moderate, temperate.
tempestās, **–tātis**, *f.*, season, storm, weather.
templum, **–ī**, *n.*, temple.
temptō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, test, try, attempt.
tempus, **temporis**, *n.*, time.
Tencterī, **–ōrum**, *m. pl.*, the Tenc′terī, *a German tribe.*
tendō, **–ere**, **tetendī**, **tentus**, stretch, strive, go.
tenebrae, **–ārum**, *f. pl.*, darkness, gloom, shades.
tenebricōsus, **–a**, **–um**, dark, shadowy, gloomy.
teneō, **–ēre**, **tenuī**, **tentus**, hold, keep, possess, influence; **memoriā tenēre**, remember.
tener, **–era**, **–erum**, tender, young.
tenuis, **–e**, thin, feeble, poor.
ter, *num. adv.*, three times.
tergum, **–ī**, *n.*, back; **ā tergō**, in the rear.
terminus, **–ī**, *m.*, end, limit, boundary.
ternī, **–ae**, **–a**, three at a time.
terra, **–ae**, *f.*, land, earth, country, ground.
terreō, **–ēre**, **terruī**, **territus**, terrify, frighten.
terror, **–ōris**, *m.*, dread, terror.
tertius, **–a**, **–um**, third.
testāmentum, **–ī**, *n.*, will.
testimōnium, **–nī**, *n.*, testimony, proof.
testis, **testis**, *m.*, witness.
testūdō, **–dinis**, *f.*, tortoise, testudo, shed.
Teutoburgiēnsis (silva), the Teutoburg Forest (*where the Germans defeated Varus*).

Teutonēs, –um *or* **Teutonī, –ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Teutons, *a people of Germany.*

theātrum, –ī, *n.*, theater.

Themistoclēs, –is, *m.*, Themĭs'toclēs, *an Athenian general.*

thermae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, baths, springs.

Thēseus, –eī, *m.*, Theseus (Thē'soos), *an Athenian hero.*

Thessalia, –ae, *f.*, Thessaly, *part of Greece.*

Thoa, –ae, *f.*, Thō'a, *a name.*

Thrāx, –ācis, *m.*, a Thracian.

Ti., *abbreviation for* **Tiberius, –rī,** Tibē'rius, *a Roman name.*

Tiberis, –is, *m.*, the Tiber River, *in Italy.*

Tiberius, –rī, *m.*, Tibē'rius, *a Roman name, esp. the emperor* Tiberius.

Tigurīnus, –ī, *m.*, Tĭgurī'nus, *one of the four cantons of the Helvetians; pl.*, the Tĭgurī'nī.

timeō, –ēre, timuī, —, fear, be afraid.

timidē, *adv.*, timidly, hesitatingly.

timidus, –a, –um, timid, cowardly, fearful, afraid.

timor, –ōris, *m.*, fear.

titulus, –ī, *m.*, title, sign.

Titūrius, –rī, *m.*, Titū'rius, *a Roman name;* Q. Titurius Sabinus, *one of Caesar's officers.*

Titus, –ī, *m.*, Tī'tus, *a Roman name, esp. the emperor* Titus.

toga, –ae, *f.*, toga, cloak.

tolerābilis, –e, endurable.

tollō, –ere, sustulī, sublātus, raise, lift, carry, remove, destroy, end, encourage.

Tolōsātēs, –ium, *m. pl.*, the Tolosā'tēs, *a Gallic tribe.*

tondeō, –ēre, —, tōnsus, cut, shear.

tormentum, –ī, *n.*, instrument of torture, engine; *pl.*, artillery.

Torquātus, –ī, *m.*, Torquā'tus; T. Manlius Torquatus, *a famous Roman;* **Torquātī, –ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Torquā'tī, *a Roman family.*

torqueō, –ēre, torsī, tortus, twist, torture.

torquis, –is, *m. and f.*, collar, necklace.

torreō, –ēre, torruī, tostus, roast, scorch, burn.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many.

totidem, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number.

tōtus, –a, –um, whole.

trabs, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber.

tractō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, treat, manage.

trādō, –dere, –didī, –ditus, give *or* hand over, deliver, transmit.

trādūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead across, bring over, win over, transfer.

trāgula, –ae, *f.*, dart, javelin.

trahō, –ere, trāxī, trāctus, draw, drag, attract.

Trāiānus, –ī, *m.*, Trā'jan, *the emperor.*

trāiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, strike through, transfix, pierce.

trāmes, –itis, *m.*, path.

trānō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, swim across.

tranquillitās, –tātis, *f.*, calm.

tranquillus, –a, –um, quiet, calm.

trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across.

trānscendō, –ere, –scendī, —, climb over, board.

trānseō, –īre, –iī, –itus, cross, pass.

trānsferō, –ferre, –tulī, –lātus, carry over, transfer, translate.

trānsfīgō, –ere, –fīxī, –fīxus, pierce through, drive through, transfix.

trānsfodiō, –ere, –fōdī, –fossus, pierce, run through.

trānsgredior, –gredī, –gressus sum, step across, cross, climb over, pass over.

trānsmarīnus, –a, –um, beyond the sea, foreign.

trānsportō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, carry over, transport.

trānsversus, –a, –um, turned across, crosswise.

Trasumennus, –ī, *m.*, Trasumen'nus, *a lake in Italy.*

tremor, –ōris, *m.*, shaking, tremor.

trepidō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hurry in alarm, be agitated.

trēs, tria, three.

Trēverī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Trĕv erans, *or* Trĕv'erī, *a Gallic tribe.*

tribūnal, –ālis, *n.*, tribunal, platform.

tribūnus, –ī, *m.*, tribune, *a Roman official.*

tribuō, –ere, tribuī, tribūtus, bestow, grant, assign.

tribūtum, –ī, *n.*, tax, tribute.

trīciēns, *num. adv.*, thirty times.

trīclīnium, –nī, *n.*, eating couch, dining room.

trīduum, –ī, *n.*, period of three days, three days.

Trinovantēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Trinovăn'tēs, *a British tribe.*

triplex, *gen.*, **triplicis,** *adj.*, threefold, triple.

triquetrus, –a, –um, three-cornered, triangular.

trīstis, –e, sad, severe.

triumphō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, triumph.

triumphus, –ī, *m.*, triumph.

triumvirī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, triumvirs, *three men united in public office or authority.*

Trōia, –ae, *f.*, Troy, *a city in Asia Minor.*

Trōiānus, –a, –um, Tro'jan; *as noun, m. pl.*, the Trojans.

trucīdō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, murder, slay.

tū, tuī, you.

tuba, –ae, *f.*, trumpet.

Tuccia, –ae, *f.*, Tŭc'cia, *a Vestal Virgin.*

tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, watch, care for, guard, defend.

tugurium, –rī, *n.*, cottage, hut.

Tulingī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tulingi (Tulin'jī), *a Gallic tribe.*

Tullius, –lī, *m.*, Tŭl'lius, *a Roman name:* (1) Servius Tullius, *a Roman king;* (2) M. Tullius Cicero, *the orator.*

Tullus, –ī, *m.*, Tŭl'lus, *a Roman name.*

tum, *adv.*, then.

tumultus, –ūs, *m.*, uproar, noise, disturbance.

tumulus, –ī, *m.*, mound, hill.

tunica, –ae, *f.*, tunic, shirt.

turba, –ae, *f.*, crowd.

turbō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, disturb, agitate.

turgidulus, –a, –um, swollen.

turma, –ae, *f.*, throng, body, troop (*of cavalry*).
Turonī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tu'ronī, *a Gallic tribe.*
turpis, –e, disgraceful, dishonorable.
turpitūdō, –dinis, *f.*, dishonor, disgrace, baseness.
turris, –is, *f.*, tower.
Tuscī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tŭs'cans, the Etrū'rians, people of Etruria, *in Italy.*
Tusculānī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tus'culans, people of Tusculum, *a town in Italy.*
tūtus, –a, –um, safe.
tuus, –a, –um, your, yours (*referring to one person*).
tyrannus, –ī, *m.*, despot, tyrant.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where (*place*); when (*time*).
ubicumque, *adv.*, wherever.
ubīque, *adv.*, everywhere, anywhere.
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, take vengeance on, punish, avenge.
ūllus, –a, –um, any.
ulterior, –ius, farther.
ultimus, –a, –um, last, farthest.
ultrā, *adv.*, beyond, any more.
ultrō, *adv.*, to the farther side; voluntarily.
ultus, –a, –um, *part. of* **ulcīscor.**
ululātus, –ūs, *m.*, shriek, scream.
umbra, –ae, *f.*, shade, shadow.
umquam, *adv.*, ever, at any time.
ūnā, *adv.*, together, at the same time, along.
unda, –ae, *f.*, wave.
unde, *adv.*, from which (place).
ūndecimus, –a, –um, eleventh.
undique, *adv.*, from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.
unguentum, –ī, *n.*, ointment, perfume.
ūniversus, –a, –um, all together, in a body, whole.
ūnus, –a, –um, one, alone; **ad ūnum,** to a man.
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.
urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, press, press hard.
urna, –ae, *f.*, water jar.
ūrus, –ī, *m.*, wild ox, aurochs.
Usipetēs, –um, *m. pl.*, the Usĭp'etēs, *a German tribe.*
ūsque, *adv.*, all the way to, continuously.
ūsus, –ūs, *m.*, use, practice, enjoyment, experience, need, necessity.
ut, *conj.*, in order that, that, so that, although (*w. subjunct.*); as, when (*w. indic.*); (*adv.*), how.
uter, utra, utrum, which (of two).
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), either, both.
utī = **ut.**
ūtilis, –e, useful, serviceable, profitable, expedient.
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use, make use of (*w. abl.*).
utrimque, *adv.*, from each side, on both sides.
utrum, *conj.*, whether; **utrum . . . an,** whether . . . or.
ūva, –ae, *f.*, bunch of grapes.
uxor, –ōris, *f.*, wife; **uxōrem dūcere,** to marry.

V

vacō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, be free, be uninhabited, have leisure, be unoccupied.

vacuus, –a, –um, empty, deserted; devoid of, without.

vadum, –ī, *n.*, shallow place, ford.

vae! *interj.*, woe! alas!

vāgīna, –ae, *f.*, sheath, scabbard.

vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum, wander, roam.

valeō, –ēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong, be well, be powerful *or* effective, prevail, avail; **plūrimum valēre,** be very powerful; **valē!** *or* **valēte!** *imper.*, farewell!

Valerius, –rī, *m.*, Valē′rius, *a Roman name.*

valētūdō, –dinis, *f.*, health; sickness.

vallis, –is, *f.*, valley.

vāllum, –ī, *n.*, rampart (*set with palisades*), intrenchment.

varietās, –tātis, *f.*, spotted appearance.

varius, –a, –um, changing, varying, various.

Vārus, –ī, *m.*, Varus, *a Roman name.*

vas, vadis, *m.*, bail, surety.

vāstō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, lay waste, ravage.

vāstus, –a, –um, unoccupied, waste, vast.

vectīgal, –ālis, *n.*, tax, tribute, income.

vectōrius, –a, –um, for transport, transport.

vehementer, *adv.*, vigorously, furiously, violently.

vehiculum, –ī, *n.*, carriage.

vehō, –ere, vexī, vectus, convey, carry; *passive,* sail.

Veientēs, –ium, *m. pl.*, people of Vē′ī.

Veiī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, Vē′ĭī, *a town in Italy.*

vel, *conj.*, or; **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or.

Veliocassēs, –ium, *m. pl.*, the Vĕliocăs′sēs, *a Belgian tribe.*

vēlōcitās, –tātis, *f.*, swiftness.

vēlōciter, *adv.*, swiftly.

vēlum, –ī, *n.*, sail.

velut, *adv.*, just as.

vēnātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, hunting spectacle, hunting, combat.

vēnātor, –ōris, *m.*, hunter.

vēndō, –dere, –didī, –ditus, sell.

Venellī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Venĕl′lī, *a Gallic tribe.*

venēnum, –ī, *n.*, poison.

vēneō, vēnīre, vēniī, —, be sold.

venerābundus, –a, –um, full of reverence.

Venetī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Vĕn′etī, *a Gallic tribe.*

Venetia, –ae, *f.*, Venetia (Venē′shia), *the country of the Veneti.*

venia, –ae, *f.*, boon, favor.

veniō, –īre, vēnī, ventus, come.

venter, –tris, *m.*, stomach.

ventitō, –āre, –āvī, —, come often, keep coming.

ventus, –ī, *m.*, wind.

Venus, –eris, *f.*, Vēnus, *goddess of love and beauty.*

venustus, –a, –um, handsome, fine.

verberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, beat, strike.

Verbigenus, –ī, *m.*, Verbigenus (Verbĭj'enus), *one of the four cantons of the Helvetians.*

verbum, –ī, *n.*, word; **verba facere,** speak, make a speech.

Vercassivellaunus, –ī, *m.*, Vercassivellau'nus, *an Arvernian.*

Vercingetorīx, –īgis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (Versinjet'orix), *an Arvernian.*

vērē, *adv.*, truly.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear, respect.

Vergilius, Vergilī, *m.*, Virgil, *a Roman poet.*

Verginia, –ae, *f.*, Virginia, *a Roman name;* **Verginius, –nī,** *m.*, Virginius, *a Roman name.*

vergō, –ere, —, —, slope, lie.

vēritās, –tātis, *f.*, truth.

vērō, *adv.*, in truth, but, however.

versicolor, –ōris, of various colors.

versō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, turn over, deal with; *passive,* move about, be engaged, be busy, live, be.

versus, –ūs, *m.*, line, verse.

Verticō, –ōnis, *m.*, Ver'tico, *a Nervian.*

vertō, –ere, vertī, versus, turn; *passive,* turn (oneself).

vērus, –a, –um, true.

Vespasiānus, –ī, *m.*, Vespasian (Vespā'zhian), *the emperor.*

vesper, –erī, *m.*, evening; **sub vesperum,** toward evening; **vesperī,** in the evening.

Vesta, –ae, *f.*, Vesta, *goddess of the hearth.*

Vestālis, –e, Vestal, of Vesta.

vester, –tra, –trum, your, yours (*referring to two or more persons*).

vēstibulum, –ī, *n.*, entrance.

vēstīgium, –gī, *n.*, footprint, track.

vestiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, clothe, adorn.

vestis, –is, *f.*, clothing, garment, robe.

vestītus, –ūs, *m.*, clothing.

Vesuvius, –vī, *m.*, Mt. Vesuvius.

veterānus, –a, –um, old, veteran, consisting of veterans.

vetō, –āre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid.

Veturia, –ae, *f.*, Vetū'ria, *mother of Coriolanus.*

Veturius, –rī, *m.*, Vetū'rius, *a Roman name.*

vetus, *gen.*, **veteris,** old, former.

vexillum, –ī, *n.*, banner, flag.

vexō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, disturb greatly, trouble, ravage.

via, –ae, *f.*, way, road, street; **viam mūnīre,** build a road.

viātor, –ōris, *m.*, traveler.

vīcēnī, –ae, –a, twenty each, twenty.

vīciēs, *num. adv.*, twenty times.

vīcīnus, –ī, *m.*, neighbor.

vicis, –is, *f.*, change; **in vicem,** in turn.

victima, –ae, *f.*, sacrifice, victim.

victor, –ōris, *m.*, victor; *adj.*, victorious.

victōria, –ae, *f.*, victory.

victus, –ūs, *m.*, food, living.

vīcus, –ī, *m.*, village.

videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; *passive,* seem, be seen, seem best.

vigilia, –ae, *f.*, watchman, guard, watchfulness, sleeplessness, watch (*a fourth of the night*).

vīgintī, *indecl.*, twenty.

vigor, –ōris, *m.*, vigor.

vīlis, –e, cheap, worthless.
vīlla, –ae, *f.*, farmhouse, country home, villa.
vīmen, vīminis, *n.*, flexible twig, willow.
Vīminālis (**mōns**), **–is,** *m.*, the Vĭm′inal, *one of the seven hills of Rome.*
vinciō, –īre, vīnxī, vīnctus, bind.
vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus, conquer.
vinculum, –ī, *n.*, chain.
vindicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, assert a claim, declare; take vengeance, punish, restore (*to freedom*).
vīnea, –ae, *f.*, grape arbor, shed.
vīnum, –ī, *n.*, wine.
violō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, violate, injure.
vir, virī, *m.*, man, hero, husband.
virga, –ae, *f.*, switch, twig, whip.
virgō, virginis, *f.*, virgin, maiden.
Viridomārus, –ī, *m.*, Viridomā′rus, *a Haeduan.*
virīlis, –e, man's; of a man.
virītim, *adv.*, man by man.
Viromanduī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Viromăn′duī, *a Belgian tribe.*
virtūs, –tūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage, virtue.
vīs, —, *f.*, force, power, violence; *pl.*, **vīrēs, –ium,** strength, powers; **vim facere,** use force.
vīta, –ae, *f.*, life; **vītam agere,** live *or* spend a life.
vītō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, avoid, shun.
Vitellius, –lī, *m.*, Vitel′lius, *a Roman name.*
vitium, –tī, *n.*, fault, vice.
vitrum, –ī, *n.*, woad, *a plant furnishing a blue dye.*
vīvō, –ere, vīxī, victus, live.
vīvus, –a, –um, alive, living.
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty
vōbīscum = cum vōbīs.
vocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, call, summon, invite, invoke.
Vocontiī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Vocontii (Vocŏn′shiī), *a tribe in the Alps.*
volō, velle, voluī, —, want, be willing, wish.
Volscī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Volscians (Vŏl′shians), *a people of Italy.*
voluntārius, –a, –um, willing, voluntary; *w.* **mīles,** volunteer.
voluntās, –tātis, *f.*, will, wish, inclination.
voluptās, –tātis, *f.*, pleasure, delight.
Volusēnus, –ī, *m.*, Volusē′nus, *one of Caesar's officers.*
volvō, –ere, volvī, volūtus, roll; turn over, roll up; *passive,* toss about.
Vorēnus, –ī, *m.*, Vorē′nus, *a centurion in Caesar's army.*
vōs, vestrum, you (*pl. of* **tū**).
voveō, –ēre, vōvī, vōtus, vow, promise.
vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, cry, word, remark.
Vulcānus, –ī, *m.*, Vulcan, *god of fire and of workers in metal.*
vulgō, *adv.*, generally, commonly.
vulgus, –ī, *n.*, common people, crowd.
vulnerō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, wound.
vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.
vulpes, –is, *f.*, fox.
vultus, –ūs, *m.*, expression, features, face.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

For proper nouns and proper adjectives not given in this vocabulary see the Latin-English Vocabulary.

Verbs of the first conjugation whose parts are regular are indicated by the figure 1.

A

able (be), possum, posse, potuī, —.
about, dē, *w. abl.;* circum, *w. acc.;* circiter, ferē.
above, suprā.
access, aditus, –ūs, *m.*
accomplice, socius, –cī, *m.*
accomplish, cōnficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.
accord, voluntās, –tātis, *f.*
accustomed (be), soleō, –ēre, solitus sum; cōnsuēscō, –ere, –suēvī, –suētus.
across, trāns, *w. acc.*
add, adiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus.
address, prōsequor, –sequī, –secūtus sum.
adopt, adoptō, 1.
adorn, ōrnō, 1.
advance, prōcēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus; prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum.
afflict, afficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.
after, post (*prep. w. acc.*); postquam (*conj.*); *use abl. abs.*
afterwards, posteā.
again, iterum; rūrsus.
against, contrā, *w. acc.*
agger, agger, aggeris, *m.*
agree, cōnsentiō, –īre, –sēnsī, –sēnsus.
aid (*noun*), auxilium, –lī, *n.*; (*verb*), iuvō, –āre, iūvī, iūtus.
all, omnis, –e, tōtus, –a, –um; **all others**, cēterī, –ae, –a.
allow, licet, –ēre, licuit *or* licitum est.
ally, socius, –cī, *m.*
almost, prope.
alone, sōlus, –a, –um.
already, iam.
also, quoque; etiam.
although, cum; quamquam; *use participle or abl. abs.*
altogether, omnīnō.
always, semper.
among, inter, *w. acc.;* apud, *w. acc.*
and, et; –que; **and so**, itaque.
another, alius, alia, aliud; alter, altera, alterum.
any, ūllus, –a, –um; **any, any one, anything**, quisquam, quicquam; aliquis, aliquid; quis, quid (*after* sī).
appear, appāreō, –ēre, –pāruī, –pāritūrus.
approach (*noun*), adventus, –ūs, *m.*; (*verb*), accēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus (*w.* ad); adeō, –īre, –iī, –itus; appropinquō, 1 (*w. dat.*).
arena, arēna, –ae, *f.*
arm, armō, 1; **armed**, armātus, –a, –um.
arms, arma, –ōrum, *n.*

army, exercitus, –ūs, *m.*
arouse, incitō, 1.
arrange for, cōnfirmō, 1.
arrive, perveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus.
arrival, adventus, –ūs, *m.*
as, *use abl. abs.;* ut, *w. indic.;* **as . . . as possible,** quam, *w. superl.;* **as soon as possible,** quam prīmum.
ask, rogō, 1; quaerō, –ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus.
assign, tribuō, –ere, tribuī, tribūtus.
at (near), ad, *w. acc.; abl. of time or place.*
at once, statim.
atrium, ātrium, ātrī, *n.*
attack (*noun*), impetus, –ūs, *m.*; (*verb*), oppugnō, 1; lacessō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus; aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum.
attempt, cōnātus, –ūs, *m.*
author, auctor, –ōris, *m.*
authority, auctōritās, –tātis, *f.*; potestās, –tātis, *f.*
await, exspectō, 1.
away (be), absum, –esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

B

back (*noun*), tergum, –ī, *n.*; (*adv.*), retrō.
bad, malus, –a, –um.
baggage, impedīmenta, –ōrum, *n.*
bandit, latrō, –ōnis, *m.*
banish, expellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus.
bank, rīpa, –ae, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, –ī, *m.*
base, turpis, –e.
battle, proelium, –ī, *n.*; **battle line,** aciēs, aciēī, *f.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
beach, lītus, lītoris, *n.*
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
beautiful, pulcher, –chra, –chrum.
because, *use participle or abl. abs.;* quod, quoniam.
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
before, prae, *w. abl.;* ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.;* priusquam, *conj.*
began, coepī, –isse, coeptus (*pres. supplied by* incipiō).
beg, ōrō, 1; petō, –ere, petīvī, petītus.
begin, incipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus; **begin battle,** proelium committō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
beginning, initium, –tī, *n.*
behalf of (in), prō, *w. abl.*
believe, crēdō, –ere, crēdidī, crēditus (*w. dat.*).
below (deck), in īnferiōrem partem.
besiege, obsideō, –ēre, –sēdī, –sessus.
best, optimus, –a, –um.
betray, trādo, –dere, –didī, –ditus.
better, melior, melius.
between, inter, *w. acc.*
boat, nāvis, nāvis, *f.*; nāvigium, –gī, *n.*
book, liber, librī, *m.*
borders, fīnēs, –ium, *m.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, –e; **bravely,** fortiter.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring (to), indūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus; **bring together,** condūcō; **bring over,** trādūcō.

Britons, Britannī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
build, aedificō, 1; exstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus.
building, aedificium, –cī, *n.*
burn, incendō, –ere, –cendī, –cēnsus.
business, negōtium, –tī, *n.*
but, sed.
buy, emō, –ere, ēmī, ēmptus.
by, ā, ab, *w. abl.*

C

call together, convocō, 1.
camp, castra, –ōrum, *n. pl.*; **break camp,** castra moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus; **pitch camp,** castra pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus.
campaign, stīpendium, –dī, *n.*
can, possum, posse, potuī, —.
captive, captīvus, –ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus.
care, cūra, –ae, *f.*
carry, portō, 1; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; **carry on war,** bellum gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus; **carry back,** referō, –ferre, rettulī, relātus.
cause (to), efficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus (*w.* ut *and subjunct.*).
cavalry, equitātus, –ūs, *m.*; equitēs, –um, *m.*
centurion, centuriō, –ōnis, *m.*
certain, certus, –a, –um; **certainly,** certē; **a certain (one),** quīdam, quaedam, quiddam.
chain, vinculum, –ī, *n.*
change, mūtō, 1; convertō, –ere, –vertī, –versus.
chariot, currus, –ūs, *m.*
check, sustineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus.
children, līberī, –ōrum, *m.*
choose, dēligō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus.
circumstance, rēs, reī, *f.*
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
civil, cīvīlis, –e.
client, cliēns, –entis, *m.*
collect, cōgō, –ere, coēgī, coāctus.
come, veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus; **come out,** ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum.
command, imperō, 1 (*w. dat.*); iubeō, –ēre, iussī, iussus; **be in command,** praesum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus (*w. dat.*).
commander in chief, imperātor, –ōris, *m.*
commence battle, proelium committō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
compel, cōgō, –ere, coēgī, coāctus.
complete, cōnficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.
condemn, damnō, 1.
condition, condiciō, –ōnis, *f.*
conduct oneself, sē gerere.
conference, colloquium, –quī, *n.*
conquer, vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus; superō, 1.
constant, assiduus, –a, –um.
consul, cōnsul, –ulis, *m.*
consult, cōnsulō, –ere, –suluī, –sultus.
contest, contendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus.
contribute, cōnferō, –ferre, contulī, collātus.
council, concilium, –lī, *n.*
counsel, cōnsilium, –lī, *n.*
country, terra, –ae, *f.*; patria, –ae, *f.*

courage, virtūs, –tūtis, *f.*
course, cursus, –ūs, *m.*
cover, tegō, –ere, tēxī, tēctus.
creditor, crēditor, –ōris, *m.*
cross, trānseō, –īre, –iī, –itus.
crowded together, cōnfertus, –a, –um.
cruel, crūdēlis, –e.
cruelty, crūdēlitās, –tātis, *f.*
cry, clāmō, 1.
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
cut off, interclūdō, –ere, –clūsī, –clūsus; **cut to pieces,** concīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus.

D

danger, perīculum, –ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, –ēre, ausus sum.
daring, audācia, –ae, *f.*
daughter, fīlia, –ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēī, *m.*
dear, cārus, –a, –um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
deceive, fallō, –ere, fefellī, falsus.
decemvirs, decemvirī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*
decided (be), placet, –ēre, placuit.
decorated, adōrnātus, –a, –um.
deed, factum, –ī, *n.*
deeply move, permoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus.
defeat (*noun*), calamitās, –tātis, *f.*; (*verb*), pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus; vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus; superō, 1.
defenses, mūnītiō, –ōnis, *f.*
deliver a speech, ōrātiōnem habeō, –ēre, habuī, habitus.
demand, postulō, 1.
departure, exitus, –ūs, *m.*; profectiō, –ōnis, *f.*
desire, cupiō, –ere, cupīvī, cupītus.
desist, dēsistō, –ere, –stitī, –stitus.
despair, dēspērō, 1.
destroy, dēleō, –ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus.
determine, cōnstituō, –ere, –stituī, –stitūtus.
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum.
differ, differō, –ferre, distulī, dīlātus.
difficulty, difficultās, –tātis, *f.*
dinner, cēna, –ae, *f.*
direction, pars, partis, *f.*
discipline, disciplīna, –ae, *f.*
discord, discordia, –ae, *f.*
disturb, perturbō, 1.
divide, dīvidō, –ere, –vīsī, –vīsus.
do, faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus; agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus.
doubt, dubitō, 1.
dowry, dōs, dōtis, *f.*
drain, hauriō, –īre, hausī, haustus.
draw up, īnstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus.
drive, agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus; **drive from,** expellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus.
during, per, *w. acc.*
dutiful, pius, –a, –um.
duty, officium, –cī, *n.*

E

each one, quisque, quidque.
eager for (be), studeō, –ēre, studuī, — (*w. dat.*).
eagerness, studium, –dī, *n.*
earn, mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus.
earnestly, magnopere.
earth, terra, –ae, *f.*; orbis terrārum.
easy, facilis, –e; **easily,** facile.
elect, creō, 1.

embassy, lēgātiō, –ōnis, *f.*
emperor, imperātor, –ōris, *m.*
empire, imperium, –rī, *n.*
encamp, cōnsīdō, –ere, –sēdī, –sessus.
encourage, cohortor, –ārī, –ātus sum.
endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
enemy (*personal*), inimīcus, –ī, *m.*; (*national*), hostis, –is, *m.*
enjoy, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (*w. abl.*).
enjoyment, gaudium, –dī, *n.*
enroll, cōnscrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus.
enter, ingredior, –gredī, –gressus sum.
entire, tōtus, –a, –um.
envoy, lēgātus, –ī, *m.*
envy, invideō, –ēre, –vīdī, –vīsus (*w. dat.*).
equal, pār, *gen.*, paris, *w. dat.*
erect, exstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus.
establish, cōnstituō, –ere, –stituī, –stitūtus.
even, etiam; **not even,** nē . . . quidem.
every, omnis, –e; **everything,** omne *or* omnia.
example, exemplum, –ī, *n.*
excel, praestō, –āre, –stitī, –stitus (*w. dat.*).
except, praeter, *w. acc.*
exchange, inter sē dare.
exclaim, (ex)clāmō, 1.
expect, exspectō, 1.
expel, expellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus.
extend, pertineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus (*w.* ad).

F

fact, rēs, reī, *f.*
fall upon, incidō, –ere, –cidī, —.
fame, fāma, –ae, *f.*
family, familia, –ae, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*
famous, clārus, –a, –um.
far and wide, longē lātēque.
farm, ager, agrī, *m.*
farmer, agricola, –ae, *m.*
farthest, ultimus, –a, –um.
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fear (*verb*), timeō, –ēre, timuī, —; vereor, –ērī, veritus sum; (*noun*), timor, –ōris, *m.*
feel, sentiō, –īre, sēnsī, sēnsus.
fertile, frūmentārius, –a, –um.
few, paucī, –ae, –a.
fierce, ferus, –a, –um.
fight, pugnō, 1.
finally, tandem.
find, inveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus; nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum; **find out,** reperiō, –īre, repperī, repertus.
finish, perficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus; cōnficiō.
fire, ignis, –is, *m.*
first, prīmus, –a, –um.
fit, idōneus, –a, –um.
flee, fugiō, –ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
fling, iaciō, –ere, iēcī, iactus.
flow into, īnfluō, –ere, –flūxī, –flūxus.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum; **follow closely,** subsequor.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
for (*conj.*), nam; (*prep.*), ad, *w. acc.*; **for the purpose** *or* **sake of,** causā *or* grātiā (*preceded by gen.*).

force, cōgō, –ere, coēgī, coāctus.
forces, cōpiae, –ārum, *f.*
ford, vadum, –ī, *n.*
forest, silva, –ae, *f.*
form, faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus; īnstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus.
former (early), prīstinus, –a, –um.
former (the), ille; **the former . . . the latter,** ille . . . hic.
fortify, mūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.
fortune, fortūna, –ae, *f.*
found, cōnstituō, –ere, –stituī, –stitūtus.
free (*adj.*), līber, –era, –erum; (*verb*), līberō, 1.
freedom, lībertās, –tātis, *f.*
fresh, integer, –gra, –grum.
friend, amīcus, –ī, *m.*; **(girl) friend,** amīca, –ae, *f.*
friendly, amīcus, –a, –um.
frighten, terreō, –ēre, terruī, territus; **frighten thoroughly,** perterreō.
from, out from, ē, ex, *w. abl.*; **down from,** dē, *w. abl.*; **away from,** ā, ab, *w. abl.*
from one another, inter sē.
furnish, praebeō, –ēre, –buī, –bitus.
furthermore, praetereā.

G

game, lūdus, –ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, –dī, *n.*
gate, porta, –ae, *f.*
Gaul, Gallia, –ae, *f*; **Gauls,** Gallī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; lēgātus, –ī, *m.*
gentle, lēnis, –e.
get possession of, potior, potīrī, potītus sum (*w. abl.*).
girl, puella, –ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
gladiator, gladiātor, –ōris, *m.*; **gladiatorial,** gladiātōrius, –a, –um.
go, eō, īre, iī, itus; **go away,** discēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus; **go back,** redeō; **go out,** ēgredior, –gredī, –gressus sum; exeō; **go on,** gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus (*use passive*); prōcēdō.
god, deus, –ī, *m.*; **goddess,** dea, –ae, *f.*
gold, aurum, –ī, *n.*
good, bonus, –a, –um; **good faith,** fidēs, fideī, *f.*
Good-by! Valē! (Valēte!)
goose, ānser, –eris, *m.*
gradually, paulātim.
grain, frūmentum, –ī, *n.*
grant, tribuō, –ere, tribuī, tribūtus; dōnō, 1; dō, dare, dedī, datus.
great, magnus, –a, –um; **greater,** maior, maius; **greatest,** maximus, –a, –um; **great deal,** plūrimum; **so great,** tantus, –a, –um.
Greece, Graecia, –ae, *f.*
Greek, Graecus, –a, –um; **Greeks,** Graecī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*
grief, dolor, –ōris, *m.*
grow, crēscō, –ere, crēvī, crētus.
guard, praesidium, –dī, *n.*
guest-friend, hospes, –itis, *m.*

H

happen, accidō, –ere, –cidī, —.
hardly, vix.
harsh, dūrus, –a, –um.
hasten, mātūrō, 1; contendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus; properō, 1.

have, habeō, –ēre, habuī, habitus; **have greatest influence,** plūrimum possum, posse, potuī, —.
he, is; hic; ille; *often not expressed.*
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
hear, audiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.
her (*poss.*), eius; (*reflex.*), suus, –a, –um.
high, altus, –a, –um.
highest, summus, –a, –um.
hill, mōns, montis, *m.*; collis, –is, *m.*
himself (*reflex.*), suī; (*intens.*), ipse.
hinder, impediō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.
hindrance, impedīmentum, –ī, *n.*
his (*poss.*), eius; **his own** (*reflex.*), suus, –a, –um.
hither (*adj.*), citerior, citerius.
holidays, fēriae, –ārum, *f. pl.*
home, domus, –ūs, *f.*; domicilium, –lī, *n.*
honor, honor, –ōris, *m.*
hope (*verb*), spērō, 1; (*noun*), spēs, speī, *f.*
Horace, Horātius, –tī, *m.*
horse, equus, –ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
host, multitūdō, –dinis, *f.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *m.*
hour, hōra, –ae, *f.*
house, domus, –ūs, *f.*; aedificium, –cī, *n.*
how, quō modō.
how great, how much, quantus, –a, –um; **how many,** quot (*indecl.*).
however, autem (*never first word*).
human, hūmānus, –a, –um.
humble, humilis, –e.
hurl, iaciō, –ere, iēcī, iactus; coniciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus; adigō, –igere, –ēgī, –āctus.
hurry (on), properō, 1.

I

I, ego, meī; *often not expressed.*
if, sī.
impel, impellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus.
imperial power, imperium, –rī.
in, in, *w. abl.*; **in order to** *or* **that,** ut (*w. subjunctive*).
increase, augeō, –ēre, auxī, auctus.
infantry, peditēs, –um, *m. pl.*
influence (*verb*), addūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus; (*noun*), auctōritās, –tātis, *f.*
inform, (eum) certiōrem faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus.
inhabit, incolō, –ere, –coluī, —.
injure, noceō, –ēre, nocuī, nocitus (*w. dat.*).
inspire, iniciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus.
into, in, *w. acc.*
it, id; hoc; illud; *often not expressed.*

J

javelin, pīlum, –ī, *n.*
join, adiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus; iungō, –ere, iūnxī, iūnctus.
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
Jove, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*
joy, gaudium, –dī, *n.*
judge, arbitror, –ārī, –ātus sum; iūdicō, 1.
justice, iūstitia, –ae, *f.*
justly, iūstē.

K

keep, teneō, –ēre, tenuī, tentus; **keep from,** prohibeō, –ēre, –hibuī, –hibitus.
kill, interficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus; caedō, –ere, cecīdī, caesus; occīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus; necō, 1.

kind, genus, generis, *n.*
kindness, beneficium, –cī, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, *perfect tenses of* nōscō, –ere, nōvī, nōtus, *or of* cognōscō, –ere, –nōvī, –nitus; sciō, –īre, scīvī, scītus.

L

labor, labōrō, 1.
lacking (be), dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus.
land, terra, –ae, *f.*
large, magnus, –a, –um.
later, posteā, post.
latter, hic; **the former . . . the latter,** ille . . . hic.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lay aside, dēpōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus.
lead, dūcō, –ere, dūxī, ductus; **lead out,** ēdūcō; **lead a life,** vītam agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
learn, cognōscō, –ere, –nōvī, –nitus; comperiō, –īre, –perī, –pertus.
leave (behind), relinquō, –ere, –līquī, –lictus; **be left,** supersum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus.
legion, legiō, –ōnis, *f.*
let drop, ēmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
letter (*epistle*), litterae, –ārum, *f.*
liberty, lībertās, –tātis, *f.*
library, bibliothēca, –ae, *f.*
life, vīta, –ae, *f.*
light, lūmen, lūminis, *n.*
like, similis, –e; **likewise,** item.
little later, paulō post.
live (a life), agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus; (*dwell*), habitō, 1.
long, longus, –a, –um; **for a long time,** diū.
look at *or* **on,** spectō, 1; **look for,** exspectō, 1.
lose, perdō, –dere, –didī, –ditus.
loss, calamitās, –tātis, *f.*
luck, fortūna, –ae, *f.*
luxury, lūxuria, –ae, *f.*

M

make, faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus; **make a speech,** verba faciō; **make use of,** ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (*w. abl.*); **make war upon,** bellum īnferō (*w. dat.*); **make an attack upon,** impetum faciō in (*w. acc.*).
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m.*; **old man,** senex, senis, *m.*
manage, administrō, 1.
manner, modus, –ī, *m.*
many, multī, –ae, –a; **very many,** complūrēs, –a (–ia).
march, iter, itineris, *n.*
master, dominus, –ī, *m.*
means, facultātēs, –um, *f. pl.*
meanwhile, intereā, interim.
meet (in battle), congredior, –gredī, –gressus sum.
memory, memoria, –ae, *f.*
mercy, clēmentia, –ae, *f.*
messenger, nūntius, –tī, *m.*
midst of, medius, –a, –um.
mile, mīlle passūs; *pl.*, mīlia passuum.
mind, animus, –ī, *m.*
misfortune, cāsus, –ūs, *m.*
molest, noceō, –ēre, nocuī, nocitus (*w. dat.*).

money, pecūnia, –ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, –is, *m.*
monument, monumentum, –ī, *n.*
more, amplius; **most,** plūrimum.
moreover, autem (*never first word*).
most of, plērīque, –aeque, –aque.
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
move, moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus; **move deeply,** permoveō.
much, multus, –a, –um.
my, meus, –a, –um; **myself** (*reflex.*), meī; (*intens.*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, –a, –um.
nature, nātūra, –ae, *f.*
near, ad, *w. acc.;* (*adj.*), propinquus, –a, –um.
necessary (it is), oportet, –ēre, oportuit; necesse est.
neglect, neglegō, –ere, –lēxī, –lēctus.
neighbors, fīnitimī, –ōrum, *m.*
neither . . . nor (*conj.*), neque . . . neque.
nevertheless (*adv.*), tamen.
new, novus, –a, –um.
news, nūntius, –tī, *m.*
next, posterus, –a, –um; proximus, –a, –um.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **at night,** noctū.
no, nūllus, –a, –um; **no longer** (*adv.*), nōn iam.
noble, nōbilis, –e.
nobility, nōbilitās, –tātis, *f.*
nor, neque.
not, nōn, nē (*w. negative volitive and purpose clauses*); **not . . . even,** nē . . . quidem.
noted, īnsignis, –e; nōtus, –a, –um.
nothing, nihil.
notice, animadvertō, –ere, –vertī, –versus; cōnspicor, –spicārī, –spicātus sum.
now, nunc.
number, numerus, –ī, *m.*

O

obey, pāreō, –ēre, pāruī, pāritus (*w. dat.*).
obtain (one's request), impetrō, 1.
occupy, occupō, 1.
occur, intercēdō, –cēdere, –cessī, –cessus.
of (concerning), dē, *w. abl.*
officer, lēgātus, –ī, *m.*
often, saepe.
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
omen, ōmen, ōminis, *n.*
on, in, *w. abl.;* **on account of,** ob *or* propter, *w. acc.;* **on all sides,** undique.
one, ūnus, –a, –um; **any one,** aliquis *or* quis; **one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter.
opinion, sententia, –ae, *f.*
opposite, adversus, –a, –um.
oppress, opprimō, –ere, –pressī, –pressus.
or, aut; vel; an (*in double questions*).
order (*noun*), imperium, –rī, *n.*; ēdictum, –ī, *n.*; (*verb*), iubeō, –ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō, 1, *w. dat.;* **in order to** *or* **that,** ut; **in order not to,** nē.
other, alius, alia, aliud; **others,** *see* **some.**
ought, dēbeō, –ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus.

our, noster, –tra, –trum; **ourselves** (*intens.*), ipsī.
overcome, superō, 1; vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus.
overlook, omittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
overtake, cōnsequor, –sequī, –secūtus sum.

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*
pass the winter, hiemō, 1.
pay, pendō, –ere, pependī, pēnsus; **pay the penalty,** poenam dō, dare, dedī, datus.
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, –ī, *m.*
permit, licet, –ēre, licuit *or* licitum est; permittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
persuade, persuādeō, –ēre, –suāsī, –suāsus (*w. dat.*).
place (*noun*), locus, –ī, *m.*; *pl.*, loca, –ōrum, *n.*; (*verb*), pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus; **place in charge,** praeficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus; **place here and there,** dispōnō.
plan, cōnsilium, –lī, *n.*
please, be pleasing to, placeō, –ēre, placuī, placitus (*w. dat.*).
Pliny, Plīnius, –nī, *m.*
poem, carmen, carminis, *n.*; poēma, –atis, *n.*
poet, poēta, –ae, *m.*
Pompey, Pompeius, –peī, *m.*
power, imperium, –rī, *n.*; **royal power,** rēgnum, –ī, *n.*
praetor, praetor, –ōris, *m.*
praise, laudō, 1.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, —.
prepare, parō, 1.
prevent, prohibeō, –ēre, –hibuī, –hibitus.
prisoner, captīvus, –ī, *m.*
private, prīvātus, –a, –um.
proceed, prōcēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus.
procession, pompa, –ae, *f.*
promise, polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum.
proof, documentum, –ī, *n.*
properly, dignē.
protection, praesidium, –dī, *n.*
proud, superbus, –a, –um.
province, prōvincia, –ae, *f.*
public, pūblicus, –a, –um.
pursue, īnsequor, –sequī, –secūtus sum.
put, pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus; **put to death,** interficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus; **put away,** dēpōnō; **put in charge of,** praeficiō.

R

rampart, vāllum, –ī, *n.*
rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
ransom, redimō, –ere, –ēmī, –ēmptus.
read, legō, –ere, lēgī, lēctus.
ready, parātus, –a, –um.
recall, revocō, 1.
receive, accipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus.
recite, recitō, 1.
reconnoiter, explōrō, 1.
redoubt, castellum, –ī, *n.*
reinforcements, subsidia, –ōrum, *n. pl.*
reluctantly, aegrē.
remain, maneō, –ēre, mānsī, mānsus.
remember, memoriā teneō, –ēre, tenuī, tentus; meminī, –isse.

repair, reficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.
reply, respondeō, –ēre, –spondī, –spōnsus.
report (*noun*), nūntius, –tī, *m.*; (*verb*), nūntiō, 1; renūntiō, 1.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
reserve, reservō, 1.
resist, resistō, –ere, –stitī, — (*w. dat.*).
resources, opēs, –um, *f. pl.*
rest (of), reliquus, –a, –um; cēterī, –ae, –a.
restore, reddō, –dere, reddidī, redditus; restituō, –ere, –stituī, –stitūtus.
retain, retineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus.
retire, sē recipere.
retreat, sē recipere.
return, redeō, –īre, rediī, reditus; revertor, –vertī, –versus sum.
revolution, novae rēs, novārum rērum, *f. pl.*
reward, praemium, –mī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, –ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, –ī, *m.*
right, iūs, iūris, *n.*
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
road, via, –ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
roundabout way (in a), in circuitū.
rout, fundō, –ere, fūdī, fūsus.
route, iter, itineris, *n.*
royal power, rēgnum, –ī, *n.*
rule, regō, –ere, rēxī, rēctus; imperō, 1 (*w. dat.*).
run, currō, –ere, cucurrī, cursus.

S

sacred, sacer, –cra, –crum.
sad, trīstis, –e.
safe, tūtus, –a, –um.
safety, salūs, –ūtis, *f.*
sail, *passive of* vehō, –ere, vexī, vectus; nāvigō, 1.
sake of (for the), causā *or* grātiā (*w. gen. preceding*).
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, 1.
say, dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus; inquam, inquit (*w. direct quotations*).
scarcity, inopia, –ae, *f.*
school, lūdus, –ī, *m.*
school-teacher, magister, –trī, *m.*
scout, explōrātor, –ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, maris, *n.*
see, videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus; **see clearly,** perspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus.
seek, petō, –ere, petīvī, petītus.
seem, videor, –ērī, vīsus sum.
seize, capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus; occupō, 1; comprehendō, –ere, –hendī, –hēnsus.
select, dēligō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus; legō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus.
self (*intens.*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
senate, senātus, –ūs, *m.*
senator, senātor, –ōris, *m.*; *pl.*, patrēs cōnscrīptī.
send, mittō, –ere, mīsī, missus; **send out** *or* **away,** dīmittō; **send ahead,** praemittō; **send for,** arcessō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus.
seriously, graviter.
set, pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus; **set out,** proficīscor, –ficīscī, –fectus sum; **set on fire,** incendō, –ere, –cendī, –cēnsus.
seventh, septimus, –a, –um.
shed, vīnea, –ae, *f.*

shield, scūtum, –ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, nāvis, *f.*
short, brevis, –e; **shortness,** brevitās, –tātis, *f.*; exiguitās, –tātis, *f.*
shout, clāmō, 1.
show (*noun*), mūnus, –eris, *n.*; (*verb*), ostendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus; dēmōnstrō, 1.
side, latus, lateris, *n.*
sight, speciēs, –ēī, *f.*
sign, signal, signum, –ī, *n.*
since, quod, cum, quoniam; *use abl. abs.*
sing, cantō, 1.
single one (not a), neque quisquam.
sister, soror, –ōris, *f.*
six, sex; **sixty,** sexāgintā.
size, magnitūdō, –dinis, *f.*
skill, ars, artis, *f.*
slave, servus, –ī, *m.*
slavery, servitūs, servitūtis, *f.*
slay, occīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus.
small, parvus, –a, –um.
so, ita, tam; **so great, so much,** *or* **so large,** tantus, –a, –um; **so that,** ut.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
some, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam; **some . . . others,** aliī . . . aliī; **some one, something,** aliquis, aliquid.
son, fīlius, –lī, *m.*
source, fōns, fontis, *m.*
spare, parcō, –ere, pepercī, parsus (*w. dat.*).
speak, dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus; loquor, loquī, locūtus sum; verba faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus.
spectacle, spectāculum, –ī, *n.*
speech, ōrātiō, –ōnis, *f.*; **make a speech,** ōrātiōnem habeō, –ēre, habuī, habitus; verba faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus.
speed, celeritās, –tātis, *f.*
spend (time), agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, status.
start, proficīscor, –ficīscī, –fectus sum.
state (*noun*), cīvitās, –tātis, *f.*; (*verb*), dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus.
station, collocō, 1.
steel, ferrum, –ī, *n.*
stone, lapis, lapidis, *m.*
stop, cōnsistō, –ere, –stitī, –stitus.
storm, tempestās, –tātis, *f.*
story, fābula, –ae, *f.*
strange, novus, –a, –um.
strength, vīrēs, –ium, *f. pl.*
strive, contendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus.
studies, studia, –ōrum, *n. pl.*
study, studeō, –ēre, studuī, —.
succeed, succēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus.
such, tālis, –e; **such (great),** tantus, –a, –um; **to such an extent, in such a way,** ita.
suddenly, imprōvīsō.
suffer, patior, patī, passus sum.
suitable, idōneus, –a, –um.
summon, vocō, 1; convocō, 1.
supplies, commeātus, –ūs, *m.*
surpass, superō, 1.
surrender (*verb*), dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus; (*noun*), dēditiō, –ōnis, *f.*
suspect, suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum.
sustain, sustineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus.
swamp, palūs, palūdis, *f.*

swift, celer, –eris, –ere; **swiftly,** celeriter.
swiftness, celeritās, –tātis, *f.*
swim across, trānō, 1.
sword, gladius, –dī, *m.*

T

tablet (of the law), tabula, –ae, *f.*
take, sūmō, –ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus; **take away,** tollō, –ere, sustulī, sublātus.
talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
tall, altus, –a, –um.
teach, doceō, –ēre, docuī, doctus.
tear, lacrima, –ae, *f.*
tell, dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus; nārrō, 1.
temple, templum, –ī, *n.*
tempt, temptō, 1.
ten, decem.
terrify, terreō, –ēre, terruī, territus.
territory, fīnēs, –ium, *m. pl.*
terror, terror, –ōris, *m.*
test, experior, experīrī, expertus sum.
testudo, testūdō, testūdinis, *f.*
than, quam.
that (*dem. pron.*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id.
that (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod.
that, in order that, so that (*conj.*), ut(ī); **that . . . not** (*purpose*), nē; (*result*), ut . . . nōn.
their (*poss.*), eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (*reflex.*), suus, –a, –um.
themselves (*reflex.*), suī; (*intens.*), ipsī, –ae, –a.
then, tum.
there (*in that place*), ibi.
therefore, itaque.
they, eī, eae, ea; illī, illae, illa; *often not expressed.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*; *often not expressed.*
think, putō, 1; exīstimō, 1; arbitror, –ārī, –ātus sum.
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
thousand, mīlle; *pl.*, mīlia.
throw, iaciō, –ere, iēcī, iactus; coniciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus; **throw down,** dēiciō; prōiciō.
time, tempus, temporis, *n.*
to, ad, *w. acc.*; (*purpose*), ut(ī).
top (of), summus, –a, –um.
torture, cruciātus, –ūs, *m.*
to such an extent, ita.
toward, ad, *w. acc.*
tower, turris, –is, *f.*
town, oppidum, –ī, *n.*
train, exerceō, –ēre, –ercuī, –ercitus.
traveler, viātor, –ōris, *m.*
tree, arbor, –oris, *f.*
trembling, tremor, –ōris, *m.*
trench, fossa, –ae, *f.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
triumphal, triumphālis, –e.
Trojan, Trōiānus, –a, –um.
troops, cōpiae, –ārum, *f. pl.*
trust, cōnfīdō, –ere, –fīsus sum.
try, cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum.
turn, vertō, –ere, vertī, versus; flectō, –ere, flexī, flexus; **turn aside,** āvertō.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

uncle, avunculus, –ī, *m.*
under, sub, *w. acc. or abl.*; **under the direction of,** dux *in abl. abs.*
undergo, subeō, –īre, –iī, –itus.
unfavorable, inīquus, –a, –um.

unfriendly, inimīcus, –a, –um.
unharmed, incolumis, –e.
unless, nisi.
until, dum.
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.
urge, hortor, –ārī, –ātus sum; impellō, –pellere, –pulī, –pulsus; cohortor.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (*w. abl.*).
use, ūsus, –ūs, *m.*

V

very, *expressed by superlative;* **very many,** complūrēs, –a (–ia).
victor, victor, –ōris, *m.*
victory, victōria, –ae, *f.*
villa, vīlla, –ae, *f.*
village, vīcus, –ī, *m.*
Virgil, Vergilius, –lī, *m.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W

wage war, bellum gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus.
wagon, carrus, –ī, *m.*
wait, exspectō, 1.
want, volō, velle, voluī, —.
war, bellum, –ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, –ēre, monuī, monitus.
waste, cōnsūmō, –ere, –sūmpsī, –sūmptus.
water, aqua, –ae, *f.*
wave, unda, –ae, *f.*
way, via, –ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*; **in what way,** quō modō.
we, nōs; *often not expressed.*
weapons, tēla, –ōrum, *n. pl.*
wedding, nūptiae, –ārum, *f. pl.*
weep, fleō, –ēre, flēvī, flētus.
west, occāsus sōlis.
what (*pron.*), quis, quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod; **what sort of,** quālis, –e.
when, ubi; cum; *often expressed by participle or abl. abs.*
where, ubi.
whether, utrum; **whether . . . or,** utrum . . . an.
which (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod.
while, dum; cum; *often expressed by participle or abl. abs.*
who (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog. pron.*), quis, quid.
whole, tōtus, –a, –um.
wholesome, salūbris, –e.
why, cūr; quā dē causā; quam ob rem.
width, lātitūdō, –dinis, *f.*
willing (be), volō, velle, voluī, —; cupiō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus.
win, mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus.
winter quarters, hīberna, –ōrum, *n.*
wisely, sapienter.
wish, volō, velle, voluī, —; cupiō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus; **wish not,** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.
with, cum, *w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone.*
withdraw, dēdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus; concēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus; discēdō.
without, sine, *w. abl.*
withstand, sustineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus.
witness, testis, testis, *m.*
woman, mulier, –eris, *f.*; fēmina, –ae, *f.*
wonder, mīror, –ārī, –ātus sum.
word, verbum, –ī, *n.*
worship, colō, –ere, coluī, cultus.
worthy, dignus, –a, –um.

wound (*noun*), vulnus, vulneris, *n.*; (*verb*), vulnerō, 1.
write, scrībō, –ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.

Y

year, annus, –ī, *m.*
yield, cēdō, –ere, cessī, cessus; **concēdō.**
yoke, iugum, –ī, *n.*
you, tū (*sing.*); vōs (*pl.*); *often not expressed.*
young man, adulēscēns, –entis, *m.*
your, tuus, –a, –um; vester, –tra, –trum.
youth, adulēscēns, –entis, *m.*

INDEX

(The numbers refer to sections unless otherwise stated.)

ablative case
absolute, 440
of accompaniment, 438
of accordance, 449
of agent, 436
of cause, 443
of comparison, 437
of description, 445
with *dignus*, 450
of manner, 439
of means, 441
of measure of difference, 259, 444
of origin, 435
of place from which, 434
of place where, 446
with prepositions, 451
of respect, 448
of separation, 258, 433
with special verbs, 442
of time, 447
ablative, summary of uses, 432
accompaniment, ablative of, 438
accordance, ablative of, 449
accusative case
of direct object, 426
of extent, 427
of place to which, 225, 428
with prepositions, 431
as subject of infinitive, 429
two accusatives, 430
***ad* with gerund or future passive participle,** 491 (*a*)
adjectives
of first and second declensions, 377
of third declension, 378
irregular, 380
present participle, 379
adjectives, comparison of
regular, 381, *a*
irregular, 381, *b*
declension of comparative, 382
adjectives, syntax of
agreement of, 405
genitive with, 416
dative with, 420
as substantives, 406
adverbs, comparison of, 383
adversative (concessive) *cum* clauses, 197, 477
agent, ablative of, 436; dative of, 425
agreement
adjectives, 405
verbs, 407
relative pronoun, 408
appositives, 410
aliquis, 219; declension of, 390
ancient and modern battlefields in Gaul, 334
anticipatory clauses, with *dum*, *antequam* and *priusquam*, 473
appositives, agreement of, 410
Army (Caesar's), Its Organization and Divisions, 338
attraction, subjunctive by, 481

Caesar (Julius), 331
causā with genitive, 490 (*b*)
causal clauses
expressed by participle, 489

with *cum*, 197, 476
with (*propterea*) *quod* or *quoniam*, 482
with *quia*, 222, footnote 5
cause, ablative of, 443
characteristic (descriptive relative) clauses, 474
commands and exhortations in indirect discourse, 486
comparison, ablative of, 437
comparison of adjectives, 381
comparison of adverbs, 383
complementary infinitive, 493
compound verbs, dative with, 156, 422
concessive (adversative) ***cum*** **clauses**, 197, 477
conditions, outline of, 483
connecting relative, 198, 409
cum **adversative** (concessive) **clauses**, 197, 477
cum **causal clauses**, 197, 476
cum primum (*as soon as*) with indicative, 463

dative case
with adjectives, 420
of agent, 425
with compounds, 156, 422
of indirect object, 417
of possession, 424
of purpose, 418
of reference, 419
of separation, 423
with special verbs, 421
defective verbs, 403
demonstratives, 387
deponent verbs, 396
description, ablative of, 445; genitive of, 414
descriptive ***cum*** **clauses**, 475
descriptive relative clauses, 474
dignus, ablative with, 450
direct object, 426
dum with indicative, 457, 463

effect of the Gallic conquest upon world history, 332
ego, declension of, 385
eō, conjugation of, 400
etiam **and** ***quoque; quidem***, 257
etsī **and** ***quamquam*** with indicative, 463
extent, accusative of, 427

fearing, clauses of, 471
ferō, conjugation of, 399
fifth declension, 375
fīō, conjugation of, 402
first and second declensions of adjectives, 377
first conjugation, 391
first declension, 371
fourth conjugation, 394
fourth declension, 374
future passive participle
with *sum*, 490 (*a*); with *ad*, *causā*, or *grātiā*, 490 (*b*)

genitive case
with adjectives, 416
of description, 414
of possession, 413
of the whole, 204, 415
gerund
with *ad*, *causā*, or *grātiā*, 491 (*a*)
limiting a noun or adjective, 491 (*b*)
gerund and future passive participle
comparison and summary of, 131
gerundive (*see* **future passive participle**)
grātiā with genitive, 490 (*b*), 491 (*a*)

hic, declension of, 387
hindering, verbs of, 470
historical present, 456

idem, declension of, 387
idioms, 155, 183
ille, declension of, 387

imperative mood, 485
impersonal verbs, 177; impersonal use of special verbs in passive, 194, footnote 6, 421, *a*
indefinites *quis, aliquis, quīdam* 219, 390
indirect discourse
statements, 494
commands and exhortations, 486
subordinate clauses in, 480
indirect object, 417
indirect questions, 479
infinitive
as noun, 492
as direct object (complementary), 493
indirect statements, 494
tenses of, 495
intensive pronoun, 387
interrogative pronoun, 389
ipse, declension of, 387
irregular adjectives, 380
irregular nouns, 376
irregular verbs, 397–402
defective, 403; special forms, 404
is, declension of, 387

Latin Plays
Bulla, 150
Sabinae, 330
Livy, a sketch, 151
locative case, 452

mālō, conjugation of, 401
manner, ablative of, 439
means, ablative of, 441
measure of difference, 259, 444
"middle" use of the passive, 484

nē, in purpose clauses, 466
with verbs of fearing, 471
with verbs of hindering, 470
nōlō, conjugation of, 401
nominative case
subject, 411; predicate, 412
nouns
of first declension, 371
of second declension, 371, 372
of third declension, 373
i-stem nouns of third declension, 373, Note
of fourth declension, 374
of fifth declension, 375
irregular or defective, 376
numerals, 384

object, direct, 426; indirect, 417
origin, ablative of, 435

participles
tenses of, 487
present declined, 379
used as adjectives, 488
as substantives, 488 (*b*)
as one-word substitutes for clauses, 489
future passive participle, 490
partitive genitive, 204, 415
passive, reflexive use of, 484
personal pronouns, 385
place from which, 434
place to which, 225, 428
place where, ablative of, 446
possession, genitive of, 413; dative of, 424
possum, conjugation of, 398
postquam, with indicative, 463
potior with ablative, 442
prepositions, ablative with, 451
accusative with, 431
pronouns, declension of, 385–390
purpose
dative of, 418
with *ut* (*nē*) and subjunctive, 466
with *quī,* 278, 467
with *quō,* 468
with *ad, causā,* or *grātiā,* 490 (*b*), 491 (*a*)

quamquam and *etsī* with indicative, 463
quī, declension of, 388
quia in causal clauses, 222, footnote 5
quīdam, declension of, 390
quidem, 257
quis (interrogative), declension of, 389; (indefinite), 219, 390, Note
quisque and *quisquam*, 239, 390
quod causal clauses, 482
quoque, 257

reference, dative of, 419
reflexive pronouns, 386
reflexive use of passive, 484
regular verbs, conjugation of, 391–395
relative pronoun, 388; agreement of, 408
relative purpose clauses, 278, 467; with *quō*, 468
respect, ablative of, 448
result, subjunctive clauses of, 472; used substantively, 473

second conjugation, 392
second declension, 371, 372
sentence structure, Latin, 170
separation, ablative of, 258, 433
  dative of, 423
sequence of tenses, 460
simul ac with indicative, 463
soldier wit and slang, 337
specification (respect), ablative of, 448
subject of infinitive, 429
subjunctive mood
  anticipatory clauses, 478
  attraction, 481
  cum adversative clauses, 477
  cum causal clauses, 476
  descriptive *cum* clauses, 475
  descriptive relative clauses, 474
  fearing, with verbs of, 471
  hindering, with verbs of, 470
  indirect questions, 479
  purpose with *ut* (*utī*) and *nē*, 466
  with *quī*, 467
  with *quō*, 468
  quod causal clauses, 482
  subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 480
  substantive clauses of result, 473
  volitive, 465
  volitive substantive clauses, 469
subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 480
substantive clauses, 464, 469, 473
substantive use of adjectives, 406
suī, declension of, 386
sum, conjugation of, 397
  omission of, 212
synonyms, 285

tenses, sequence of, 460
third conjugation, 393, 395
third declension, adjectives, 378
  nouns, 373
time, ablative of, 447
trādūcō with two accusatives, 430
translation helps and hints
  reading in the Latin word order, p. xv
  new words, p. xvii
  translation of Latin into English, p. 75
trānsportō, with two accusatives, 430
tū, declension of, 385
two accusatives
  with verbs of *calling*, etc., 412 (*b*), Note
  with *trādūcō* and *trānsportō*, 430

ubi with indicative, 463
ut(*ī*), with indicative, 463
  in purpose clauses, 466
  in result clauses, 472
  with verbs of fearing, 471

ūtor with ablative, 442

verbs
  of first conjugation, 391
  of second conjugation, 392
  of third conjugation, 393
  of third conjugation (*-iō* verbs), 395
  of fourth conjugation, 394
  deponent, 396
  defective, 403
  irregular, 397–402
verbs, agreement with subject, 407
verbs, special, with dative, 421
vocative case, 286, 453
volitive subjunctive, 465
  substantive clauses, 469
volō, conjugation of, 401

warfare in ancient and modern times, 335
whole, genitive of the, 204, 415
wit and slang, soldier, 337
words easily confused, 250
word studies, English and Latin
  abbreviations, 133
  English words with Latin base, 48
  loan words, 41
  prefixes, intensive, 141
prefixes, Latin (and English)
  ab-, dē-, ex-, 7
  ad-, in-, con-, 14
  re-, prō-, -sub, 21
  in- (neg.), *dis-, per-*, 27
  inter-, ob-, ante-, trāns-, 62
  prae-, contrā-, bene-, male-, 101
  circum-, super-, 141
  sēmi-, bi- or *bis-, ūn-, ūni-, multi-*, 164
  intrā-, intrō-, extrā-, 186
  sē-, nōn, ultrā-, 280
  summary, 496
radio terms from Latin, 252
spelling helps, English, 69, 93, 117, 172, 266, 294
suffixes, Latin (and English)
  -ia, -tia, -antia, -entia, 34
  -tās, -or, -iō, 55
  -ium, -tium, -men, -tūs, 85
  -ilis, -bilis, -āris, -ārius, 109
  -ānus, -ālis, -icus, -īvus, -ōsus, 125
  -tūdō, -mentum, -tūra, -faciō, -ficō, 149
  -idus, -īnus, 234
  -ārium, -ōrium, 273
  summary, 497
terms used in geometry, 300
vowel changes, 77
word stories, 246

Clauses

1. Purpose ut, ne
   Relative
   Substantive
2. Result ut, ut non non
   Substantive Result adverbial
3. Cum, Causal since
   Descriptive when
   Adversative although
4. Indirect question interr. word
5. Mild command (Jussive (3rd p
   Hortatory (1st pe

Dorothy F. Hooker